ABB

ABB INDUSTRIAL DRIVES

ACS880-01 drives

Hardware manual

ACS880-01 drives

Hardware manual

Table of contents

1. Safety instructions

4. Mechanical installation

6. Electrical installation – Global (IEC)

7. Electrical installation – North America (NEC)

10. Start-up

3AUA0000078093 Rev V
EN
Original instructions
EFFECTIVE: 2026-02-26

Table of contents

1 Safety instructions

Contents of this chapter 17
Safety messages 17
General safety in installation, start-up and maintenance 18
Electrical safety in installation, start-up and maintenance 20
  Electrical safety precautions 20
  Additional instructions and notes 21
    Printed circuit boards 21
  Grounding 22
General safety in operation 23
Additional instructions for permanent magnet motor drives 23
  Safety in installation, start-up, and maintenance 23
  Safety in operation 24

2 Introduction to the manual

Contents of this chapter 25
Target audience 25
Categorization by frame size and option code 25
Quick installation, commissioning and operation flowchart 26
Terms and abbreviations 27
Related documents 29

3 Operation principle and hardware description

Contents of this chapter 31
Product overview 31
  Main circuit 32
  Layout 33
    IP21, UL Type 1 33
    IP55 (option +B056) 34
    UL Type 12 (option +B056) 35
    IP20 (UL Type Open, options +P940 and +P944) 35
  Overview of power and control connections 36
  Control panel 37
    Control panel mounting platform cover 37
    Control panel door mounting kits 37
Type designation label 38
Type designation key 39
  Basic code 39

Option codes 40

4 Mechanical installation

Contents of this chapter 45
Safety 45
Mounting positions 46
Required free space 46
Examining the installation site 46
Necessary tools 47
Moving the drive 47
Unpacking and examining the delivery 47
Examining the delivery 47
Package of frames R1…R4 48
Package of frames R5 and R6 50
Frame R5 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1) 52
Frame R6 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1) 53
Package of frame R7 54
Frame R7 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1) 56
Package of frames R8 and R9 57
Frame R8 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1) 59
Frame R9 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1) 60
Package of frame R9e 61
Installing the drive vertically 63
Vibration dampers (option +C131) 63
Flange mounting (option +C135) 63
UK gland plate (option +H358) 63
Cabinet installation (options +P940 and +P944) 63
Frames R1 to R4 (IP21, UL Type 1) 64
Frames R5 to R9 (IP21, UL Type 1) 65
Frames R1 to R9 (IP55, UL Type 12) 67
Frame R9e 69
Installing the drive horizontally 70

5 Guidelines for planning the electrical installation

Contents of this chapter 71
Limitation of liability 71
North America 71
Selecting the main supply disconnecting device 71
Selecting the main contactor 72
Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive 72
Protecting the motor insulation and bearings 72
Requirements tables 73
Requirements for ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp) 74
Requirements for ABB motors, $P_n \geq$ 100 kW (134 hp) 75

Requirements for non-ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp)............ 76
Requirements for non-ABB motors, $P_n \geq$ 100 kW (134 hp)............ 77
Abbreviations.. 78
Availability of d*u*/d*t* filter and common mode filter by drive type.. 78
Additional requirements for explosion-safe (EX) motors............ 78
Additional requirements for ABB motors of types other than M2_, M3_, M4_, HX_ and AM_.. 78
Additional requirements for braking applications........................ 78
Additional requirements for ABB high-output and IP23 motors... 79
Additional requirements for non-ABB high-output and IP23 motors.. 79
Additional data for calculating the rise time and the peak line-to-line voltage.. 80
Additional note for sine filters.. 81
Selecting the power cables.. 82
General guidelines.. 82
Typical power cable sizes.. 82
Power cable types.. 83
Preferred power cable types.. 83
Alternate power cable types.. 84
Not allowed power cable types.. 85
Additional guidelines – North America.. 85
Metal conduit.. 86
Power cable shield.. 86
Grounding requirements.. 87
Additional grounding requirements – IEC.. 88
Additional grounding requirements – UL (NEC)........................ 89
Selecting the control cables.. 89
Shielding.. 89
Signals in separate cables.. 89
Signals that can be run in the same cable.. 89
Relay cable.. 89
Control panel cable.. 90
PC tool cable.. 90
Routing the cables.. 90
General guidelines – IEC.. 90
General guidelines – North America.. 91
Continuous motor cable shield/conduit and metal enclosure for equipment on the motor cable.. 92
Separate control cable ducts.. 93
Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection........................ 93
Protecting the drive and the input power cable in short-circuits............ 93
Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuits........................ 94
Protecting the drive against thermal overload.. 94

Protecting the input power cable against thermal overload 94
Protecting the motor cables against thermal overload 94
Protecting the motor against thermal overload 95
Protecting the motor against overload without thermal model or temperature sensors 95
Protecting the drive against ground faults 95
Residual current device compatibility 95
Connecting drives to a common DC system 96
Implementing the emergency stop function 96
Implementing the Safe torque off function 96
Implementing the functions provided by the FSO safety functions module. 96
Implementing the functions provided by the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module 96
Implementing the functions provided by the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module 97
Implementing an ATEX-certified motor thermal protection 97
Implementing the power loss ride-through function 98
Using power factor compensation capacitors with the drive 99
Controlling a contactor between drive and motor 99
Implementing a bypass connection 100
Example bypass connection 100
Switching the motor power supply from drive to direct-on-line.. 102
Switching the motor power supply from direct-on-line to drive.. 102
Protecting the contacts of relay outputs 102
Implementing a motor temperature sensor connection 103
Connecting a motor temperature sensor to the drive through an option module 104

6 Electrical installation – Global (IEC)

Contents of this chapter 107
Necessary tools 107
Grounding the motor cable shield at the motor end 108
Measuring the insulation 108
Measuring the insulation resistance of the drive 108
Measuring the insulation resistance of the input power cable 108
Measuring the insulation resistance of the motor and motor cable 108
Grounding system compatibility check 109
Corner-grounded and midpoint-grounded 525…690 V delta systems... 109
Connecting the power cables 110
Connection diagram 110
Connection procedure for frames R1…R3 111
Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5 115
Connection procedure for frames R6…R9 120
Connection procedure for frame R9e 126
Remove the EMC cover plates 127

Remove the side plates 128
Remove the EMC side plate 129
Remove the control cable entry plate 129
Remove the clamping shelves 130
Remove the terminals 131
Connect the power cables 132
Install the control cable entry plate 141
Install the EMC plates and side plates 141
Detaching connectors (frames R8 and R9) 141
L1, L2 and L3 connectors 141
T1/U, T2/V and T3/W connectors 142
Cable lug installation (frames R6…R9) 143
Connecting the control cables 144
Connection procedure, frames R1...R9 144
Connection procedure, frame R9e 146
Connecting a PC 147
Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel) 147
Twin panel connection 148
Connection with FDPI-02 modules 148
Installing option modules 149
Fieldbus cabling 151
Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit 154
Installation procedure 154
Installing the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module 156
Installing the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module 156

7 Electrical installation – North America (NEC)

Contents of this chapter 157
Safety 157
Necessary tools 157
Measuring the insulation 157
Grounding system compatibility check 158
Connecting the power cables 158
Connection diagram 158
Connection procedure for frames R1 to R3 160
Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5 164
Connection procedure for frames R6 to R9 169
Connection procedure for frame R9e 172
Connecting the control cables 178
Connection procedure 178
Connection procedure for frame R9e 181
Connecting a PC 181
Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel) 182
Installing option modules 182

8 Control unit

Contents of this chapter ... 183
General ... 183
ZCU-12 layout ... 184
Default control connection diagram of the drive control unit (ZCU) ... 185
Additional information on the connections ... 188
    NPN configuration for digital inputs ... 188
    Connecting motor temperature sensors to the drive ... 188
    Power supply for the control unit (XPOW) ... 188
    Digital interlock (DIIL) ... 188
    The XD2D connector ... 189
    Safe torque off (XSTO) ... 189
    Safety functions module connection (X12) ... 190
Connector data ... 191
    ZCU ground isolation diagram ... 194

9 Installation checklist

Contents of this chapter ... 197
Checklist ... 197

10 Start-up

Contents of this chapter ... 201
Reforming the capacitors ... 201
Start-up procedure ... 201

11 Fault tracing

Contents of this chapter ... 203
LEDs ... 203
    Warning and fault messages ... 203

12 Maintenance

Contents of this chapter ... 205
Maintenance intervals ... 205
    Description of symbols ... 205
    Recommended maintenance intervals after start-up ... 206
Cleaning the exterior ... 207
Cleaning the heatsink ... 207
Fans ... 208
    Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R1…R3 ... 209
    Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of IP55 frames R1…R3 ... 210
    Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4 and R5 ... 212
    Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R4 and R5 ... 213

Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R6…R8 214
Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R6…R9 (IP21, UL Type 1) .. 215
Replacing the second auxiliary cooling fan of frame R9 (IP55, UL Type 12) 217
Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames R8 and R9 218
Replacing the main cooling fans of frame R9 220
Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4…R9 with option +P968 220
Replacing the main cooling fans of frame R9e 221
Replacing the auxiliary cooling fans in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frame R9 (drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5) 224
Replacing the internal cooling fan, IP21 (UL Type 1) frame R9e 226
Replacing the drive (IP21, UL Type 1, frames R1…R9) 227
Capacitors 228
Reforming the capacitors 229
Control panel 229
Control unit 229
Replacing the memory unit of ZCU-12 229
Replacing the ZCU-12 control unit battery 230
Replacing safety functions modules (FSO-12, option +Q973 and FSO-21, option +Q972) 231
Functional safety components 231

13 Technical data

Contents of this chapter 233
Marine type-approved drives (option +C132) 233
Drives for SynRM motors 233
Electrical ratings 234
Definitions 242
UL Listed drive multiple ratings 242
Deratings 243
Surrounding air temperature derating 243
Altitude derating 244
Deratings for special settings in the drive control program 245
Fuses (IEC) 258
aR fuses DIN 43653 stud-mount 258
aR fuses DIN 43620 blade style 262
gG fuses DIN 43620 blade style 265
Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses 270
Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation 273
Calculation example 273
Fuses (UL) 275
Circuit breakers (IEC) 279
ABB miniature and molded case circuit breakers 280
ABB manual motor starters 284

Circuit breakers (UL) 285
ABB inverse time circuit breakers 285
230 V circuit breakers 286
480 V circuit breakers 287
600 V circuit breakers 288
Dimensions, weights and free space requirements 290
Package dimensions 293
Free space requirements 294
Losses, cooling data and noise 294
Cooling air flow and heat dissipation for flange mounting (option +C135) 297
Connector and entry data for the power cables 301
IEC 301
UL 302
Connector data for the control cables 304
Typical power cables 304
Electrical power network specification 308
Motor connection data 308
Efficiency 309
Energy efficiency data (ecodesign) 309
Protection classes 310
Ambient conditions 310
Storage conditions 312
Colors 312
Materials 312
Drive 312
Package materials for small wall-mounted drives and converter modules 312
Package materials for large wall-mounted drives and converter modules 313
Package materials for options, accessories and spare parts 313
Materials of manuals 313
Disposal 313
Applicable standards 314
Markings 315
EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3) 316
Definitions 316
Category C2 317
Category C3 318
Category C4 318
UL checklist 319
Approvals 321
Design lifetime expectancy 321
Disclaimers 321
Generic disclaimer 321
Cyber security disclaimer 321

Declarations of conformity........ 322

14 Dimension drawings

Contents of this chapter........ 323
Frame R1, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 324
Frame R1, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 325
Frame R2, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 326
Frame R2, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 327
Frame R3, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 328
Frame R3, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 329
Frame R4, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 330
Frame R4, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 331
Frame R5, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 332
Frame R5, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 333
Frame R6, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 334
Frame R6, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 335
Frame R7, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 336
Frame R7, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 337
Frame R8, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 338
Frame R8, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 339
Frame R9, IP21 (UL Type 1)........ 340
Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)........ 341
Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)*........ 342
Frame R9e, IP21........ 343
Frame R9e, UL Type 1........ 344
Frame R9e, IP55........ 345
Frame R9e, UL Type 12........ 346

15 Resistor braking

Contents of this chapter........ 347
Operation principle and hardware description........ 347
Planning the braking system........ 347
Selecting the brake circuit components........ 347
Selecting a custom resistor........ 348
Selecting and routing the brake resistor cables........ 349
Minimizing electromagnetic interference........ 349
Maximum cable length........ 349
EMC compliance of the complete installation........ 349
Placing the brake resistors........ 349
Protecting the system against thermal overload........ 350
Protecting the system in fault situations........ 350
Protecting the resistor cable against short-circuits........ 352
Mechanical installation........ 352

Electrical installation ... 352
Measuring the insulation resistance of the brake resistor circuit ... 352
Connection diagram ... 353
Connection procedure ... 353
Start-up ... 353
Technical data ... 354
Ratings ... 354
Degree of protection and thermal constant of the resistor ... 357
Dimensions and weights of external resistors ... 358
JBR-03 ... 358
SACE08RE44 ... 359
SACE15RE13 and SACE15RE22 ... 360
SAFUR80F500 and SAFUR90F575 ... 360
SAFUR125F500 and SAFUR200F500 ... 361

16 The Safe torque off function

Contents of this chapter ... 363
Description ... 363
Compliance with the European Machinery Directive and the UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations ... 364
Wiring ... 365
Activation switch ... 365
Cable types and lengths ... 365
Grounding of protective shields ... 366
Single drive (internal power supply) ... 366
Dual-channel connection ... 366
Single-channel connection ... 367
Multiple drives ... 368
Internal power supply ... 368
External power supply ... 369
Operation principle ... 370
Start-up including validation test ... 371
Competence ... 371
Validation test reports ... 371
Validation test procedure ... 371
Use ... 373
Maintenance ... 375
Competence ... 376
Perfect proof test procedure ... 376
Simplified proof test procedure ... 377
Fault tracing ... 378
Safety data ... 379
Terms and abbreviations ... 383
TÜV certificate ... 385

17 Filters

Contents of this chapter 387
When is a common mode filter or d*u*/d*t* filter needed? 387
Common mode filters 387
d*u*/d*t* filters 388
    d*u*/d*t* filter types 388
    Description, installation and technical data of the d*u*/d*t* filters 389
Sine filters 389
    Selecting a sine filter for a drive 389
    Definitions 392
        Derating 392
        Description, installation and technical data 392

Further information

1

Safety instructions

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains the safety instructions which you must obey when you install, start-up, operate and do maintenance work on the drive. If you ignore the safety instructions, injury, death or damage can occur.

Safety messages

These safety messages help to prevent personal injury and damage to the equipment. The hazard levels comply with standard ANSI Z535.6.

The manual uses these warning symbols:

DANGER Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE Is used to address practices not related to physical injury, but which can result in equipment damage.

General safety in installation, start-up and maintenance

These instructions are for all persons who do work on the drive.

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

- Keep the drive in its package until you install it. After unpacking, protect the drive from dust, debris and moisture.
- Use the required personal protective equipment: safety shoes with metal toe cap, safety glasses, protective gloves and long sleeves, etc. Some parts have sharp edges.
- Use a lifting device to lift a heavy drive. Use the designated lifting points. Refer to the dimension drawings.
- Be careful when handling a tall module. The module overturns easily because it is heavy and has a high center of gravity. Whenever possible, secure the module with chains. Do not leave an unsupported module unattended especially on a sloping floor.

- Beware of hot surfaces. Some parts, such as heatsinks of power semiconductors, and brake resistors, can be hot for a period after operation.
- Before the start-up, vacuum clean the area around the drive to prevent the drive cooling fan from drawing dust inside the drive.
- Make sure that debris from drilling, cutting and grinding does not go into the drive during installation. Electrically conductive debris inside the drive can cause damage or malfunction.
- Make sure that there is sufficient cooling. Refer to the technical data.
- Before you connect voltage to the drive, make sure that all covers are in place. Do not remove the covers when voltage is connected.
- Before you adjust the drive operation limits, make sure that the motor and all driven equipment can operate throughout the set operation limits.

- Before you activate the automatic fault reset or automatic restart functions of the drive control program, make sure that no dangerous situations can occur. These functions reset the drive automatically and continue operation after a fault or break in the power supply. If these functions are activated, the installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN/UL 61800-5-1, subclause 6.5.3, for example, "THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY".
- The maximum number of drive power-ups is five in ten minutes. Too frequent power-ups can damage the charging circuit of the DC capacitors.
- If the drive has connected safety circuits (for example, Safe torque off or emergency stop), validate them at start-up. Refer to separate instructions for the safety circuits.
- Beware of hot airflow from the cooling outlets.
- Do not cover the air inlet or air outlet when the drive operates.

Note:

- If you select an external source for the start command and it is on, the drive starts immediately after a fault reset unless you configure the drive for pulse start. Refer to the firmware manual.
- If the drive is in remote control mode, you cannot stop or start the drive with the control panel.
- Only authorized persons are permitted to repair a faulty drive.

Electrical safety in installation, start-up and maintenance

Electrical safety precautions

These electrical safety precautions are for all persons who do work on the drive, motor cable or motor.

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation or maintenance work. Do these steps before you do installation or maintenance work.

1. Prepare for the work.
   - Make sure that you have a work order.
   - Do an on-site risk assessment or job hazard analysis.
   - Make sure that you have the correct tools available.
   - Make sure that the workers are qualified.
   - Select the correct personal protective equipment (PPE).
   - Stop the drive and motor(s).
2. Clearly identify the work location and equipment.
3. Disconnect all possible voltage sources. Make sure that connection is not possible. Lock out and tag out.
   - Open the main disconnecting device of the drive
   - If there is a permanent magnet motor connected to the drive, disconnect the motor from the drive with a safety switch or by other means.
   - Open the main isolating device of the drive.
   - Disconnect all dangerous external voltages from the control circuits.
   - After you disconnect power from the drive, wait 5 minutes to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge before you continue.
4. Protect other energized parts in the work location against contact and take special precautions when close to bare conductors.
5. Measure that the installation is de-energized. Use a high-quality voltage tester.
   - Before and after you measure the installation, verify the operation of the voltage tester on a known voltage source.
   - Make sure that the voltage between the input power terminals of the drive (L1, L2, L3) and the grounding (PE) busbar is zero.
   - Make sure that the voltage between the output power terminals of the drive (U, V, W) and the grounding (PE) busbar is zero.

     Important! Repeat the measurement with the DC voltage setting of the voltage tester. Measure between each phase and ground. There is a risk of dangerous DC voltage charging due to leakage capacitances of the motor circuit. This voltage can remain charged for a long time after the drive power-off. The measurement discharges the voltage.

- Make sure that the voltage between the drive DC terminals (UDC+ and UDC-) and the grounding (PE) terminal is zero.

  Note: If cables are not connected to the drive DC terminals, measuring the voltage from the DC terminal screws can give incorrect results.

6. Install temporary grounding as required by the local regulations.
7. Ask for a permit to work from the person that is responsible for the electrical installation work.

Additional instructions and notes

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation or maintenance work.

- Make sure that the electrical power network, motor/generator, and environmental conditions agree with the drive data.
- Do not do insulation or voltage withstand tests on the drive.
- If you have a cardiac pacemaker or other electronic medical device, do not go near the motor, drive, or the drive power cabling when the drive is in operation. The equipment produces electromagnetic fields that can cause interference in electronic medical devices. This can cause a health hazard.

Note:

- When the drive is connected to the input power, the motor cable terminals and the DC bus are at a dangerous voltage.
  The brake circuit, including the brake chopper (option +D150) and brake resistor (if it is installed) are also at a dangerous voltage.
  After you disconnect the drive from the input power, these remain at a dangerous voltage until the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge.
- External wiring can supply dangerous voltages to the relay outputs of the control units of the drive.
- The Safe torque off function does not remove the voltage from the main and auxiliary circuits. The function is not effective against deliberate sabotage or misuse.

Printed circuit boards

NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap when you handle printed circuit boards. Do not touch the boards unnecessarily. The boards are sensitive to electrostatic discharge.

Grounding

These instructions are for all persons who are responsible for the grounding of the drive.

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or equipment malfunction can occur, and electromagnetic interference can increase.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do grounding work.

- Always ground the drive, the motor and adjoining equipment. This is necessary for personnel safety.
- Make sure that the conductivity of the protective earth (PE) conductors is sufficient and that other requirements are met. Refer to the electrical planning instructions of the drive. Obey the applicable national and local regulations.
- When you use shielded cables, make a 360° grounding of the cable shields at the cable entries to reduce electromagnetic emission and interference.
- In a multiple-drive installation, connect each drive separately to the protective earth (PE) busbar of the power supply.

General safety in operation

These instructions are for all persons that operate the drive.

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

- If you have a cardiac pacemaker or other electronic medical device, do not go near the motor, drive, or the drive power cabling when the drive is in operation. The equipment produces electromagnetic fields that can cause interference in electronic medical devices. This can cause a health hazard.
- Give a stop command to the drive before you reset a fault. If you have an external source for the start command and the start is on, the drive starts immediately after the fault reset, unless you configure the drive for pulse start. Refer to the firmware manual.
- Before you activate the automatic fault reset or automatic restart functions of the drive control program, make sure that no dangerous situations can occur. These functions reset the drive automatically and continue operation after a fault or break in the power supply. If these functions are activated, the installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN/UL 61800-5-1, subclause 6.5.3, for example, "THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY".
- Wear hearing protection when the drive operates.

Note:

- The maximum number of drive power-ups is five in ten minutes. Too frequent power-ups can damage the charging circuit of the DC capacitors. If you need to start or stop the drive, use the control panel keys or commands through the I/O terminals of the drive or the fieldbus interface.
- If the drive is in remote control mode, you cannot stop or start the drive with the control panel.

Additional instructions for permanent magnet motor drives

Safety in installation, start-up, and maintenance

These are additional warnings for permanent magnet motor drives. The other safety instructions in this chapter are also valid.

WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation or maintenance work.

- Do not do work on the drive when a rotating permanent magnet motor is connected to it. A rotating permanent magnet motor energizes the drive including its input and output power terminals.

Before installation, start-up and maintenance work on the drive:

- Stop the drive.
- Disconnect the motor from the drive with a safety switch or by other means.
- If you cannot disconnect the motor, make sure that the motor cannot rotate during the work. Make sure that no other system, such as a hydraulic crawling drive, can rotate the motor directly or through any mechanical connection such as a belt, nip, rope, or similar.
- Do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20).
- Install temporary grounding to the drive output terminals (T1/U, T2/V, T3/W). Connect the output terminals together as well as to the PE.

During the start-up:

- Make sure that the motor cannot run at overspeed, for example, when it is driven by the load. Motor overspeed causes an overvoltage that can cause damage to the capacitors in the intermediate circuit of the drive.

Safety in operation

NOTICE Make sure that the motor cannot run at overspeed, for example, when it is driven by the load. Motor overspeed causes an overvoltage that can cause damage to the capacitors in the intermediate circuit of the drive.

2

Introduction to the manual

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the purpose, applicability, available frame sizes, and target audience of the manual. It contains a flowchart of steps in examining the delivery, installing and commissioning the drive. The flowchart refers to chapters/sections in this manual and in other manuals.

Target audience

This manual is intended for people who plan the installation, install, commission, and do maintenance work on the drive, or create instructions for the end user of the drive concerning the installation and maintenance of the drive.

Read the manual before you do work on the drive. You are expected to know the fundamentals of electricity, wiring, electrical components, and electrical schematic symbols.

Categorization by frame size and option code

The frame size identifies information for a specific frame size of the drive. The frame size is shown on the type designation label. All frame sizes are listed in the technical data.

The option code (for example, A123) identifies information that concerns only a specific optional component. The options included in the drive are listed on the type designation label.

Quick installation, commissioning and operation flowchart

Task	See
Identify the frame of your drive: R1…R9 or R9e.	Type designation key (page 39)
↓	
Plan the electrical installation and acquire the accessories needed (cables, fuses, etc.). Check the ratings, required cooling air flow, input power connection, compatibility of the motor, motor connection, and other technical data.	Guidelines for planning the electrical installation (page 71) Technical data (page 233)
↓	
Check the installation site.	Ambient conditions (page 310)
↓	
Unpack and examine the drive (only intact units may be started up). Make sure that all necessary optional modules and equipment are present and correct. Install the drive mechanically.	Mechanical installation (page 45) If the drive has been non-operational for more than one year, the converter DC link capacitors need to be reformed, Capacitors (page 228)
↓	
Route the cables.	Routing the cables (page 90)
↓	
If the drive is about to be connected to an IT (ungrounded), corner-grounded delta, midpoint-grounded delta or TT system, check if you need to disconnect the EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor.	ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English])
↓	
Connect the power cables. Connect the control cables.	Electrical installation – Global (IEC) (page 107) or Electrical installation – North America (NEC) (page 157)
↓	
Check the installation.	Installation checklist (page 197)
↓	

Task	See
Start the drive up.	Start-up (page 201)
↓	
Operate the drive: start, stop, speed control etc.	Quick start-up guide, firmware manual

Terms and abbreviations

Term	Description
DC link	DC circuit between rectifier and inverter
DC link capacitors	Energy storage which stabilizes the intermediate circuit DC voltage
DPMP-01	Mounting platform for control panel (flush mounting)
DPMP-02, DPMP-03	Mounting platform for control panel (surface mounting)
Drive	Frequency converter for controlling AC motors
EFB	Embedded fieldbus
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
EMI	Electromagnetic interference
EMT	Electrical metallic tubing, type of cable conduit
FAIO-01	Analog I/O extension module
FCAN	Optional CANopen® adapter module
FCNA-01	Optional ControlNet™ adapter module
FEN-01	Optional TTL incremental encoder interface module
FEN-11	Optional absolute encoder interface module
FEN-21	Optional resolver interface module
FEN-31	Optional HTL incremental encoder interface module
FENA-21	Optional Ethernet adapter module for EtherNet/IP™, Modbus TCP and PROFINET IO protocols, 2-port
FEPL-02	Optional Ethernet POWERLINK adapter module
FIO-01	Optional digital I/O extension module
FIO-11	Optional analog I/O extension module
FMBT-21	Optional Ethernet adapter module for Modbus TCP protocol
FPBA-01	Optional PROFIBUS DP® adapter module
FPNO-21	Optional PROFINET IO adapter module
FPTC-01	Optional thermistor protection module
FPTC-02	Optional ATEX-certified thermistor protection module for potentially explosive atmospheres
Frame, frame size	Physical size of the drive or power module
FSCS-21	CIP Safety™ functions module
FSE-31	Optional pulse encoder interface module for safety encoder

Term	Description
FSO-21	Safety functions module which supports the FSE-31 module and the use of safety encoders
FSO-12	Safety functions module which does not support the use of encoders
FSPS-21	PROFIsafe safety functions module
IGBT	Insulated gate bipolar transistor
Inverter	Converts direct current and voltage to alternating current and voltage.
Parameter	In the drive or converter control program, parameter is a user-adjustable setting, or a read-only monitoring signal. In some (for example fieldbus) contexts, a value that can be accessed as an object. For example, variable, constant, or signal.
PLC	Programmable logic controller
STO	Safe torque off (IEC/EN 61800-5-2)
UCU	Type of control unit
ZCON	Type of control board
ZCU	Type of control unit
ZGAB	Brake chopper adapter board
ZGAD	Gate driver adapter board
ZINT	Main circuit board
ZMU	Type of memory unit, attached to the control unit

Related documents

For more documentation, go to www.abb.com/drives/documents.

ACS880-01 manuals

3

Operation principle and hardware description

Contents of this chapter

This chapter briefly describes the operation principle and construction of the drive.

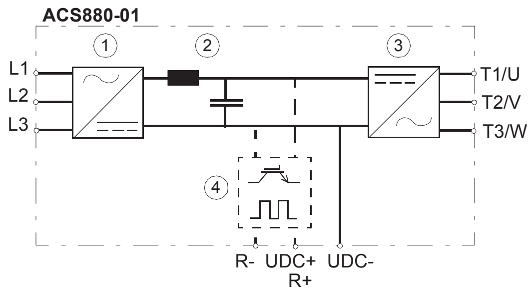
Product overview

The ACS880-01 is a drive for controlling asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors and ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors).

The main cooling air fan of the drive is speed controlled and the auxiliary cooling fan on/off controlled.

Main circuit

The main circuit of the drive is shown below.



1	Rectifier. Converts alternating current and voltage to direct current and voltage.
2	DC link. DC circuit between rectifier and inverter.
3	Inverter. Converts direct current and voltage to alternating current and voltage.
4	Brake chopper. Conducts the surplus energy from the intermediate DC circuit of the drive to the brake resistor when necessary. The chopper operates when the DC link voltage exceeds a certain maximum limit. The voltage rise is typically caused by deceleration (braking) of a high inertia motor. User obtains and installs the brake resistor when needed.

Layout

IP21, UL Type 1

The components of the drive are shown below (view of frame R5).

1 Control panel

2 Front cover

3 Cable entry box

4 Four attaching points at the back of the drive

5 Heatsink

6 Lifting eyes

IP55 (option +B056)

The components of the IP55 drive (option +B056) are shown below (view of frame R4).

1 Control panel behind the control panel cover

2 Front cover

3 Four attaching points at the back of the drive

4 Heatsink

5 Lifting eyes

UL Type 12 (option +B056)

The components of the UL Type 12 drive (option +B056) are shown below (view of frame R6).

1 Control panel behind the control panel cover

2 Front cover

3 Four attaching points at the back of the drive

4 Heatsink

5 Lifting eyes

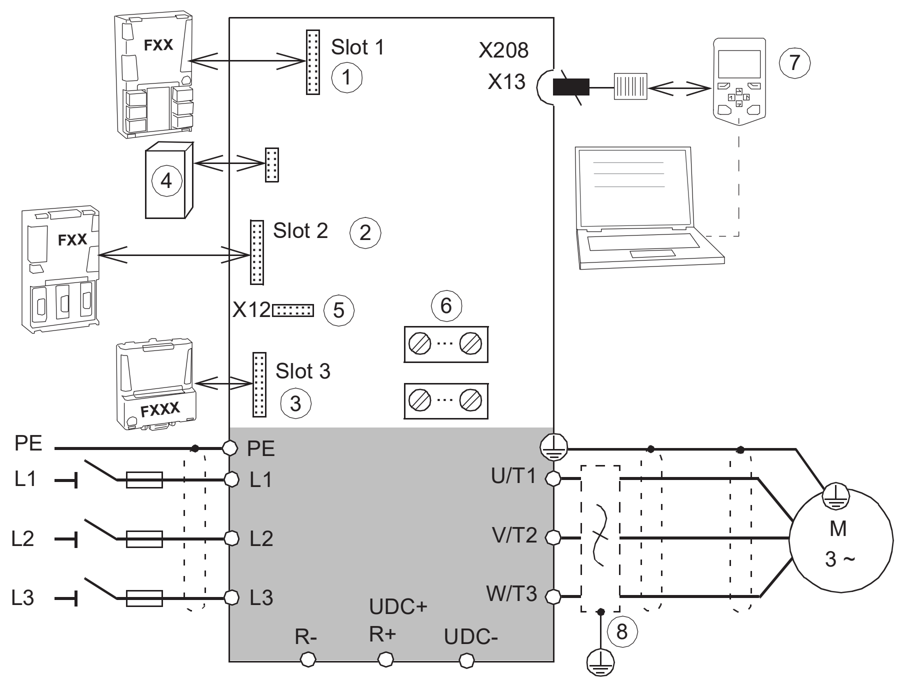
6 Hood (included in frames R4…R9)

IP20 (UL Type Open, options +P940 and +P944)

See ACS880…+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

Overview of power and control connections

This diagram shows the power connections and control interfaces of the drive.



1, 2, 3	Analog and digital I/O extension modules, feedback interface modules and fieldbus communication modules can be inserted into slots 1, 2 and 3. Refer to Type designation key (page 39).
4	Memory unit. Refer to Control unit (page 229).
5	Connector for safety functions modules. Refer to Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit (page 154).
6	I/O connections. Refer to Control unit (page 183).
7	Control panel. Refer to Control panel (page 37).
8	du/dt, common mode or sine filter (optional). Refer to Filters (page 387).

Control panel

The control panel can be removed by pulling it forward from the top edge and reinstalled in reverse order. For the use of the control panel, refer to the firmware manual or ACS-AP-I, -S, -W and ACH-AP-H, -W Assistant control panels user's manual (3AUA0000085685 [English]).

Control panel mounting platform cover

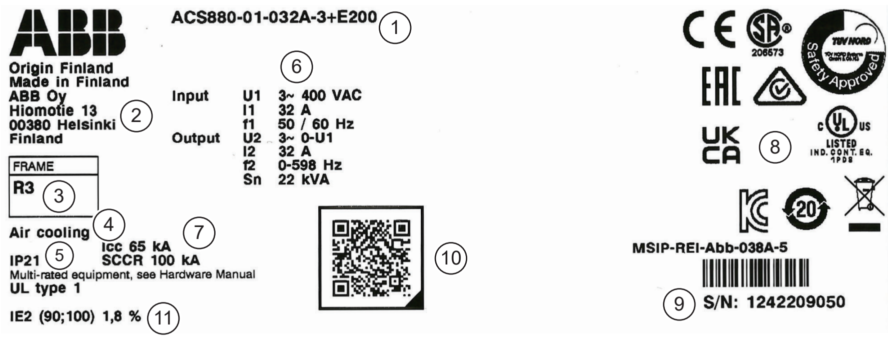
In deliveries without control panel (option + 0J400) the control panel mounting platform is covered. The indication LEDs on the platform are visible through the protective cover. Note: The cover is not included with options +0J400+P940 and +0J400+P944.

Control panel door mounting kits

You can use a mounting platform to mount the control panel on the cabinet door. Mounting platforms for control panels are available as options from ABB. For more information, refer to:

Manual	Code (English)
DPMP-01 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AUA0000100140
DPMP-02/03 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AUA0000136205
DPMP-04 and DPMP-05 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AXD50000308484
DPMP-06 / 07 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AXD50000289561

Type designation label



1	Type designation, refer to Type designation key (page 39).
2	Manufacturing address
3	Frame size
4	Cooling method
5	Degree of protection; UL/CSA specifications
6	Ratings in the supply voltage range, refer to Electrical ratings (page 234).
7	Short-circuit withstand strength, refer to Electrical power network specification (page 308).
8	Valid markings
9	Serial number. The first digit of the serial number refers to the manufacturing plant. The next four digits refer to the unit's manufacturing year and week, respectively. The remaining digits complete the serial number so that there are no two units with the same number.

10	Link to product information
11	Typical drive losses when it operates at 90% of the motor nominal frequency and 100% of the drive nominal output current

Type designation key

The type designation contains information on the specifications and configuration of the drive. The first digits from left express the basic drive type. The optional selections are given next, separated by plus signs. Codes that start with zero (for example, +0A123) indicate the absence of a specified feature. The main selections are described below. The list describes the meaning of the option codes, not availability. Not all selections are available for all types or in all regions. For the availability, refer to the ordering information.

Basic code

Code	Description
ACS880	Product series
Type	
ACS880-01-...	The standard delivery includes: Wall mounted drive, IP21 (UL Type 1), ACS-AP-W assistant control panel with Bluetooth connection, no EMC filter, DC choke, ACS880 primary control program, Safe torque off function, cable entry box, brake chopper in frames R1 to R4, common mode filter in frame R9e, coated boards, printed quick installation and start-up guide. Refer to Option codes (page 40) for options.
Size	
xxxx	Refer to Electrical ratings (page 234).
Voltage range	
2	208…240 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3 ~ 230 V AC.
3	380…415 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3 ~ 400 V AC.
5	380…500 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3 ~ 400/480/500 V AC.
7	525…690 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3 ~ 525/600/690 V AC.

Option codes

Code	Description
B056	IP55 (UL Type 12)
C131	Vibration dampers
C132	Marine type approval
C135	Flange mounting
C205	Marine product certification issued by DNV GL
C206	Marine product certification issued by the American Bureau of Shipping (ABS)
C207	Marine product certification issued by Lloyd's Register (LR)
C208	Marine product certification issued by Registro Italiano Navale (RINA)
C209	Marine product certification issued by Bureau Veritas
C210	Marine product certification issued by Nippon Kaiji Kyokai (NK)
C227	Marine product certification issued by Korean Register of Shipping (KR)
C228	Marine product certification issued by China Classification Society (CCS)
C229	Marine product certification issued by Russian Maritime Register of Shipping (RS)
C255	Nickel plated busbars
D150	Brake choppers
E200	EMC filter for 2nd environment TN (grounded) system, category C3
E201	EMC filter for 2nd environment IT (ungrounded) system, category C3 The category is C4 for 230 V, 400 V, 440 V and 500 V frames R1…R5, and for 690 V frames R3, R5 and R6.
E202	EMC filter for 1st environment TN (grounded) system, category C2
E208	Common mode filter
H358	Cable conduit entry (US/UK)
0J400	No control panel
J425	ACS-AP-I control panel
J461	ACS-DCP-11 drive connectivity panel (EU variant)

Code	Description
K451	FDNA-01 DeviceNet™ adapter module
K454	FPBA-01 PROFIBUS DP adapter module
K457	FCAN-01 CANopen adapter module
K458	FSCA-01 RS-485 (Modbus/RTU) adapter module
K462	FCNA-01 ControlNet™ adapter module
K469	FECA-01 EtherCat adapter module
K470	FEPL-02 EtherPOWERLINK adapter module
K475	FENA-21 Ethernet adapter module for EtherNet/IP™, Modbus TCP and PROFINET IO protocols, 2-port
K490	FEIP-21 EtherNet/IP adapter module
K491	FMBT-21 Modbus/TCP adapter module
K492	FPNO-21 PROFINET IO adapter module
L500	FIO-11 analog I/O extension module (1, 2 or 3 pcs)
L501	FIO-01 digital I/O extension module
L502	FEN-31 HTL incremental encoder interface module
L503	FDCO-01 optical DDCS communication adapter module
L508	FDCO-02 optical DDCS communication adapter module
L516	FEN-21 resolver interface module
L517	FEN-01 TTL incremental encoder interface module
L518	FEN-11 TTL absolute encoder interface module
L521	FSE-31 pulse encoder interface module
L525	FAIO-01 analog I/O extension module
L526	FDIO-01 digital I/O extension module
L536	FPTC-01 thermistor protection module
L537	FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module

Code	Description
N5000	Winder control program
N5050	Crane control program
N5100	Winch control program
N5150	Centrifuge control program
N5200	PCP (Progressive Cavity Pump) control program
N5250	Rod pump control program
N5300	Test bench control program
N5350	Cooling tower control program
N5450	Override control program
N5500	Spinning and traverse control program
N5600	ESP (Electrical Submersible Pump) control program
N5650	Tower crane control program
N5700	Position control program
N5900	Anti-cavitation control program
N7500	High-speed operation up to 598 Hz output frequency. Operation above 598 Hz requires option +N8200.
N7502	Control program for synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM)
N8010	Drive application programming
N8200	High-speed licence. Allows high-speed operation above 598 Hz output frequency.
0P840	Third row terminals for power and motor cabling removed from delivery (frame R9e)
P904	Extended warranty (24 months from commissioning or 30 months from delivery)
P909	Extended warranty (36 months from commissioning or 42 months from delivery)
P911	Extended warranty (60 months from commissioning or 66 months from delivery)
P912	Seaworthy packaging
P918	United States Country of Origin

Code	Description
P940	Version for cabinet mounting Frames R1…R9: Drive without front cover and cable box. Includes panel holder, cable between panel holder and control unit, I/O clamp kit in frames R1…R5, main cable clamp kit in frames R1…R5, power cable shield grounding shelf in frames R6…R9. Cannot be selected with +P944. Option +P940 is not available for frame size R9e.
P944	Version for cabinet mounting (drive module with front covers but without cable box) Option +P944 is not available for frame size R9e.
P952	European Union Country of Origin
P968	Corrosion resistant variant
Q971	ATEX-certified safe disconnection function
Q972	FSO-21 safety functions module
Q973	FSO-12 safety functions module
Q982	PROFIsafe with FSO-xx safety function module and FPNO-21 PROFInet adapter or FENA-21 Ethernet adapter module
Q986	PROFIsafe safety functions module, FSPS-21
Q989	CIP Safety™ functions module, FSCS-21
R700	Printed manuals in English
R701	Printed manuals in German [1)]
R702	Printed manuals in Italian[1)]
R703	Printed manuals in Dutch[1)]
R704	Printed manuals in Danish[1)]
R705	Printed manuals in Swedish[1)]
R706	Printed manuals in Finnish[1)]
R707	Printed manuals in French[1)]
R708	Printed manuals in Spanish[1)]

Code	Description
R709	Printed manuals in Portuguese[1)]
R711	Printed manuals in Russian[1)]
R712	Printed manuals in Chinese[1)]
R713	Printed manuals in Polish[1)]
R714	Printed manuals in Turkish[1)]
V998	UCU-20 control unit

1) Manuals in English may be included if a translation in the specified language is not available.

Note: Option codes R700…R714 denote full set of printed manuals in the selected language. The delivery can include manuals in English if the requested language is not available.

4

Mechanical installation

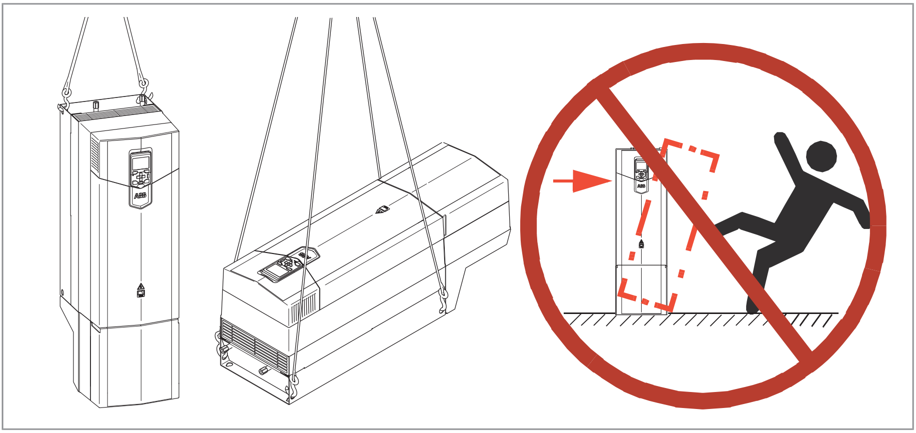
Contents of this chapter

This chapter tells you how to examine the installation site, examine the delivery, and mechanically install the drive.

Safety

For frame sizes R4 to R9 and R9e:

WARNING Use the lifting eyes of the drive when you lift the drive. Do not tilt the drive. The drive is heavy and its center of gravity is high. If the drive falls, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.



Mounting positions

There are three alternative ways to install the drive:

- vertically alone. Do not install the drive upside down.
- vertically side by side. UL Type 12 frames R4 to R9 need 100 mm (4 in) between the hoods.

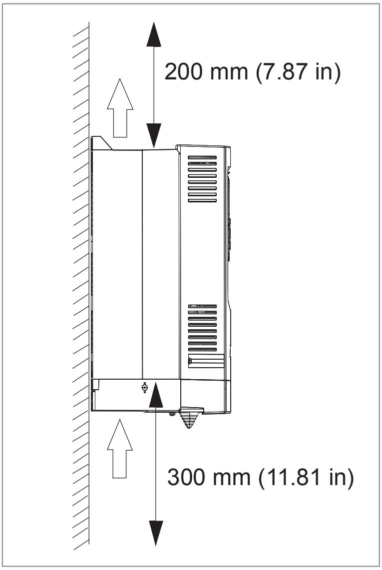
  Note: Mounting the drives right next to each other side to side can make it difficult to read the serial number and rating information on the type designation label.

- horizontally alone, IP21 (UL Type 1) only.

  Note: The vibration specification in the technical data may not be fulfilled.

  Note: IP21 (UL Type 1) construction only meets IP20 (UL Type Open) in horizontal position.

Required free space



Examining the installation site

Examine the installation site. Make sure that:

- The installation site is sufficiently ventilated or cooled to remove heat from the drive. Refer to the technical data.

- The ambient conditions of the drive meet the specifications. Refer to the technical data.
- The material behind, above, and below the drive is non-flammable.
- The installation surface is as close to vertical as possible and strong enough to hold the drive.
- There is sufficient free space around the drive for cooling, maintenance work, and operation. Refer to the free space specifications for the drive.
- There are no sources of strong magnetic fields such as high-current single-core conductors or contactor coils near the drive. A strong magnetic field can cause interference or inaccuracy in the operation of the drive.

Necessary tools

To move a heavy drive, use a crane, forklift, or pallet truck (examine the load capacity). To lift a heavy drive, use a lifting device.

To mechanically install the drive, make sure that you have these tools available:

- drill with suitable bits
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- 300 mm (11.8 in) screwdriver extension bit for frame size R9e
- torque wrench
- socket set, Hex key set (metric)
- tape measure, if you do not use the mounting template delivered with the drive.

Moving the drive

Move the drive in its transport package to the installation site.

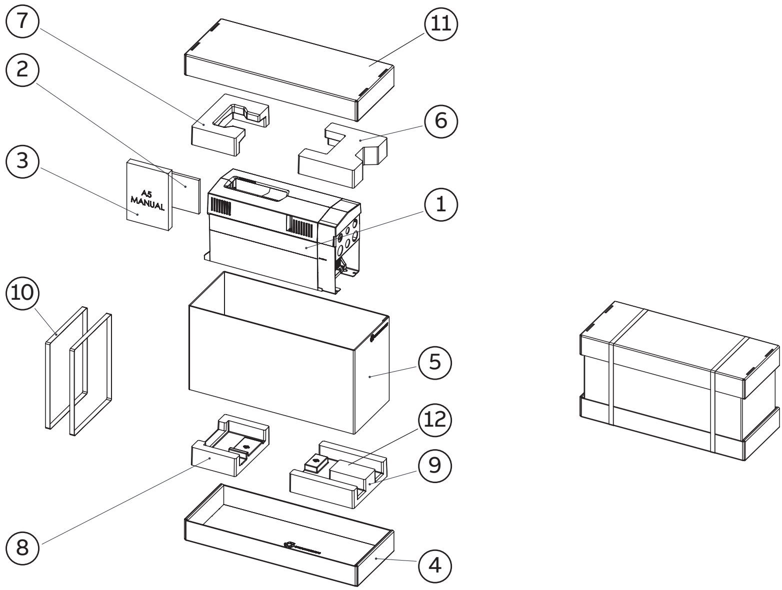
Unpacking and examining the delivery

Examining the delivery

Examine that all the items are present and there are no signs of damage. Read the data on the type designation label of the drive to make sure that the drive is of the correct type.

Package of frames R1…R4

IP21 (UL Type 1)

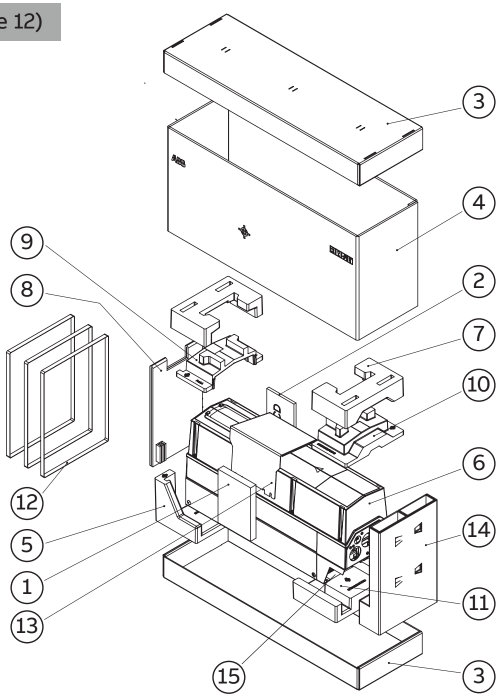


1	Drive with factory installed options. Control cable grounding shelf. Romex connectors in IP21 frames R1 to R3 in a plastic bag inside the cable box.	6…9	Cushions Mounting template on top of 6 and 7.
2	-	10	Straps
3	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker	11	Top cardboard cover
4	Cardboard tray	12	Vibration damper package (option +C131) Frame R4: below the cable box
5	Cardboard sleeve	-	-

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (10).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (11) and cushions (6...9).
- Lift the cardboard sleeve (5).
- Lift the drive.

IP55 (UL Type 12)



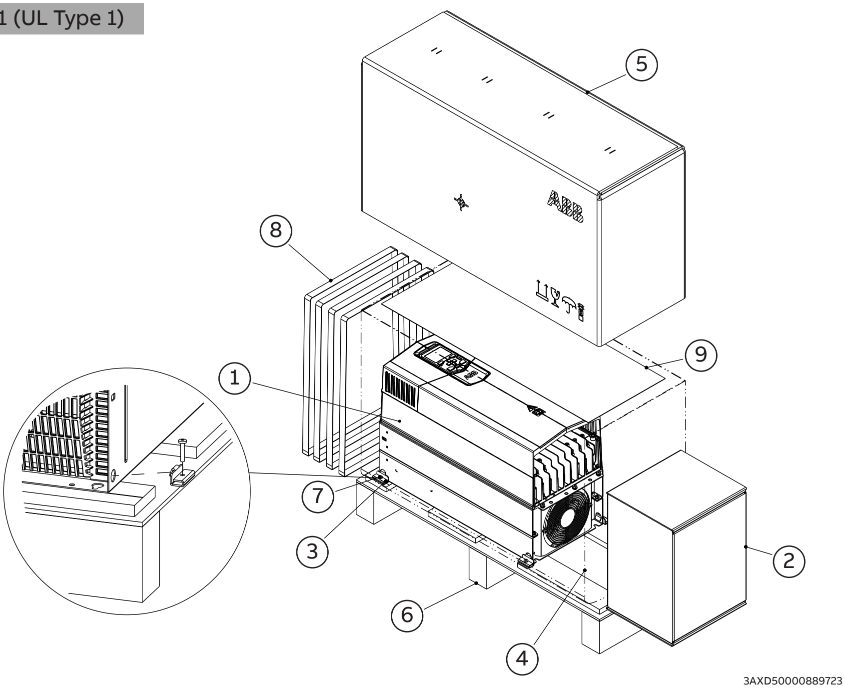
1	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker	7…11	Cushions and cardboard support Mounting template on top of 7.
2	-	12	Straps
3	Cardboard tray + top cardboard cover	13	Hood included in frame R4. The hood is required only in UL Type 12 installations.
4	Cardboard sleeve	14	Support
5	Cushion	15	Vibration damper package (option +C131)
6	Drive with factory installed options. Control cable grounding shelf.	-	-

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (12).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and cushions (5, 7...11).
- Lift the cardboard sleeve (4).
- Lift the drive.

Package of frames R5 and R6

IP21 (UL Type 1)

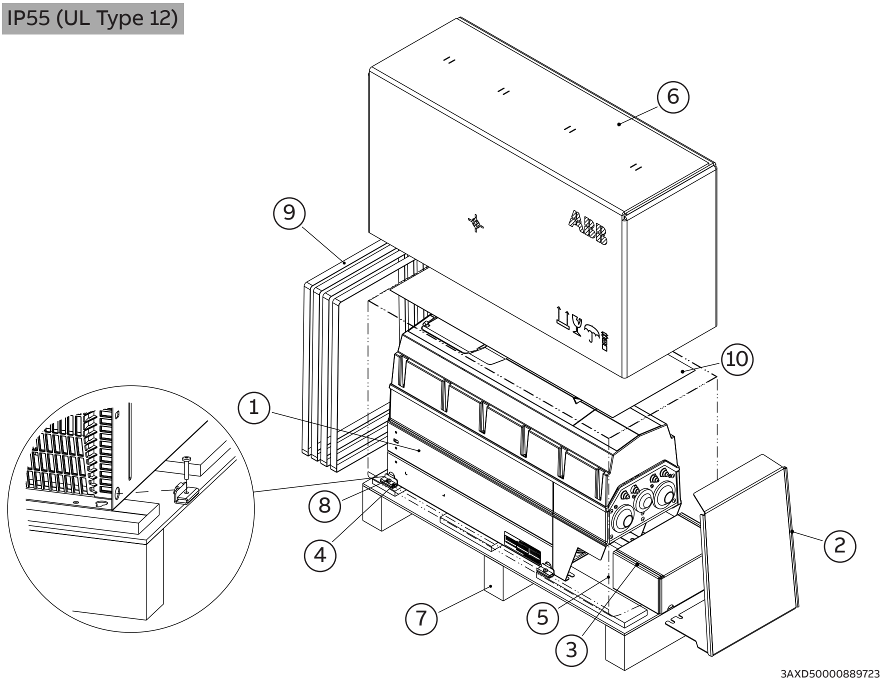


1	Drive with factory installed options	6	Pallet tray
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing. IP21 (UL Type 1) frame R5: Vibration damper package (option +C131) inside the cable box.	7	Screw (4 pcs)
3	Packing bracket (4 pcs)	8	Straps
4	VCI bag	9	Mounting template
5	Cardboard cover	-	-

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (8).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (5) and VCI bag (4).
- Remove the screws (7) and packing brackets (3).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

IP55 (UL Type 12)



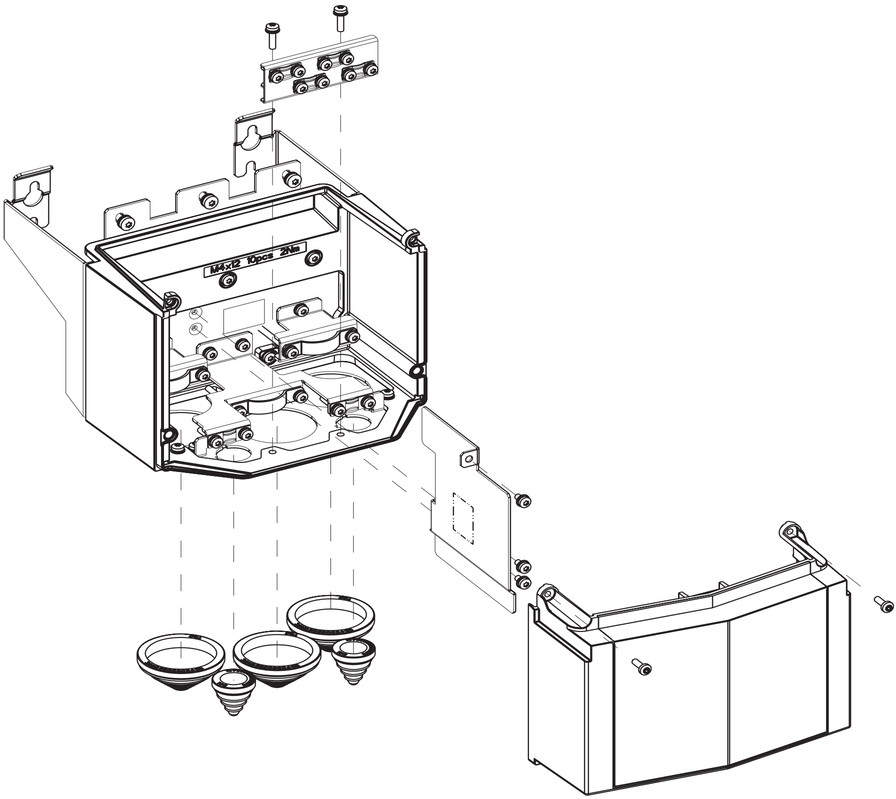
1	Drive with factory installed options	6	Cardboard cover
2	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)	7	Pallet tray
3	Option box	8	Screw (4 pcs)
4	Packing bracket (4 pcs)	9	Straps
5	VCI bag	10	Mounting template

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (9).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (6) and VCI bag (5).
- Remove the screws (8) and packing brackets (4).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

Frame R5 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

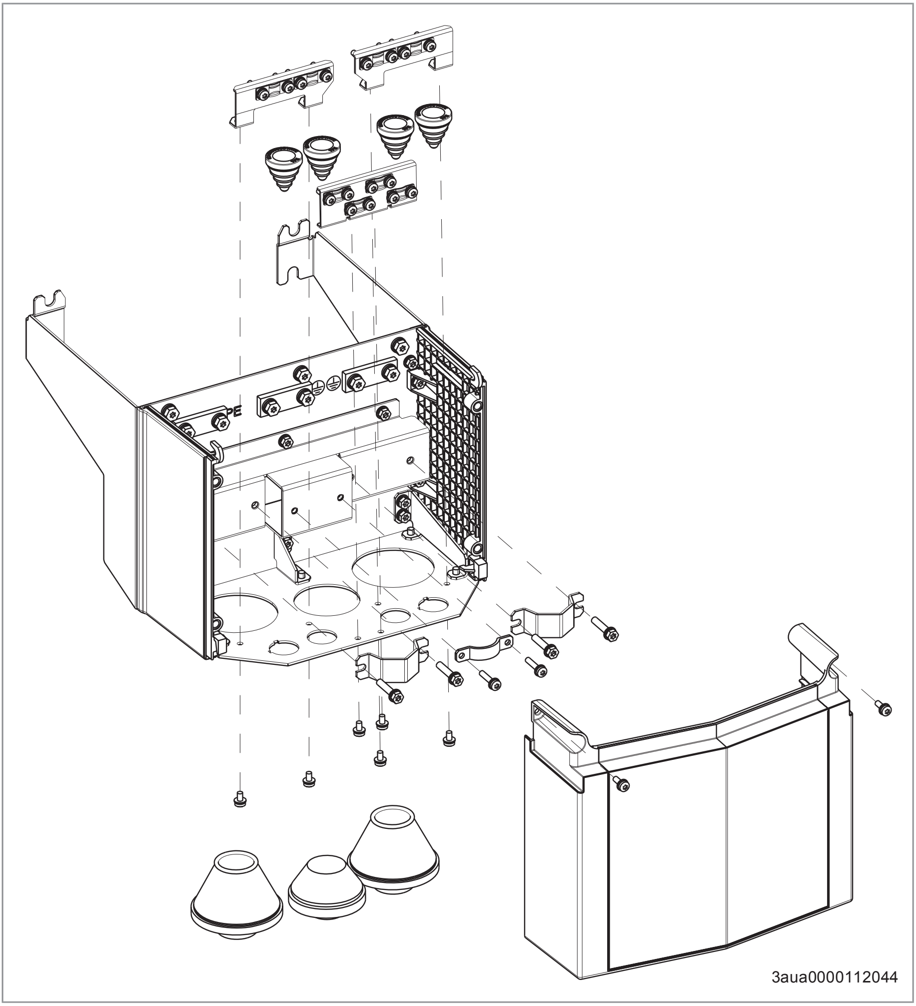
This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



3aua0000118007

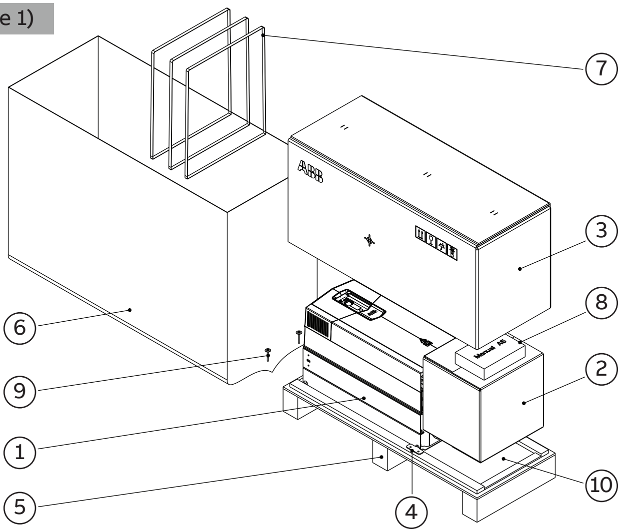
Frame R6 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



Package of frame R7

IP21 (UL Type 1)



3AXD50000012445

1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	VCI bag
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing. **Note:** The cable entry box is mounted to the IP55 drive module frame at the factory	7	Straps
3	Cardboard cover	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker
4	Packing bracket	9	Screws
5	Pallet tray	10	Vibration damper package (option +C131) For frame R6: inside the cable box.

To unpack:

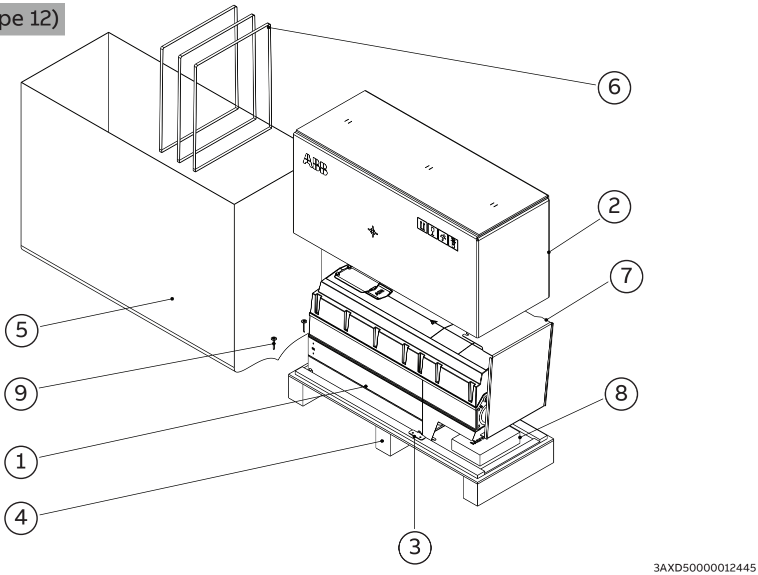
Cut the straps (7).

Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and VCI bag (6).

Remove the screws (9) and packing brackets (4).

Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

IP55 (UL Type 12)



1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	Straps
2	Cardboard cover	7	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)
3	Packing bracket	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker
4	Pallet tray	9	Screws
5	VCI bag	-	-

To unpack:

Cut the straps (6).

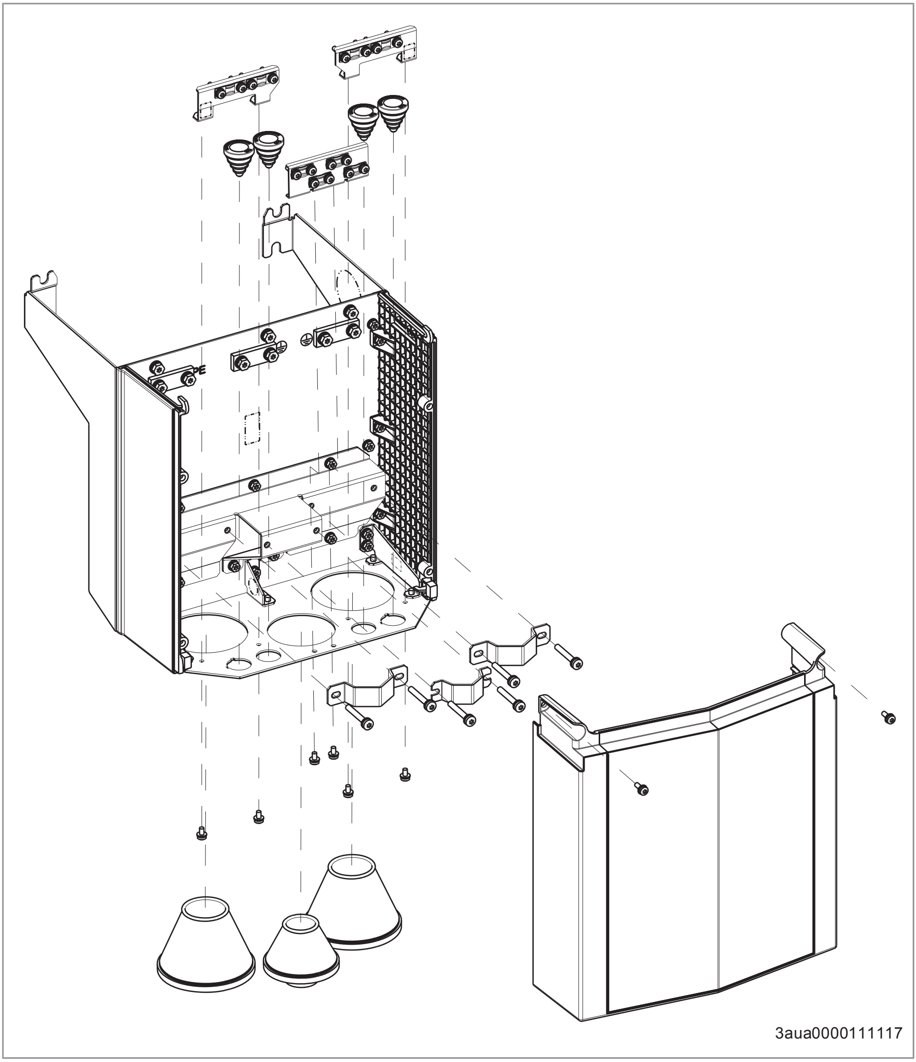
Remove the top cardboard cover (2) and VCI bag (5).

Remove the screws (9) and packing brackets (3).

Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

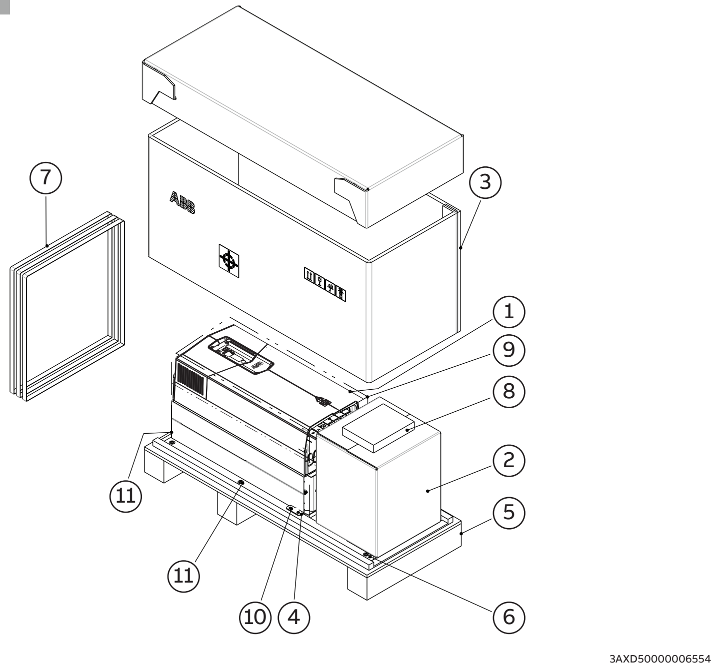
Frame R7 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



Package of frames R8 and R9

IP21 (UL Type 1)

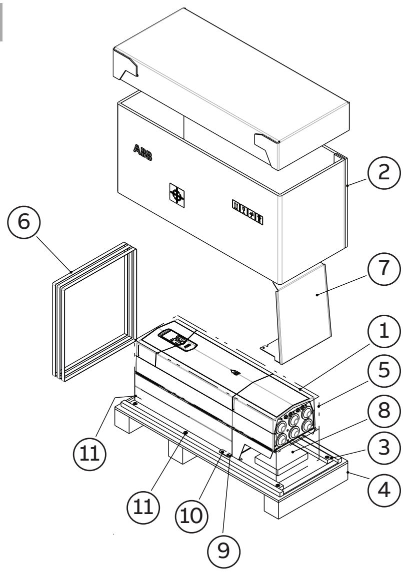


1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	Plywood support (only in frame R8)
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing. **Note:** The cable entry box is mounted to the IP55 drive module frame at the factory	7	Straps
3	Cardboard cover	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker
4	Packing bracket	9	VCI bag
5	Pallet tray	10, 11	Screws

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (7).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and VCI bag (9).
- Remove the screws (10, 11) and packing brackets (4).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

IP55 (UL Type 12)



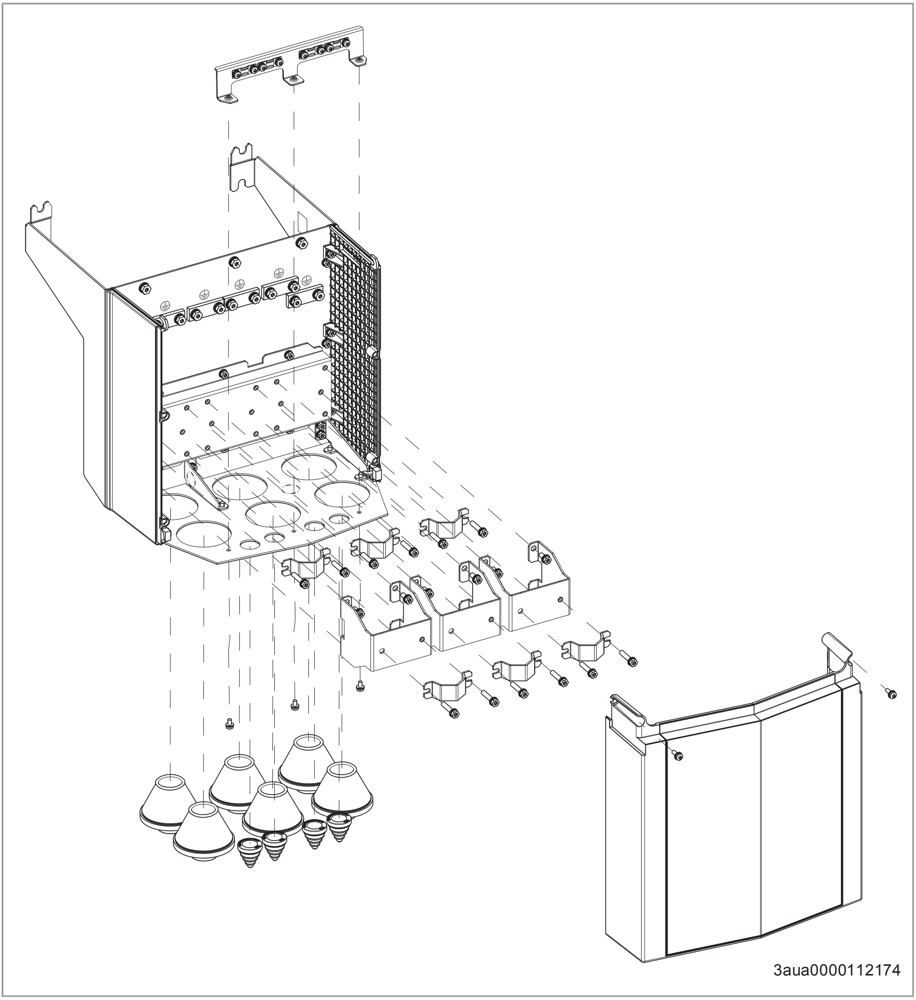
1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	Straps
2	Cardboard cover	7	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)
3	Plywood support (only in frame R8)	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker
4	Pallet tray	9	Packing bracket
5	VCI bag	10, 11	Screws

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (6).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (2) and VCI bag (5).
- Remove the screws (10, 11) and packing brackets (9).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

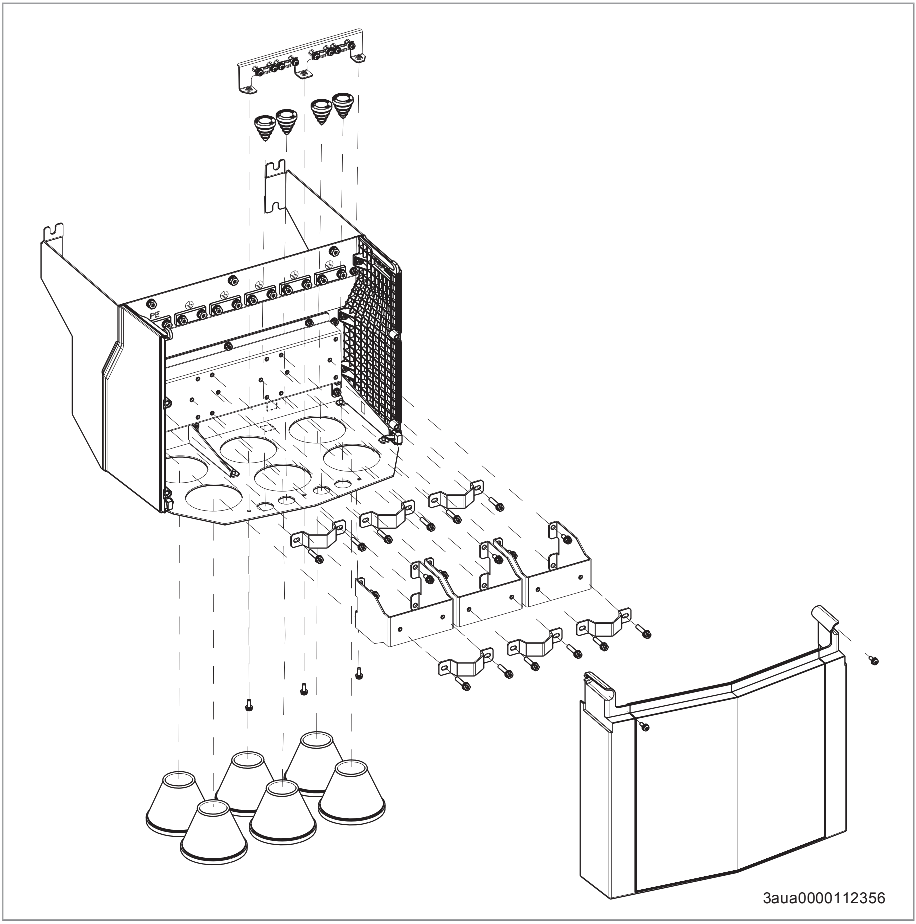
Frame R8 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. There is also an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



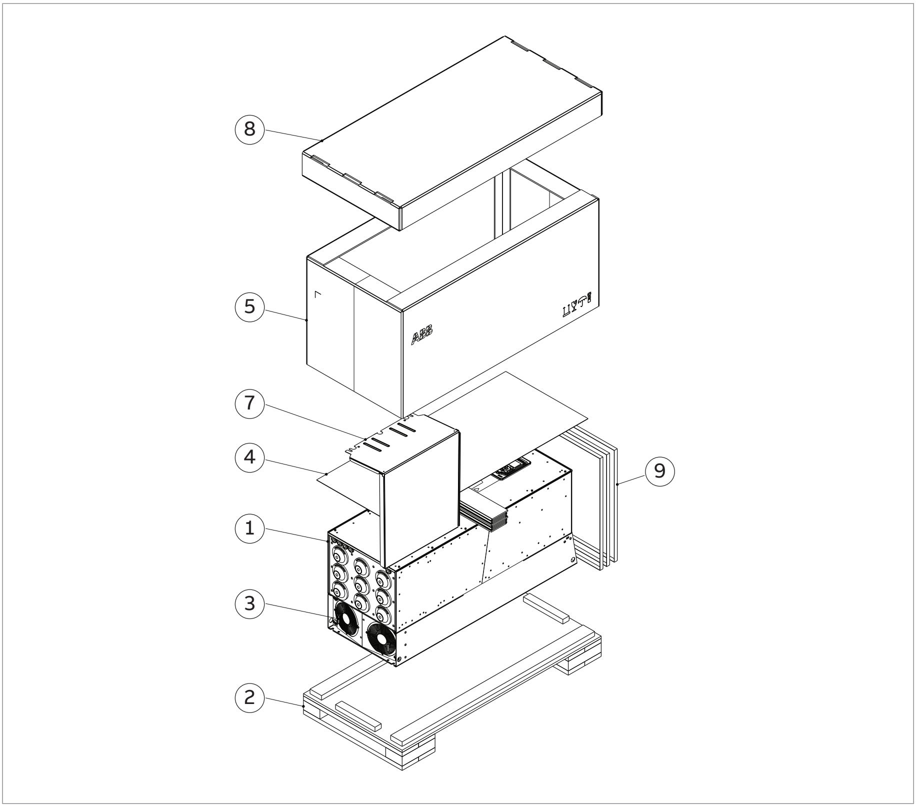
Frame R9 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



Package of frame R9e

The figure below shows the layout of the transport package. Examine that all items are present and there are no signs of damage. Read the data on the type designation label of the drive to make sure that the drive is of the correct type. Refer to section Type designation key (page 39).



1	Drive with factory installed options
2	Pallet
3	Combi screw
4	Mounting template
5	Cardboard sleeve
6	Cardboard support
7	UL Type 12 hood
8	Cardboard lid
9	Straps

To unpack:

- Cut the straps (9).
- Remove the cardboard lid (8) and sleeve (5).
- Remove the hood (7).
- Remove the mounting template (4).
- Remove the combi screws (3)
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive (refer to the figure in section Safety (page 45)).
- Lift the drive with a hoist.

Recycle the package material according to local regulations.

Installing the drive vertically

This section tells you how to install the drive on wall without vibration dampers.

Vibration dampers (option +C131)

Marine type approval (option +C132) requires the installation of vibration dampers for frames R4 to R9 in wall installations. Refer to:

- Vibration dampers for ACS880-01 drives (frames R4 and R5, option +C131) installation guide (3AXD50000010497 [English])
- Vibration dampers for ACS880-01 drives (frames R6 to R9, option +C131) installation guide (3AXD50000013389 [English]) or
- Vibration dampers for ACS880-01 drives (frame R9e, option +C131) installation guide 3AXD50001371845 [English]).

The guide is included in the vibration damper package.

Flange mounting (option +C135)

Name	Code (English)
ACS880-01…+C135 drives with flange mounting kit supplement	3AXD50000349814
ACS880-01…+C135 frames R1 to R3 flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000026158
ACS880-01…+C135 frames R4 to R5 flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000026159
ACS880-01…+C135, ACS580-01…+C135, ACH580-01…+C135 and ACQ580-01…+C135 frames R6 to R9 and R9e flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000019099

UK gland plate (option +H358)

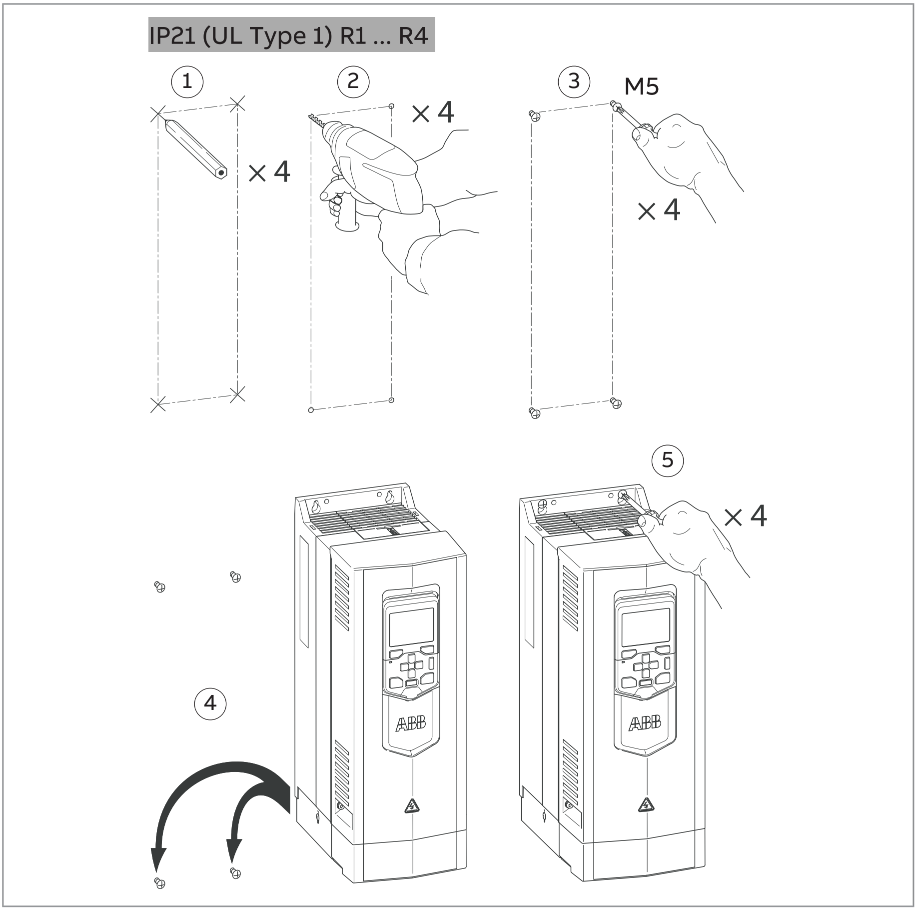
Refer to ACS880-01, ACS580-01, ACH580-01, ACQ580-01 UK gland plate (+H358) installation guide (3AXD50000034735 [English]).

Cabinet installation (options +P940 and +P944)

Name	Code (English)
Drive modules cabinet design and construction instructions	3AUA0000107668
ACS880…+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement	3AUA0000145446

Frames R1 to R4 (IP21, UL Type 1)

1. Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four mounting holes. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.
2. Drill the mounting holes.
3. Insert anchors or plugs into the holes and start the screws or bolts into the anchors or plugs. Install the screws or bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the screws or bolts yet.
4. Position the drive onto the bolts on the wall.
5. Tighten the bolts in the wall securely.



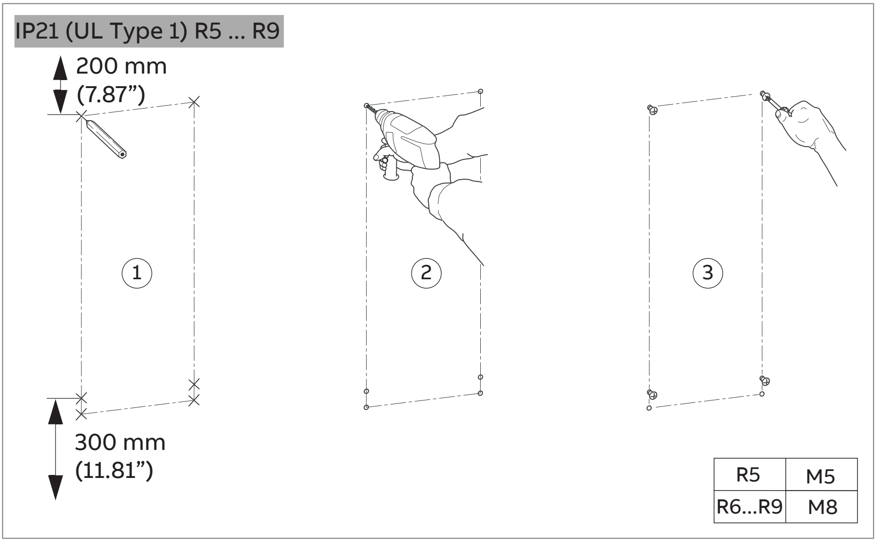
Frames R5 to R9 (IP21, UL Type 1)

1. Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four or six mounting holes. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.

   Note: The lowest mounting holes and screws or bolts are optional. If you use them, you can replace the drive module without removing the cable entry box from the wall.

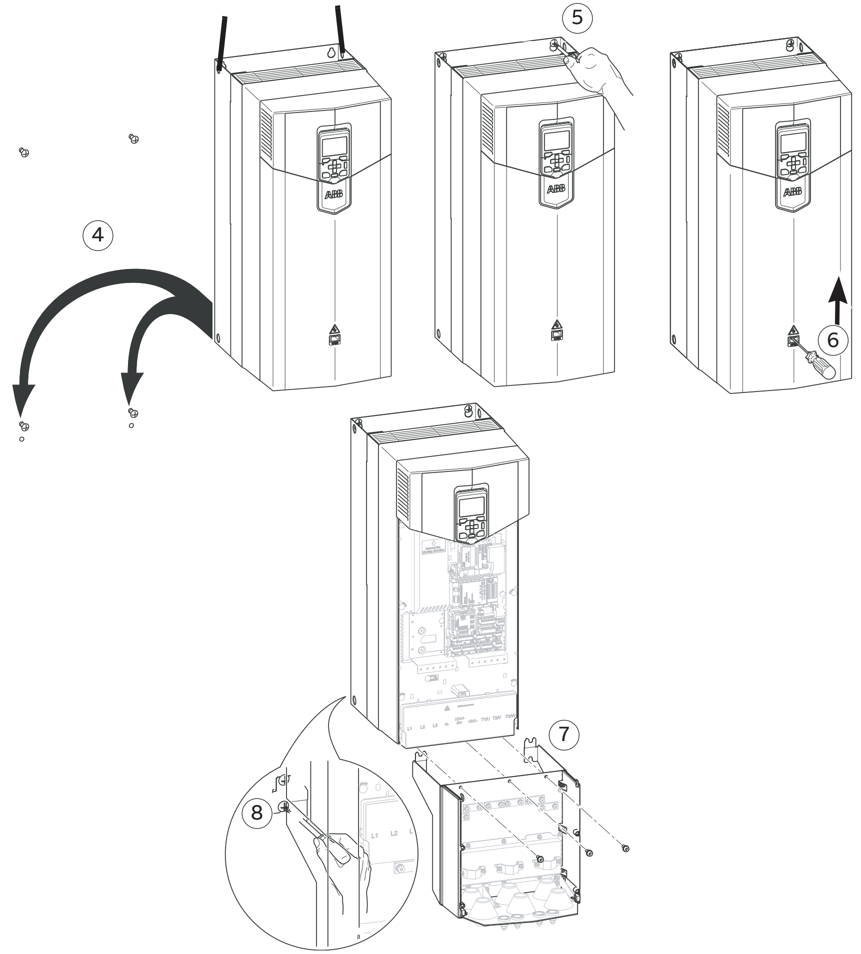
2. Drill the mounting holes.

3. Insert fixing anchors or plugs into the holes. Start the two top bolts and the two lower bolts into the anchors or plugs. Install the bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the bolts yet.



4. Position the drive module onto the bolts on the wall.
5. Tighten the top mounting bolts in the wall securely.
6. Remove the front cover.
7. Attach the cable box to the drive frame. For instructions, refer to the assembly drawing in the cable box. A view of frame R8 is shown below.
8. Tighten the lower mounting bolts in the wall securely.

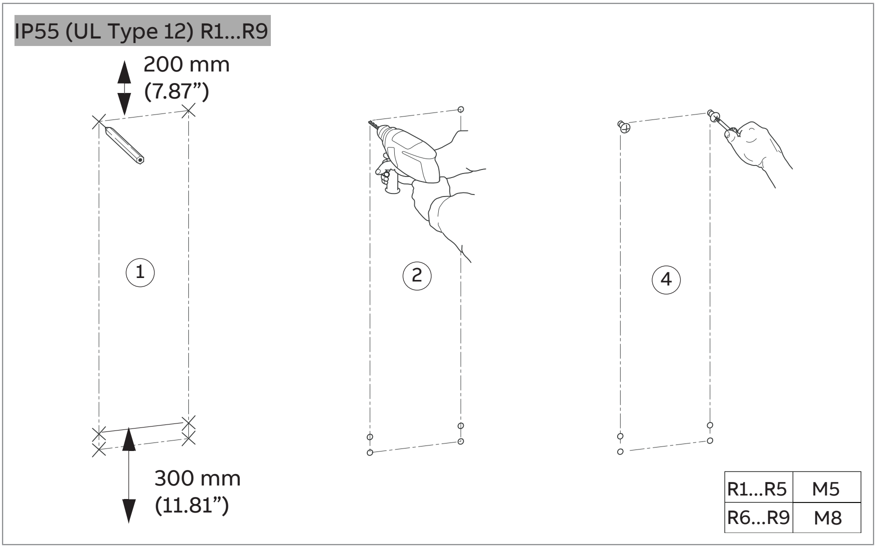
IP21 (UL Type 1) R5 ... R9



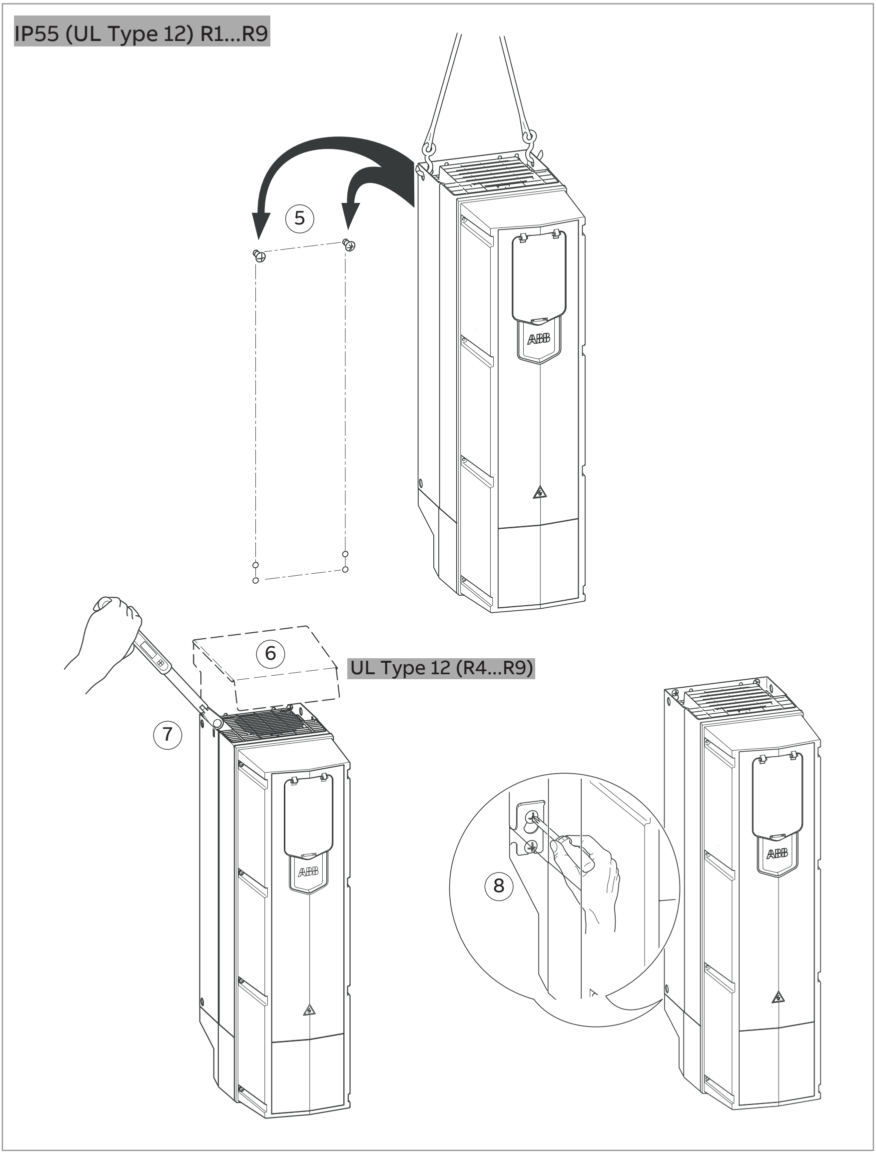
Frames R1 to R9 (IP55, UL Type 12)

Note: Do not open or remove the cable box for easier installation. If you open the cable box, the gaskets do not comply with the degree of protection.

1. Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four or six mounting holes. The lowest holes are optional. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.
2. Drill the mounting holes.
3. Insert fixing anchors or plugs into the holes.
4. Start the top bolts into the mounting holes. Install the bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the bolts yet.



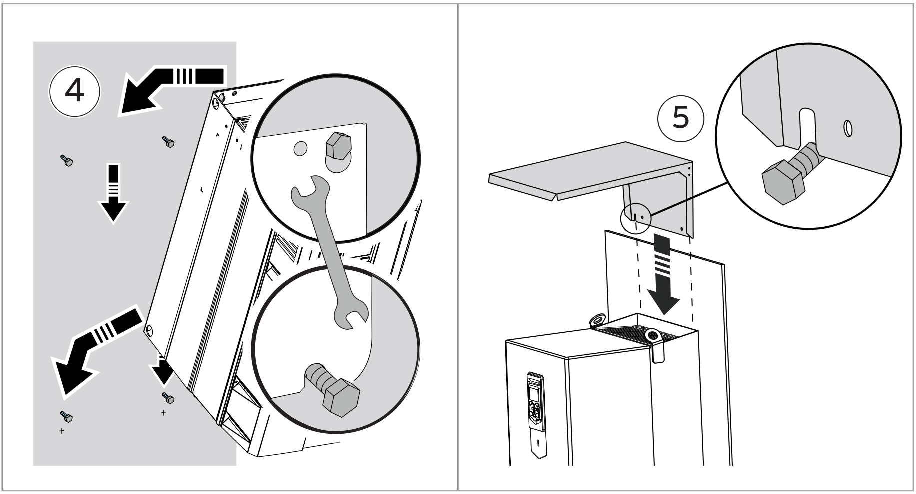
5. Position the drive onto the top bolts on the wall. Lift the drive with another person because it is heavy.
6. For UL Type 12 drives of frames R4 to R9: Put the hood onto the top bolts.
7. Tighten the top bolts in the wall securely.
8. Install the lower bolts into the mounting holes.



Frame R9e

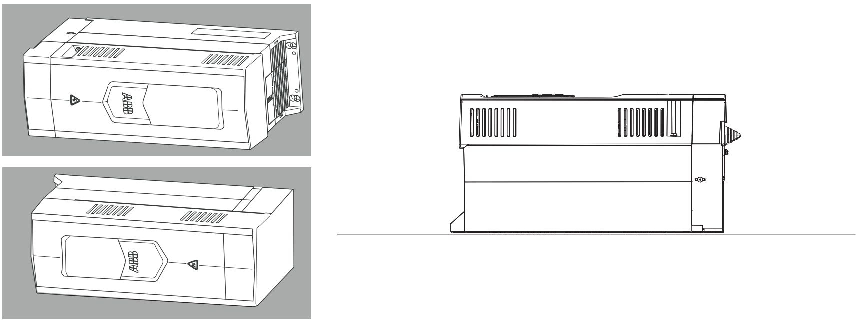
Select fasteners that comply with local requirements applicable to wall surface materials, drive weight and application. Refer to Technical data for the dimensions, weights and free space requirements. Refer to Dimension drawings for the mounting hole dimensions.

1. Make marks with the help of the mounting template. Remove the mounting template before you install the drive on the wall.
2. Drill the holes and put anchors or plugs into the holes.
3. Install the screws. Leave a gap between the screw head and mounting surface.
4. Put the drive on the wall.
5. UL Type 12 drives: insert the hood behind the drive onto the top screws.
6. Tighten the screws.



Installing the drive horizontally

You can install the drive horizontally with the left or right side up. You can also install the drive on its rear side on a floor inside a cabinet enclosure. Do the steps in section Installing the drive vertically (page 63). For free space requirements, refer to Free space requirements (page 294).



5

Guidelines for planning the electrical installation

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains guidelines for planning the electrical installation of the drive.

Limitation of liability

The installation must always be designed and made according to applicable local laws and regulations. ABB does not assume any liability whatsoever for any installation that breaches the local laws and/or other regulations. Furthermore, if the recommendations given by ABB are not followed, the drive may experience problems that the warranty does not cover.

North America

Installations must be compliant with NFPA 70 (NEC)[1)] and/or Canadian Electrical Code (CE code), along with state and local codes for your location and application.

[1)] National Fire Protection Association 70 (National Electric Code).

Selecting the main supply disconnecting device

You must equip the drive with a main supply disconnecting device which meets the local safety regulations. You must be able to lock the disconnecting device to the open position for installation and maintenance work.

To comply with European Union directives and United Kingdom regulations related to standard EN 60204-1, the disconnecting device must be one of these types:

- switch-disconnector of utilization category AC-23B (IEC 60947-3)
- disconnector that has an auxiliary contact that in all cases causes switching devices to break the load circuit before the opening of the main contacts of the disconnector (EN 60947-3)
- circuit-breaker suitable for isolation in accordance with IEC 60947-2.

Selecting the main contactor

You can equip the drive with a main contactor.

Follow these guidelines when you select a customer-defined main contactor:

- Dimension the contactor according to the nominal voltage and current of the drive. Also consider the environmental conditions such as surrounding air temperature.
- IEC installations: Select contactor with utilization category AC-1 (number of operations under load) according to IEC 60947-4.
- Consider the application life time requirements.

Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive

Use asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors or ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors) with the drive.

Select the motor size and drive type from the rating table on basis of the AC line voltage and motor load. You can find the rating table in the appropriate hardware manual. You can also use the DriveSize PC tool.

Make sure that the motor can be used with an AC drive. Refer to Requirements tables (page 73). For basics of protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems, refer to Protecting the motor insulation and bearings (page 72).

Note:

- Consult the motor manufacturer before using a motor with nominal voltage that differs from the AC line voltage connected to the drive input.
- The voltage peaks at the motor terminals are relative to the supply voltage of the drive, not to the drive output voltage.

Protecting the motor insulation and bearings

The drive employs modern IGBT inverter technology. Regardless of frequency, the drive output comprises pulses of approximately the drive DC bus voltage with a very short rise time. The pulse voltage can almost double at the motor terminals, depending on the attenuation and reflection properties of the motor cable and the terminals. This can cause additional stress on the motor and motor cable insulation.

Modern variable speed drives with their fast rising voltage pulses and high switching frequencies can generate current pulses that flow through the motor bearings. This can gradually erode the bearing races and rolling elements.

d*u*/d*t* filters protect motor insulation system and reduce bearing currents. Common mode filters mainly reduce bearing currents. Insulated N-end (non-drive end) bearings protect the motor bearings.

Requirements tables

These tables show how to select the motor insulation system and when a drive d*u*/d*t* and common mode filters and insulated N-end (non-drive end) motor bearings are required. Ignoring the requirements or improper installation may shorten motor life or damage the motor bearings and voids the warranty.

Requirements for ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 78).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for	
		Motor insulation system	ABB *du/dt* and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings
			P_n < 100 kW and frame size < IEC 315
			P_n < 134 hp and frame size < NEMA 500
Random-wound M2_, M3_ and M4_	$U_n \leq$ 500 V	Standard	-
	500 V < $U_n \leq$ 600 V	Standard	+ *du/dt*
		Reinforced	-
	600 V < $U_n \leq$ 690 V	Reinforced (+405 special insulation)	- [1]
Form-wound HX_ and AM_	380 V < $U_n \leq$ 690 V	Standard	N/A
Old [2] form-wound HX_ and modular	380 V < $U_n \leq$ 690 V	Check with the motor manufacturer.	+ N + *du/dt* with voltages over 500 V + CMF
Random-wound HX_ and AM_ [3]	0 V < $U_n \leq$ 500 V	Enamelled wire with fiber glass taping	+ N + CMF
	500 V < $U_n \leq$ 690 V		+ N + *du/dt* + CMF
HDP	Consult the motor manufacturer.		

[1] Not applicable to motors for explosive atmospheres. Refer to Low voltage Motors for explosive atmospheres catalog.

[2] manufactured before 1.1.1998

[3] For motors manufactured before 1.1.1998, check for additional instructions with the motor manufacturer.

Requirements for ABB motors, $P_n \geq 100$ kW (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 78).

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="4">Motor type</th><th rowspan="4">Nominal AC line voltage</th><th colspan="3">Requirement for</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="3">Motor insulation system</th><th colspan="2">ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings</th></tr>
<tr><th>100 kW ≤ P_n < 350 kW
or
IEC 315 ≤ frame size < IEC 400</th><th>P_n ≥ 350 kW
or
frame size ≥ IEC 400</th></tr>
<tr><th>134 hp ≤ P_n < 469 hp
or
NEMA 500 ≤ frame size ≤ NEMA 580</th><th>P_n ≥ 469 hp
or
frame size > NEMA 580</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Random-wound M2_, M3_ and M4_</td><td>U_n ≤ 500 V</td><td>Standard</td><td>+ N</td><td>+ N + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">500 V < U_n ≤ 600 V</td><td>Standard</td><td>+ N + du/dt</td><td>+ N + du/dt + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reinforced</td><td>+ N</td><td>+ N + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>600 V < U_n ≤ 690 V</td><td>Reinforced (+405 special insulation)</td><td>+ N [1]</td><td>+ N + CMF [1]</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Form-wound HX_ and AM_</td><td rowspan="2">380 V < U_n ≤ 690 V</td><td rowspan="2">Standard</td><td rowspan="2">+ N + CMF</td><td>P_n < 500 kW: +N + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>P_n ≥ 500 kW: +N + du/dt + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>Old [2] form-wound HX_ and modular</td><td>380 V < U_n ≤ 690 V</td><td>Check with the motor manufacturer.</td><td colspan="2">+ N + du/dt with voltages over 500 V + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Random-wound HX_ and AM_ [3]</td><td>0 V < U_n ≤ 500 V</td><td rowspan="2">Enamelled wire with fiber glass taping</td><td colspan="2">+ N + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>500 V < U_n ≤ 690 V</td><td colspan="2">+ N + du/dt + CMF</td></tr>
<tr><td>HDP</td><td colspan="4">Consult the motor manufacturer.</td></tr>
</table>

[1] Not applicable to motors for explosive atmospheres. Refer to Low voltage Motors for explosive atmospheres catalog.

[2] manufactured before 1.1.1998

[3] For motors manufactured before 1.1.1998, check for additional instructions with the motor manufacturer.

Requirements for non-ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp)

Refer to Abbreviations (page 78).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for	
		Motor insulation system	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings
			P_n < 100 kW and frame size < IEC 315
			P_n < 134 hp and frame size < NEMA 500
Random-wound and form-wound	$U_n \leq$ 420 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	-
	420 V < $U_n \leq$ 500 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	+ du/dt
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V, 0.2 µs rise time	-
	500 V < $U_n \leq$ 600 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V	+ du/dt
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	-
	600 V < $U_n \leq$ 690 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	+ du/dt
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 2000 V, 0.3 µs rise time [1)]	-

1) If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Requirements for non-ABB motors, $P_n \geq 100$ kW (134 hp)

Refer to Abbreviations (page 78).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for		
		Motor insulation system	**ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings**	
			100 kW ≤ P_n < 350 kW or IEC 315 ≤ frame size < IEC 400	**P_n ≥ 350 kW or frame size ≥ IEC 400**
			134 hp ≤ P_n < 469 hp or NEMA 500 ≤ frame size ≤ NEMA 580	**P_n ≥ 469 hp or frame size > NEMA 580**
Random-wound and form-wound	U_n ≤ 420 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	420 V < U_n ≤ 500 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	+ *du/dt* + (N or CMF)	+ N + *du/dt* + CMF
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V, 0.2 µs rise time	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	500 V < U_n ≤ 600 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V	+ *du/dt* + (N or CMF)	+ N + *du/dt* + CMF
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	600 V < U_n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	+ *du/dt* + N	+ N + *du/dt* + CMF
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 2000 V, 0.3 µs rise time [1]	+ N + CMF	+ N + CMF

[1] If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Abbreviations

Abbr.	Definition
U_n	Nominal AC line voltage
$\hat{U}_{LL}$	Peak line-to-line voltage at motor terminals which the motor insulation must withstand
P_n	Motor nominal power
d*u*/d*t*	d*u*/d*t* filter at the output of the drive
CMF	Common mode filter of the drive
N	N-end bearing: insulated motor non-drive end bearing
n.a.	Motors of this power range are not available as standard units. Consult the motor manufacturer.

Availability of d*u*/d*t* filter and common mode filter by drive type

Product type	Availability of du/dt filter	Availability of common mode filter (CMF)
ACS880-01	Ordered separately, refer to chapter Filters (page 387)	Frames R1...R9: plus code option +E208. Frame R9e: included in standard delivery.

Additional requirements for explosion-safe (EX) motors

If you use an explosion-safe (EX) motor, obey the rules in the requirements table above. In addition, consult the motor manufacturer for any further requirements.

Additional requirements for ABB motors of types other than M2_, M3_, M4_, HX_ and AM_

Use the selection criteria given for non-ABB motors.

Additional requirements for braking applications

When the motor brakes the machinery, the intermediate circuit DC voltage of the drive increases, the effect being similar to the motor supply voltage increasing by up to 20 percent. Consider this voltage increase when specifying the motor insulation requirements if the motor will be braking a large part of its operation time.

Example: Motor insulation requirement for a 400 V AC line voltage application must be selected as if the drive were supplied with 480 V.

Additional requirements for ABB high-output and IP23 motors

The rated output power of high output motors is higher than what is stated for the particular frame size in EN 50347 (2001).

This table shows the requirements for protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems for ABB random-wound motor series (for example, M3AA, M3AP and M3BP).

Nominal AC supply voltage	Requirement for			
	Motor insulation system	ABB d*u*/d*t* and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings		
		P_n < 100 kW	100 kW ≤ P_n < 200 kW	P_n ≥ 200 kW
		P_n < 140 hp	140 hp ≤ P_n < 268 hp	P_n ≥ 268 hp
U_n ≤ 500 V	Standard	-	+ N	+ N + CMF
500 V < U_n ≤ 600 V	Standard	+ d*u*/d*t*	+ d*u*/d*t* + N	+ d*u*/d*t* + N + CMF
	Reinforced	-	+ N	+ N + CMF
600 V < U_n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced	+ d*u*/d*t*	+ d*u*/d*t* + N	+ d*u*/d*t* + N + CMF

Additional requirements for non-ABB high-output and IP23 motors

The rated output power of high-output motors is higher than what is stated for the particular frame size in EN 50347 (2001).

If you plan to use a non-ABB high-output motor or an IP23 motor, consider these additional requirements for protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems:

- If motor power is below 350 kW: Equip the drive and/or motor with the filters and/or bearings according to the table below.
- If motor power is above 350 kW: Consult the motor manufacturer.

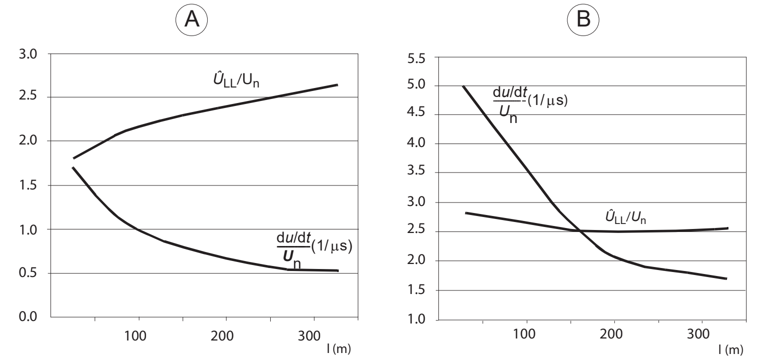
Nominal AC supply voltage	Requirement for		
	Motor insulation system	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings	
		P_n < 100 kW or frame size < IEC 315	100 kW < P_n < 350 kW or IEC 315 < frame size < IEC 400
		P_n < 134 hp or frame size < NEMA 500	134 hp < P_n < 469 hp or NEMA 500 < frame size < NEMA 580
U_n ≤ 420 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	+ N or CMF	+ N or CMF
420 V < U_n < 500 V	Standard: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1300 V	+ du/dt + (N or CMF)	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V, 0.2 microsecond rise time	+ N or CMF	+ N or CMF
500 V < U_n ≤ 600 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1600 V	+ du/dt + (N or CMF)	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
600 V < U_n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 1800 V	+ N + du/dt	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ = 2000 V, 0.3 microsecond rise time [1)]	+ N + CMF	+ N + CMF

[1)] If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Additional data for calculating the rise time and the peak line-to-line voltage

The diagrams below show the relative peak line-to-line voltage and rate of change of voltage as a function of the motor cable length. If you need to calculate the actual peak voltage and voltage rise time considering the actual cable length, proceed as follows:

- Peak line-to line voltage: Read the relative $\hat{U}_{LL}/U_n$ value from the diagram below and multiply it by the nominal supply voltage (U_n).
- Voltage rise time: Read the relative values $\hat{U}_{LL}/U_n$ and $(\mathrm{d}u/\mathrm{d}t)/U_n$ from the diagram below. Multiply the values by the nominal supply voltage (U_n) and substitute into equation $t = 0.8 \cdot \hat{U}_{LL}/(\mathrm{d}u/\mathrm{d}t)$.



A	Drive with d*u*/d*t* filter
B	Drive without d*u*/d*t* filter
l	Motor cable length
$\hat{U}_{LL}/U_n$	Relative peak line-to-line voltage
$(du/dt)/U_n$	Relative d*u*/d*t* value
Note: $\hat{U}_{LL}$ and d*u*/d*t* values are approximately 20% higher with resistor braking.	

Additional note for sine filters

A sine filter also protects the motor insulation system. The peak phase-to-phase voltage with a sine filter is approximately $1.5 \cdot U_n$.

Selecting the power cables

General guidelines

Select the input power and motor cables according to local regulations.

- **Current:** Select a cable capable of carrying the maximum load current and suitable for the prospective short-circuit current provided by the supply network. The method of installation and ambient temperature affect the cable current carrying capacity. Obey local regulations and laws.
- **Temperature:** For an IEC installation, select a cable rated for at least 70 °C (158 °F) maximum permissible temperature of conductor in continuous use.

  For North America, select a cable rated for at least 75 °C (167 °F).

  Important: For certain product types or option configurations higher temperature rating may be required. Refer to the technical data for details.
- **Voltage:** 600 V AC cable is accepted for up to 500 V AC. 750 V AC cable is accepted for up to 600 V AC. 1000 V AC cable is accepted for up to 690 V AC.

To comply with the EMC requirements of the CE mark, use one of the preferred cable types. Refer to Preferred power cable types (page 83).

Symmetrical shielded cable reduces electromagnetic emission of the whole drive system as well as the stress on motor insulation, bearing currents and wear.

Metal conduit reduces electromagnetic emission of the whole drive system.

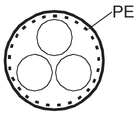
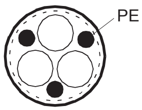
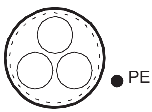
Typical power cable sizes

Refer to the technical data in the applicable hardware manual.

Power cable types

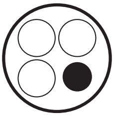
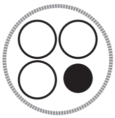
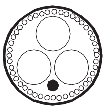
Preferred power cable types

This section shows the preferred cable types. Make sure that the selected cable type also complies with local/state/country electrical codes.

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
 Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and concentric PE conductor as shield (or armor)	Yes	Yes
 Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and symmetrically constructed PE conductor and a shield (or armor)	Yes	Yes
 Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and a shield (or armor), and separate PE conductor/cable [1]	Yes	Yes

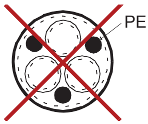
[1] A separate PE conductor is required if the conductivity of the shield (or armor) is not sufficient for the PE use.

Alternate power cable types

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
 Four-conductor cable in plastic jacket (three phase conductors and PE)	Yes	Yes with phase conductor smaller than 10 mm^2 (8 AWG) Cu, or motors up to 30 kW (40 hp). **Note:** Shielded or armored cable, or cabling in metal conduit is always recommended to minimize radio frequency interference.
 Four-conductor armored cable (three phase conductors and PE)	Yes	Yes with phase conductor smaller than 10 mm^2 (8 AWG) Cu, or motors up to 30 kW (40 hp)
 Shielded (Al/Cu shield or armor)[1] four-conductor cable (three phase conductors and a PE)	Yes	Yes with motors up to 100 kW (135 hp). A potential equalization between the frames of motor and driven equipment is required.

1) Armor may act as an EMC shield, as long as it provides the same performance as a concentric EMC shield of a shielded cable. To be effective at high frequencies, the shield conductivity must be at least 1/10 of the phase conductor conductivity. The effectiveness of the shield can be evaluated based on the shield inductance, which must be low and only slightly dependent on frequency. The requirements are easily met with a copper or aluminum shield/armor. The cross-section of a steel shield must be ample and the shield helix must have a low gradient. A galvanized steel shield has a better high-frequency conductivity than a non-galvanized steel shield.

Not allowed power cable types

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
 Symmetrical shielded cable with individual shields for each phase conductor	No	No

Additional guidelines – North America

ABB recommends the use of metallic conduit for power wiring. ABB also recommends the use of symmetrical shielded VFD cable between drive and motor(s).

This table shows examples of methods for wiring the drive. Refer to NFPA 70 (NEC) along with state and local codes for the appropriate methods for your application.

Wiring method	Notes
Conduit - Metallic 1) 2)	
Electrical metallic tubing: Type EMT	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable. Use separate conduit run for each motor. Do not run input power wiring and motor wiring in the same conduit.
Rigid metal conduit: Type RMC	
Liquid-tight flexible metal electrical conduit: Type LFMC	
Conduit - Non-metallic 2) 3)	
Liquid-tight flexible non-metallic conduit: Type LFNC	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable. Use separate conduit run for each motor. Do not run input power wiring and motor wiring in the same conduit.
Wireways 2)	
Metallic	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable. Separate motor wiring from input power wiring and other low voltage wiring. Do not run outputs of multiple drives parallel. Bundle each cable (wiring) together and use separators where possible.

Wiring method	Notes
Free air [2]	
Enclosures, air handlers, etc.	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable. Allowed internally in enclosures when in accordance with UL.

1) Metallic conduit may be used as an additional ground path, provided this path is a solid path capable of handling ground currents.

2) Refer to NFPA NFPA 70 (NEC), UL, and local codes for your application.

3) Non-metallic conduit use underground is allowed; however, these installations inherently have an increased chance for nuisance problems due to the potential for water/moisture in the conduit. Water/moisture in the conduit increases the likelihood of VFD faults or warnings. Proper installation is required to make sure there is no intrusion of water/moisture.

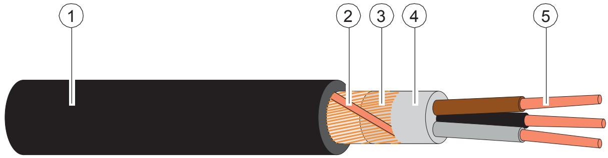
Metal conduit

Couple separate parts of a metal conduit together: bridge the joints with a ground conductor bonded to the conduit on each side of the joint. Also bond the conduits to the drive enclosure and motor frame. Use separate conduits for input power, motor, brake resistor, and control wiring. Do not run motor wiring from more than one drive in the same conduit.

Power cable shield

If the cable shield is used as the sole protective earth (PE) conductor, make sure that its conductivity agrees with the PE conductor requirements.

To effectively suppress radiated and conducted radio-frequency emissions, the cable shield conductivity must be at least 1/10 of the phase conductor conductivity. The requirements are easily met with a copper or aluminum shield. The minimum requirement of the motor cable shield of the drive is shown below. It consists of a concentric layer of copper wires with an open helix of copper tape or copper wire. The better and tighter the shield, the lower the emission level and bearing currents.



1	Insulation jacket
2	Helix of copper tape or copper wire
3	Copper wire shield
4	Inner insulation
5	Cable core

Grounding requirements

This section gives general requirements for grounding the drive. When you plan the grounding of the drive, obey all the applicable national and local regulations.

The conductivity of the protective earth conductor(s) must be sufficient.

Unless local wiring regulations state otherwise, the cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor must agree with the conditions that require automatic disconnection of the supply required in 411.3.2 of IEC 60364-4-41:2005 and be capable of withstanding the prospective fault current during the disconnection time of the protective device. The cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor must be selected from the table below or calculated according to 543.1 of IEC 60364-5-54.

The table shows the minimum cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor related to the phase conductor size according to IEC/UL 61800-5-1 when the phase conductor(s) and the protective earth conductor are made of the same metal. If they are different metals, the cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor must be determined in a manner which produces a conductance equivalent to that which results from the application of this table.

Cross-sectional area of the phase conductors **S (mm²)**	**Minimum cross-sectional area of the corresponding protective earth conductor** **S_p (mm²)**
$S \leq 16$	S [1]
$16 < S \leq 35$	16
$35 < S$	S/2

[1] For the minimum conductor size in IEC installations, refer to Additional grounding requirements – IEC (page 88).
If the protective earth conductor is not part of the input power cable or input power cable enclosure, the minimum permitted cross-sectional area is:
- 2.5 mm^2 if the conductor is mechanically protected,
  or
- 4 mm^2 if the conductor is not mechanically protected. If the equipment is cord-connected, the protective earth conductor must be the last conductor to be interrupted if there is a failure in the strain relief mechanism.

Additional grounding requirements – IEC

This section gives grounding requirements according to standard IEC/EN 61800-5-1.

Because the normal touch current of the drive is more than 3.5 mA AC or 10 mA DC:

- the minimum size of the protective earth conductor must comply with the local safety regulations for high protective earth conductor current equipment, and
- you must use one of these connection methods:
  1. a fixed connection and:
     - a protective earth conductor with a minimum cross-sectional area according to local regulations and at the minimum of 10 mm^2 Cu or 16 mm^2 Al (as an alternative when aluminum cables are permitted),
       or
     - a second protective earth conductor of the same cross-sectional area as the original protective earth conductor,
       or
     - a device that automatically disconnects the supply if the protective earth conductor is damaged.
  2. a connection with an industrial connector according to IEC 60309 and a minimum protective earth conductor cross-section of 2.5 mm^2 as part of a multi-conductor power cable. Sufficient strain relief must be provided.

If the protective earth conductor is routed through a plug and socket, or similar means of disconnection, it must not be possible to disconnect it unless power is simultaneously removed.

Note: You can use power cable shields as protective earth conductors only when their conductivity is sufficient.

Additional grounding requirements – UL (NEC)

This section gives grounding requirements according to standard UL 61800-5-1.

The protective earth conductor must be sized as specified in Article 250.122 and table 250.122 of the National Electric Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

For cord-connected equipment, it must not be possible to disconnect the protective earth conductor before power is removed.

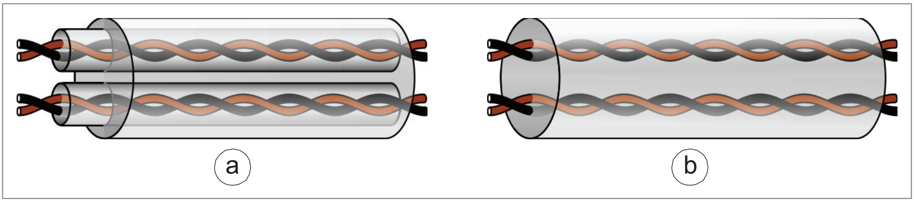
Selecting the control cables

Shielding

Only use shielded control cables.

Use a double-shielded twisted pair cable for analog signals. ABB recommends this type of cable also for the pulse encoder signals. Use one individually shielded pair for each signal. Do not use common return for different analog signals.

A double-shielded cable (a) is the best alternative for low-voltage digital signals, but single-shielded (b) twisted pair cable is also acceptable.



Signals in separate cables

Run analog and digital signals in separate, shielded cables. Do not mix 24 V DC and 115/230 V AC signals in the same cable.

Signals that can be run in the same cable

If their voltage does not exceed 48 V, relay-controlled signals can be run in the same cables as digital input signals. The relay-controlled signals should be run as twisted pairs.

Relay cable

The cable type with braided metallic shield (for example ÖLFLEX by LAPPKABEL, Germany) has been tested and approved by ABB.

Control panel cable

Use an EIA-485, Cat 5e (or better) cable with male RJ45 connectors. The maximum permitted length of the cable is 100 m (328 ft).

PC tool cable

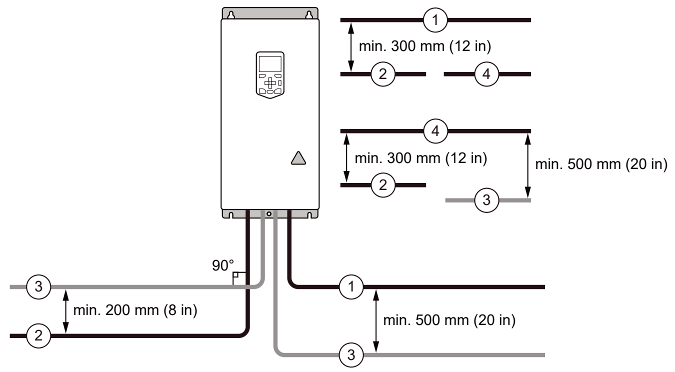
Connect the Drive Composer PC tool through the USB port of the control panel. Use a USB Type A (PC) - Type Mini-B (control panel) cable. The maximum length of the cable is 3 m (9.8 ft).

Routing the cables

General guidelines – IEC

- Install the motor cable away from other cables. The motor cables of several drives can be installed in parallel and next to each other.
- Install the motor cable, input power cable, and control cables on separate trays.
- Avoid long parallel runs of motor cables with other cables.
- If control cables must cross power cables, make sure that they are arranged at an angle as near to 90 degrees as possible.
- Do not run extra cables through the drive.
- Make sure that the cable trays have good electrical bonding to each other and to the grounding electrodes. Aluminum tray systems can be used to improve local equalizing of potential.

The figure shows the cable routing guidelines with an example drive.



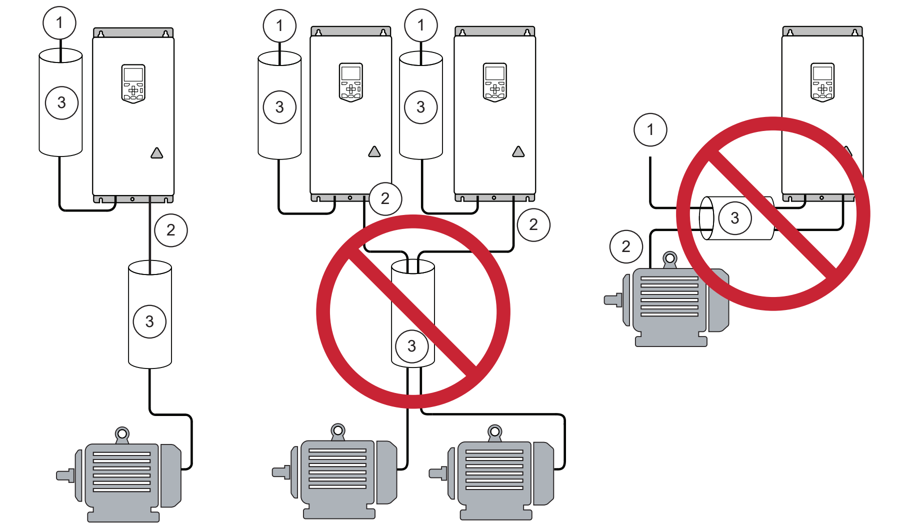
1	Motor cable
2	Input power cable
3	Control cable
4	Brake resistor or chopper cable (if any)

General guidelines – North America

Make sure that the installation is in accordance with national and local codes. Obey these general guidelines:

- Use separate conduits for the input power cables, motor cables, brake resistor cables (optional), and control cables.
- Use separate conduits for each motor.

The figure shows the cable routing guidelines with an example drive.



1	Input power cabling
2	Motor cabling
3	Conduit

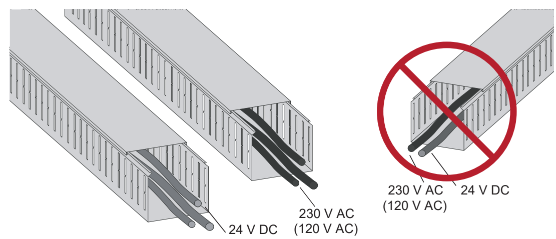
Continuous motor cable shield/conduit and metal enclosure for equipment on the motor cable

To minimize interference when safety switches, contactors, connection boxes, or similar equipment are installed on the motor cable between the drive and the motor:

- Install the equipment in a metal enclosure.
- Use either a symmetrical shielded cable, or install the cabling in a metal conduit.
- Make sure that there is a strong and continuous galvanic connection in the shield/conduit between drive and motor.
- Connect the shield/conduit to the protective ground terminal of the drive and the motor.

Separate control cable ducts

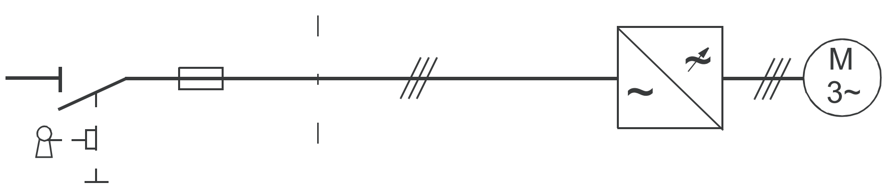
Install 24 V DC and 230 V AC (120 V AC) control cables in separate ducts, unless the 24 V DC cable is insulated for 230 V AC (120 V AC) or insulated with an insulation sleeving for 230 V AC (120 V AC).



Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection

Protecting the drive and the input power cable in short-circuits

Protect the drive and the input cable with fuses or a circuit breaker.



Select the fuses or circuit breakers according to local regulations for the input cable protection. Select the fuses or circuit breakers for the drive according to the instructions given in the technical data. The fuses or circuit breakers for the drive protection will restrict drive damage and prevent damage to adjoining equipment in case of a short-circuit inside the drive.

Note: If the fuses or circuit breakers for the drive protection are placed at the distribution board and the input cable is selected according to the nominal input current of the drive given in the technical data, the fuses or circuit breakers protect also the input cable in short-circuit situations, restrict drive damage and prevent damage to adjoining equipment in case of a short-circuit inside the drive. No separate fuses or circuit breakers for the input cable protection are required.

WARNING Due to the inherent operating principle and construction of circuit breakers, independent of the manufacturer, hot ionized gases can escape from the breaker enclosure in case of a short-circuit. To make sure of safe use, pay special attention to the installation and placement of the breakers. Obey the manufacturer’s instructions.

Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuits

The drive protects the motor cable and motor in a short-circuit situation when:

- the motor cable is sized correctly
- the motor cable type complies with the motor cable selection guidelines by ABB
- the cable length does not exceed the allowed maximum length specified for the drive
- the setting of parameter 99.10 Motor nominal power in the drive is equal with the value given on the motor rating plate.

The electronic power output short-circuit protection circuitry meets the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41:2005 + AMD1:2017.

Protecting the drive against thermal overload

The drive has overload protection as standard.

Protecting the input power cable against thermal overload

The drive has overload protection as standard. If the sizing of the input power cable is correct, the drive overload protection protects also the cable against overload. In case of parallel input power cables, it may be necessary to protect each cable separately. Obey the local regulations.

Protecting the motor cables against thermal overload

The drive protects the motor cables against thermal overload when the cables are sized according to the nominal output current of the drive. No additional thermal protection devices are needed.

WARNING If the drive is connected to multiple motors, use a separate overload protection for each motor cable and motor. The drive overload protection is tuned for the total motor load. It may not detect an overload in one motor circuit only.

North America: The local code (NEC) requires an overload protection and a short-circuit protection for each motor circuit. Use, for example:

- manual motor protector
- circuit breaker, contactor and overload relay or
- fuses, contactor and overload relay.

Protecting the motor against thermal overload

According to regulations, the motor must be protected against thermal overload and the current must be switched off when overload is detected. The drive includes a motor thermal protection function that protects the motor and switches off the current when necessary. Depending on a drive parameter value, the function either monitors a calculated temperature value (based on a motor thermal model) or an actual temperature indication given by motor temperature sensors.

The motor thermal protection model supports thermal memory retention and speed sensitivity. The user can tune the thermal model further by feeding in additional motor and load data.

The most common temperature sensor types are PTC or Pt100.

For more information, refer to the firmware manual.

Protecting the motor against overload without thermal model or temperature sensors

Motor overload protection protects the motor against overload without using motor thermal model or temperature sensors.

Motor overload protection is required and specified by multiple standards including the US National Electric Code (NEC) and the common UL/IEC 61800-5-1 standard in conjunction with UL/IEC 60947-4-1. The standards allow for motor overload protection without external temperature sensors.

The protection feature of the drive allows the user to specify the class of operation in the same manner as the overload relays are specified in standards UL/IEC 60947-4-1 and NEMA ICS 2.

The motor overload protection supports thermal memory retention and speed sensitivity.

For more information, refer to the firmware manual.

Protecting the drive against ground faults

The drive is equipped with an internal ground fault protective function to protect the unit against ground faults in the motor and motor cable. This function is not a personnel safety or a fire protection feature. Refer the firmware manual for more information.

Residual current device compatibility

The drive is suitable for use with residual current devices of Type B.

Note: As standard, the drive contains capacitors connected between the main circuit and the frame. These capacitors and long motor cables increase the ground leakage current and may cause nuisance faults in residual current devices.

Connecting drives to a common DC system

See Common DC systems with ACS880-01, -04, -11, -14, -31 and -34 drives application guide (3AUA0000127818 [English]).

Implementing the emergency stop function

For safety reasons, install the emergency stop devices at each operator control station and at other operating stations where the emergency stop may be needed. Implement the emergency stop according to relevant standards.

Note: You can use the Safe torque off function of the drive to implement the Emergency stop function.

Implementing the Safe torque off function

See The Safe torque off function (page 363).

Implementing the functions provided by the FSO safety functions module

You can order the drive with an FSO-12 safety functions module or FSO-21 safety functions module. An FSO module enables the implementation of functions such as Safe brake control (SBC), Safe stop 1 (SS1), Safe stop emergency (SSE), Safely-limited speed (SLS) and Safe maximum speed (SMS).

The settings of the FSO module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring of the external safety circuit and configuration of the FSO module are the responsibility of the user.

The FSO module reserves the standard Safe torque off (STO) connection of the drive (or inverter) control unit. STO can still be utilized by other safety circuits through the FSO module.

Refer to the applicable manual for more information.

Name	Code
FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual	3AXD50000015612
FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual	3AXD50000015614

Implementing the functions provided by the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module

You can order the drive with an FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module, which provides PROFINET and PROFIsafe connection to the drive and has two safety functions integrated into it: Safe torque off (STO) and Safe stop 1, time monitored

(SS1-t). With the module, it is possible to control the drive via PROFINET and safely stop the drive via PROFIsafe.

The Safe torque off function can be controlled with PROFIsafe. When using FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module, other safety functions are not available. Use of PROFIsafe and PROFINET is also possible by using FPNO-21 and FSO option modules.

The settings of the module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring and configuration of the FSPS-21 module are the responsibility of the user.

For more information, refer to FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000158638 [English]).

Implementing the functions provided by the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module

You can order the drive with FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module . The module has two safety functions integrated into it: Safe torque off (STO) and Safe stop 1, time monitored (SS1-t). With the module, you can connect a drive to an Ethernet network and a safety PLC. The module supports the CIP Safety™ communication technology through the EtherNet/IP communication protocol. The intended use of the FSCS module is to safely stop the drive when necessary. A safety PLC can activate the safety functions of the module.

The settings of the FSCS module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring and configuration of the FSCS module are the responsibility of the user. The FSCS module reserves the standard Safe torque off (STO) connection of the drive (or inverter) control unit.

For more information, refer to FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module user's manual (3AXD50001065478 [English]).

Implementing an ATEX-certified motor thermal protection

With option +Q971, the drive provides ATEX-certified safe motor disconnection without contactor using the drive Safe torque off function. To implement the thermal protection of a motor in explosive atmosphere (Ex motor), you must also:

- use an ATEX-certified Ex motor
- order an ATEX-certified thermistor protection module for the drive (option +L537), or acquire and install an ATEX-compliant protection relay
- do the necessary connections.

For more information, refer to:

User's manual	Manual code (English)
ATEX-certified Safe disconnection function, Ex II (2) GD for ACS880 drives (+Q971) application guide	3AUA0000132231
FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module, Ex II (2) GD (option +L537+Q971) for ACS880 drives user's manual	3AXD50000027782
FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module, instructions for pairing the module with a drive with the ATEX-certified disconnection function (option +Q971)	3AXD50001096700

Implementing the power loss ride-through function

If the incoming supply voltage is cut off, the drive will continue to operate by utilizing the kinetic energy of the rotating motor. The drive will be fully operational as long as the motor rotates and generates energy to the drive.

If you equip the drive with a main contactor or breaker, make sure that it restores the drive input power after a short break. The contactor must either re-connect after the break automatically, or remain closed over the break. Depending on the contactor control circuit design, this can require an additional hold circuit, uninterruptible auxiliary power supply or auxiliary power supply buffering.

Note: If the power loss lasts so long that the drive trips on undervoltage, a fault reset and a fresh start command is required to continue operation.

Implement the power-loss ride-through function as follows:

1. Enable the power-loss ride-through function of the drive (parameter 30.31).
2. If the installation is equipped with a main contactor, prevent its tripping at the input power break. For example, use a time delay relay (hold) in the contactor control circuit.
3. Enable the automatic restart of the motor after a short power supply break:
   - Set the start mode to automatic (parameter 21.01 or 21.19, depending on the motor control mode being used).
   - Define the automatic restart time (parameter 21.18).

WARNING Make sure that a flying restart of the motor will not cause any danger. If you are in doubt, do not implement the power loss ride-through function.

Using power factor compensation capacitors with the drive

Power factor compensation is not needed with AC drives. However, if a drive is to be connected in a system with compensation capacitors installed, note the following restrictions.

NOTICE Do not connect power factor compensation capacitors or harmonic filters to the motor cables (between the drive and the motor). They are not designed for use with AC drives and can cause permanent damage to the drive or themselves.

If there are power factor compensation capacitors in parallel with the input of the drive:

1. Do not connect a high-power capacitor to the power line while the drive is connected. The connection will cause voltage transients that can trip or cause damage to the drive.
2. If capacitor load is increased/decreased step by step when the AC drive is connected to the power line, make sure that the connection steps are low enough not to cause voltage transients that would trip the drive.
3. Make sure that the power factor compensation unit is suitable for use in systems with AC drives, ie, harmonic generating loads. In such systems, the compensation unit should typically be equipped with a blocking reactor or harmonic filter.

Controlling a contactor between drive and motor

The control of the output contactor depends on how you use the drive, that is, which motor control mode and which motor stop mode you select.

If you have the DTC motor control mode and the motor ramp stop mode selected, use this operation sequence to open the contactor:

1. Give a stop command to the drive.
2. Wait until the drive decelerates the motor to zero speed.
3. Open the contactor.

If you have the DTC motor control mode and the motor coast stop, or scalar control mode selected, open the contactor as follows:

1. Give a stop command to the drive.
2. Open the contactor.

NOTICE When the DTC motor control mode is in use, never open the output contactor while the drive controls the motor. The DTC motor control operates extremely fast, much faster than it takes for the contactor to open its contacts. When the contactor starts opening while the drive controls the motor, the DTC control will try to maintain the load current by immediately increasing the drive output voltage to the maximum. This will damage, or even burn, the contactor completely.

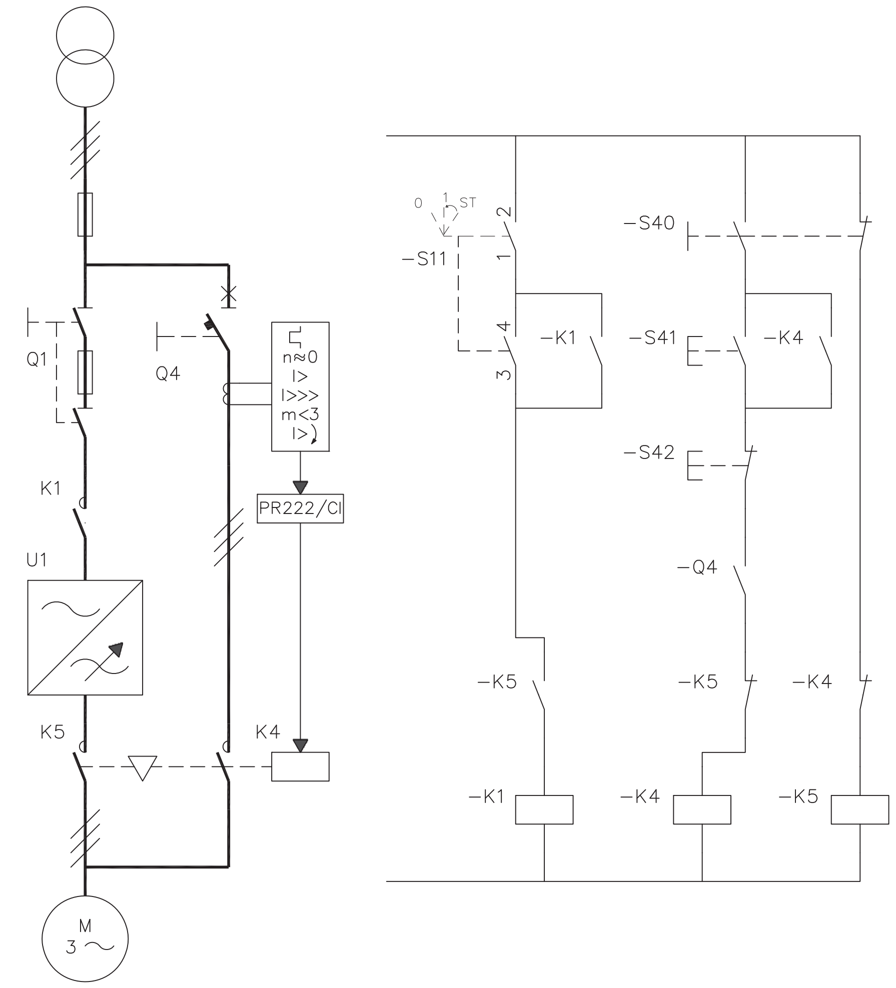
Implementing a bypass connection

If bypassing is required, employ mechanically or electrically interlocked contactors between the motor and the drive and between the motor and the power line. Make sure with interlocking that the contactors cannot be closed simultaneously. The installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN 61800-5-1, subclause 6.5.3, for example, “THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY”.

WARNING Never connect the drive output to the electrical power network. The connection may damage the drive.

Example bypass connection

An example bypass connection is shown below.



Q1	Drive main switch	S11	Drive main contactor on/off control
Q4	Bypass circuit breaker	S40	Motor power supply selection (drive or direct-on-line)
K1	Drive main contactor	S41	Start when motor is connected direct-on-line
K4	Bypass contactor	S42	Stop when motor is connected direct-on-line

K5	Drive output contactor	-	-

Switching the motor power supply from drive to direct-on-line

1. Stop the drive and the motor with the drive control panel (drive in local control mode) or with the external stop signal (drive in remote control mode).
2. Open the main contactor of the drive with S11.
3. Switch the motor power supply from the drive to direct-on-line with S40.
4. Wait for 10 seconds to allow the motor magnetization to die away.
5. Start the motor with S41.

Switching the motor power supply from direct-on-line to drive

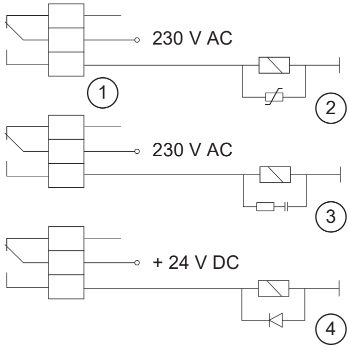
1. Stop the motor with S42.
2. Switch the motor power supply from direct-on-line to the drive with S40.
3. Close the main contactor of the drive with switch S11 (-> turn to position ST for two seconds and leave at position 1).
4. Start the drive and the motor with the drive control panel (drive in local control mode) or with the external start signal (drive in remote control mode).

Protecting the contacts of relay outputs

Inductive loads (relays, contactors, motors) cause voltage transients when switched off.

The relay contacts on the drive control unit are protected with varistors (250 V) against overvoltage peaks. In spite of this, it is highly recommended that inductive loads are equipped with noise attenuating circuits (varistors, RC filters [AC] or diodes [DC]) to minimize the EMC emission at switch-off. If not suppressed, the disturbances may connect capacitively or inductively to other conductors in the control cable and form a risk of malfunction in other parts of the system.

Install the protective component as close to the inductive load as possible. Do not install protective components at the relay outputs.



1	Relay output
2	Varistor
3	RC filter
4	Diode

Implementing a motor temperature sensor connection

WARNING IEC 61800-5-1 requires double or reinforced insulation between the live parts and accessible parts when:

- the accessible parts are not conductive, or
- the accessible parts are conductive, but not connected to the protective earth.

Obey this requirement when you plan the connection of the motor temperature sensor to the drive.

You have these implementation alternatives:

1. If there is double or reinforced insulation between the sensor and the live parts of the motor: You can connect the sensor directly to the analog/digital input(s) of the drive. Refer to the control cable connection instructions. Make sure that the voltage is not more than the maximum permitted voltage over the sensor.
2. If there is basic insulation between the sensor and the live parts of the motor, or if the insulation type is not known: You can connect the sensor to the drive via an option module. The sensor and the module must form a double or reinforced insulation between the motor live parts and the drive control unit. Refer to Connecting a motor temperature sensor to the drive through an option

module (page 104). Make sure that the voltage is not more than the maximum permitted voltage over the sensor.

3. If there is basic insulation between the sensor and the live parts of the motor, or if the insulation type is not known: You can connect a sensor to a digital input of the drive via an external relay. The sensor and the relay must form a double or reinforced insulation between the motor's live parts and the digital input of the drive. Make sure that the voltage is not more than the maximum permitted voltage over the sensor.

Connecting a motor temperature sensor to the drive through an option module

This table shows:

- option module types that you can use for the motor temperature sensor connection
- insulation or isolation level that each option module forms between its temperature sensor connector and other connectors
- temperature sensor types that you can connect to each option module
- temperature sensor insulation requirement in order to form, together with the insulation of the option module, a reinforced insulation between the motor live parts and the drive control unit.

Option module		Temperature sensor type			Temperature sensor insulation requirement
Type	**Insulation/Isolation**	**PTC**	**KTY**	**Pt100, Pt1000**	
FIO-11	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and other I/O connectors.	x	x	x	Reinforced insulation
FEN-01	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	x	-	-	Reinforced insulation

Option module		Temperature sensor type			Temperature sensor insulation requirement
Type	**Insulation/Isolation**	**PTC**	**KTY**	**Pt100, Pt1000**	
FEN-11	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	x	x	-	Reinforced insulation
FEN-21	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	x	x	-	Reinforced insulation
FEN-31	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and other connectors.	x	x	-	Reinforced insulation
FAIO-01	Basic insulation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No insulation between sensor connector and other I/O connectors.	x	x	x	Reinforced or basic insulation. With basic insulation, the other I/O connectors of the option module must be kept disconnected.
FPTC-01/02 [1)]	Reinforced insulation between sensor connector and other connectors (including drive control unit connector).	x	-	-	No special requirement

1) Suitable for use in safety functions (SIL2 / PL c classified).

6

Electrical installation – Global (IEC)

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes how to:

- measure the insulation
- do the grounding system compatibility check
- change the EMC filter or ground-to-phase varistor connection
- connect the power and control cables
- install optional modules
- connect a PC.

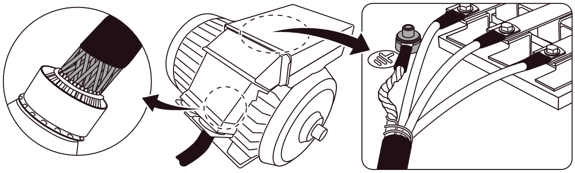
Necessary tools

To do the electrical installation, you need these tools:

- wire stripper
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- torque wrench.

Grounding the motor cable shield at the motor end

For minimum radio-frequency interference, ground the cable shield 360° at the cable entry of the motor terminal box.



Measuring the insulation

Measuring the insulation resistance of the drive

NOTICE Do not do voltage withstand or insulation resistance tests on the drive. The tests can cause damage to the drive. Every drive is tested for insulation between the main circuit and the chassis at the factory. Also, there are voltage-limiting circuits inside the drive which cut down the testing voltage automatically.

Measuring the insulation resistance of the input power cable

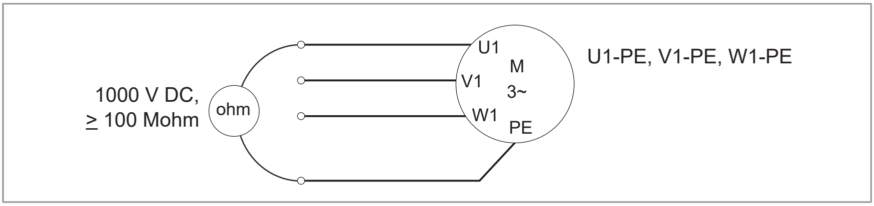
Before you connect the input power cable to the drive, measure its insulation resistance according to local regulations.

Measuring the insulation resistance of the motor and motor cable

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Make sure that the motor cable is disconnected from the drive output terminals.
3. Measure the insulation resistance between each phase conductor and the protective earth conductor. Use a measuring voltage of 1000 V DC. The insulation resistance of an ABB motor must be more than 100 Mohm (reference value at 25 °C [77 °F]). For the insulation resistance of other motors, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

   Note: Moisture inside the motor reduces the insulation resistance. If you think that there is moisture in the motor, dry the motor and do the measurement again.



Grounding system compatibility check

The standard drive can be installed to a symmetrically grounded TN-S system. If you install the drive to another system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor. Refer to ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).

WARNING Do not install the drive with EMC filter options +E200 or +E202 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.

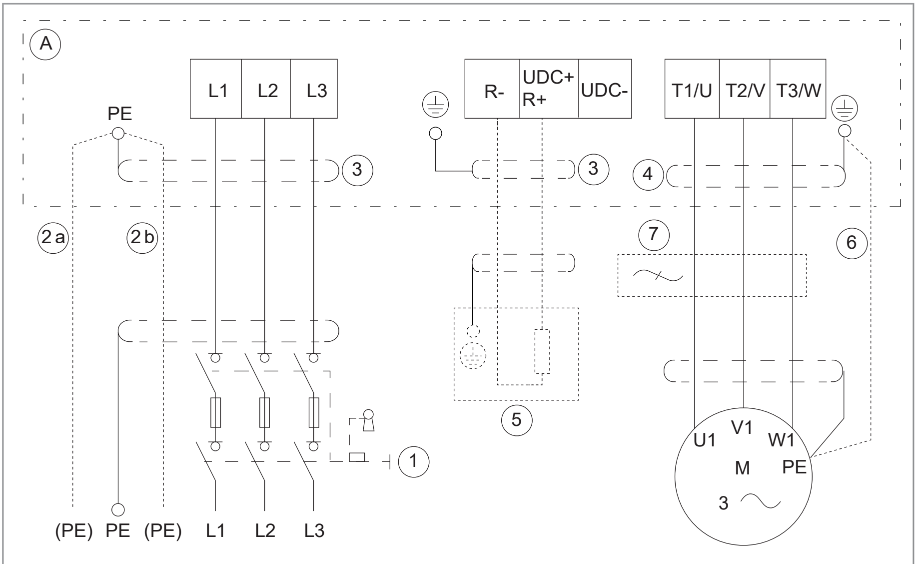
WARNING Do not install the drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.

Corner-grounded and midpoint-grounded 525…690 V delta systems

NOTICE Do not install the drive on a 525…690 V corner-grounded or midpoint-grounded delta system. Disconnecting the EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor does not prevent damage to the drive.

Connecting the power cables

Connection diagram

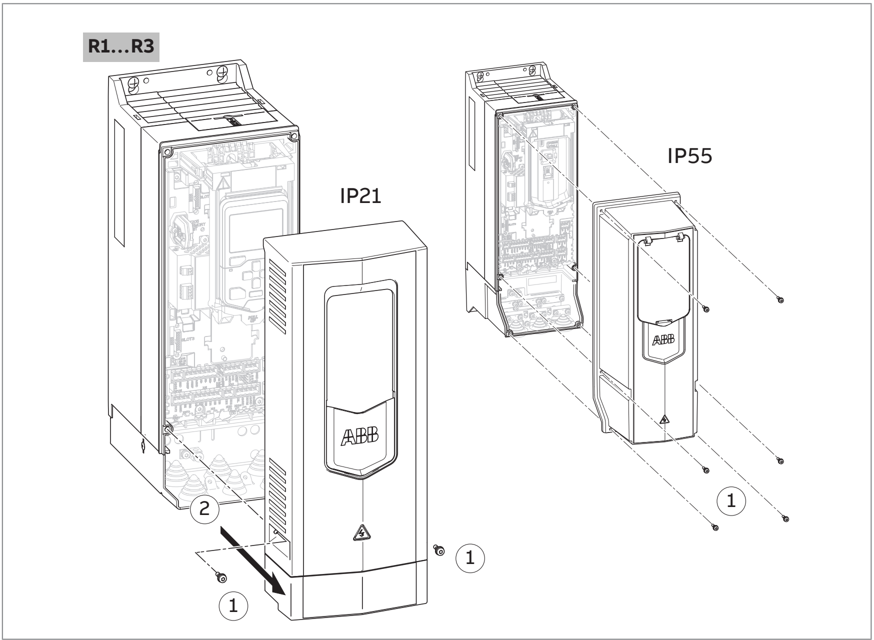


A	Drive
1	For alternatives, refer to section Selecting the main supply disconnecting device (page 71).
2	Use a separate grounding PE cable (2a) or a cable with a separate PE conductor (2b) if the conductivity of the shield does not meet the requirements for the PE conductor. Refer to section Selecting the power cables (page 82).
3	360° grounding is recommended if shielded cable is used. Ground the other end of the input cable shield or PE conductor at the distribution board.
4	360° grounding is required.
5	External brake resistor
6	Use a separate grounding cable if the shield does not meet the requirements of IEC 61800-5-1 and there is no symmetrically constructed grounding conductor in the cable. Refer to section Selecting the power cables (page 82).
7	du/dt filter or sine filter (optional, refer to Filters (page 387)).

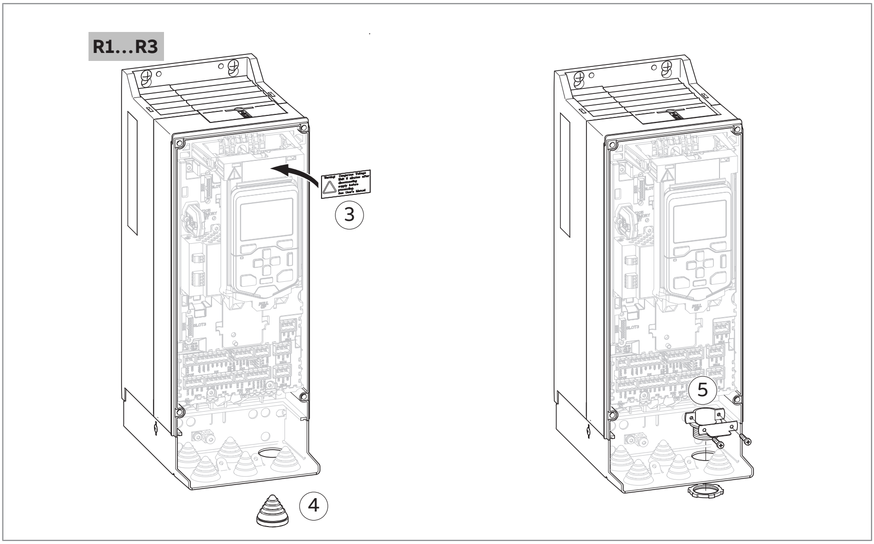
Note: If there is a symmetrically constructed grounding conductor on the motor cable in addition to the conductive shield, connect the grounding conductor to the grounding terminal at the drive and motor ends.
Do not use an asymmetrically constructed motor cable for motors above 30 kW. Connecting its fourth conductor at the motor end increases bearing currents and causes extra wear.

Connection procedure for frames R1…R3

1. Undo the mounting screws at the sides of the front cover.
2. To remove the cover, slide it forward.



3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language to the control panel mounting platform.
4. Remove the rubber grommets from the entry plate for the cables to be connected.
5. IP21 drives: Attach the Romex clamps (included in the delivery in a plastic bag) to the cable entry plate holes.



6. Prepare the input power and motor cable ends as illustrated in the figure.

   Note: Bare shield will be grounded 360°.

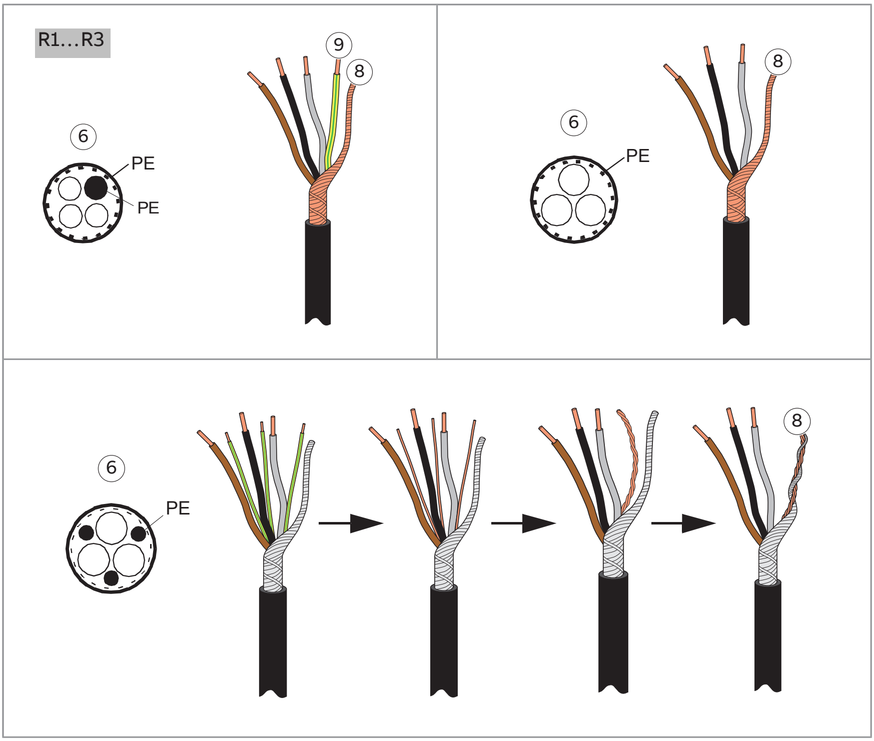
7. IP21 drives: Ground the shields 360° in the Romex clamps by tightening the connector onto the stripped part of the cable. IP55 drives: Tighten the clamps onto the stripped part of the cables. Be careful of the sharp edges.

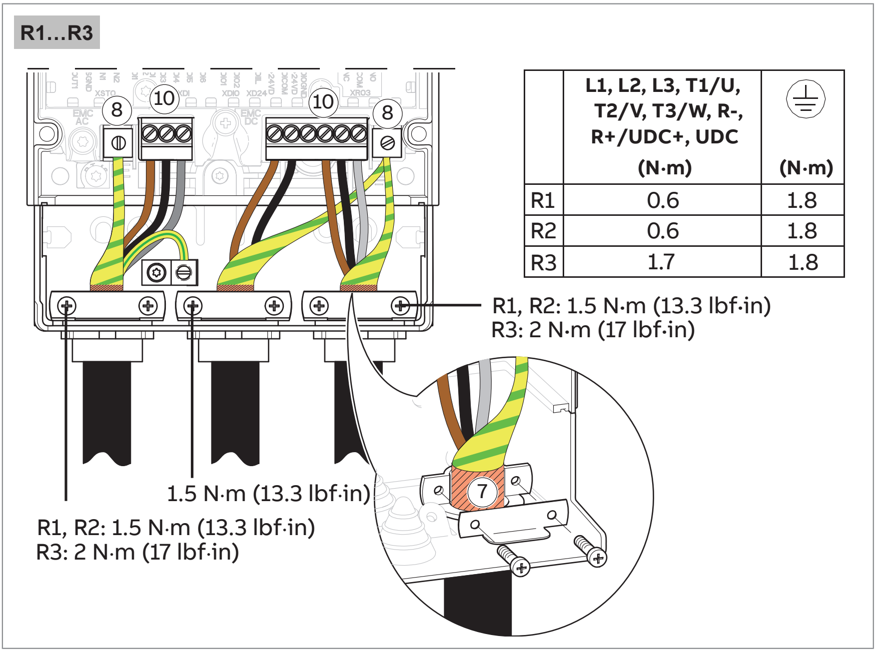
   NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

8. Connect the twisted shields of the power cables to the grounding terminals.

9. Connect the additional PE conductor (if used) of the input cable to the grounding terminal.

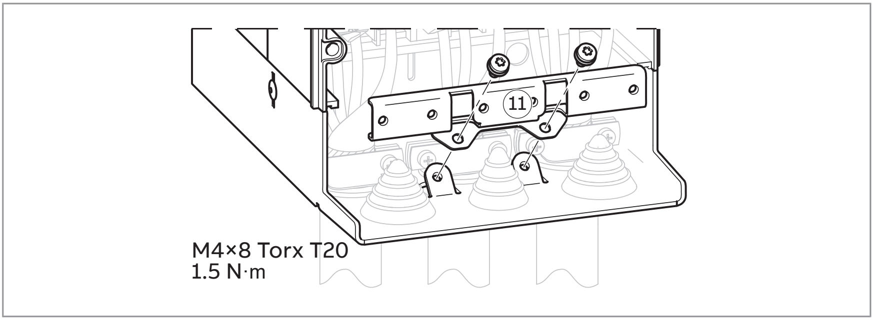
10. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Connect the brake resistor conductors (if used) to the R+ and R- terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure below.





	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W, R-, R+/UDC+, UDC (N·m)	⏚ (N·m)
R1	0.6	1.8
R2	0.6	1.8
R3	1.7	1.8

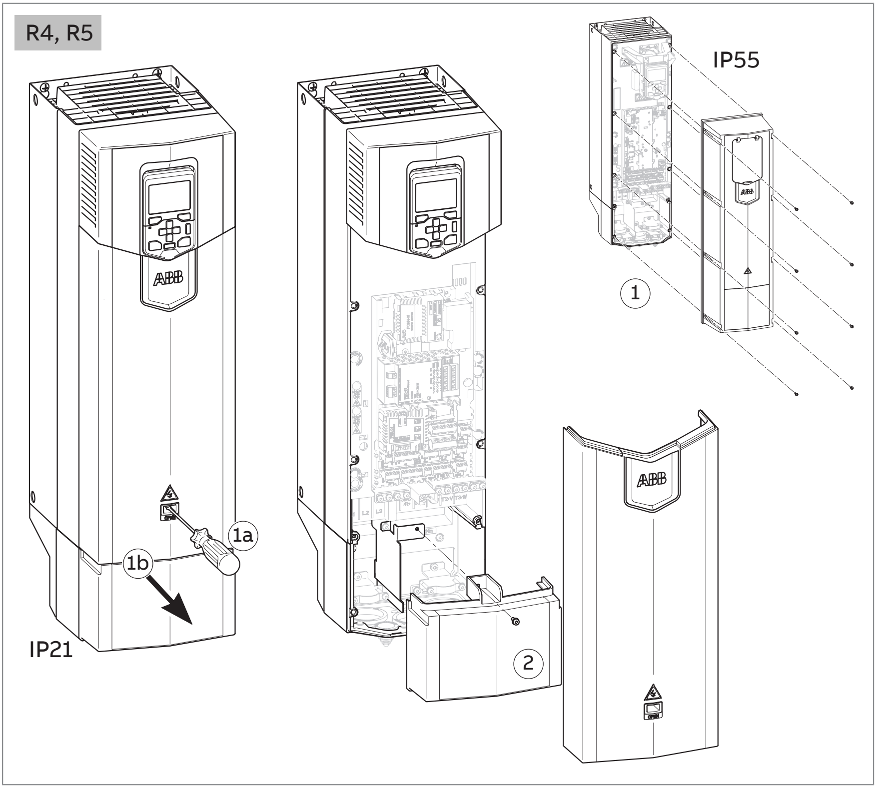
11. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.



12. Attach the cables outside the drive mechanically.

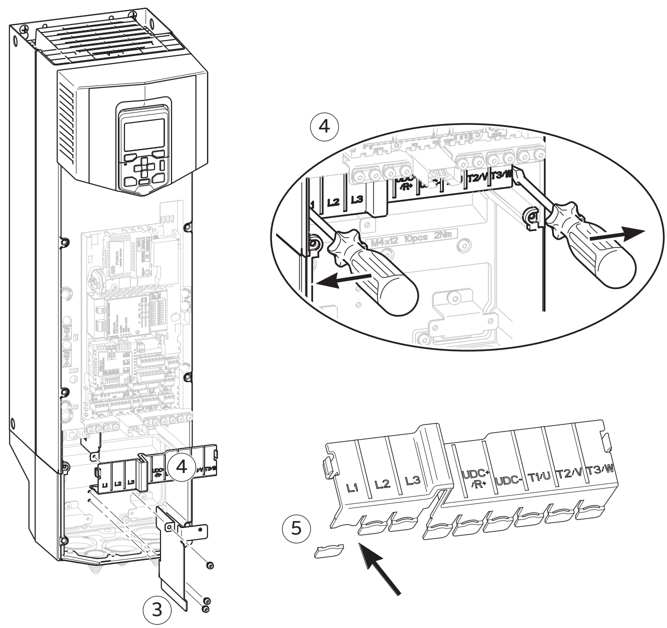
Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5

1. Remove the front cover. IP21 drives: Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and lift the cover from the bottom outwards (b).
2. For IP21 drives: To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screw.

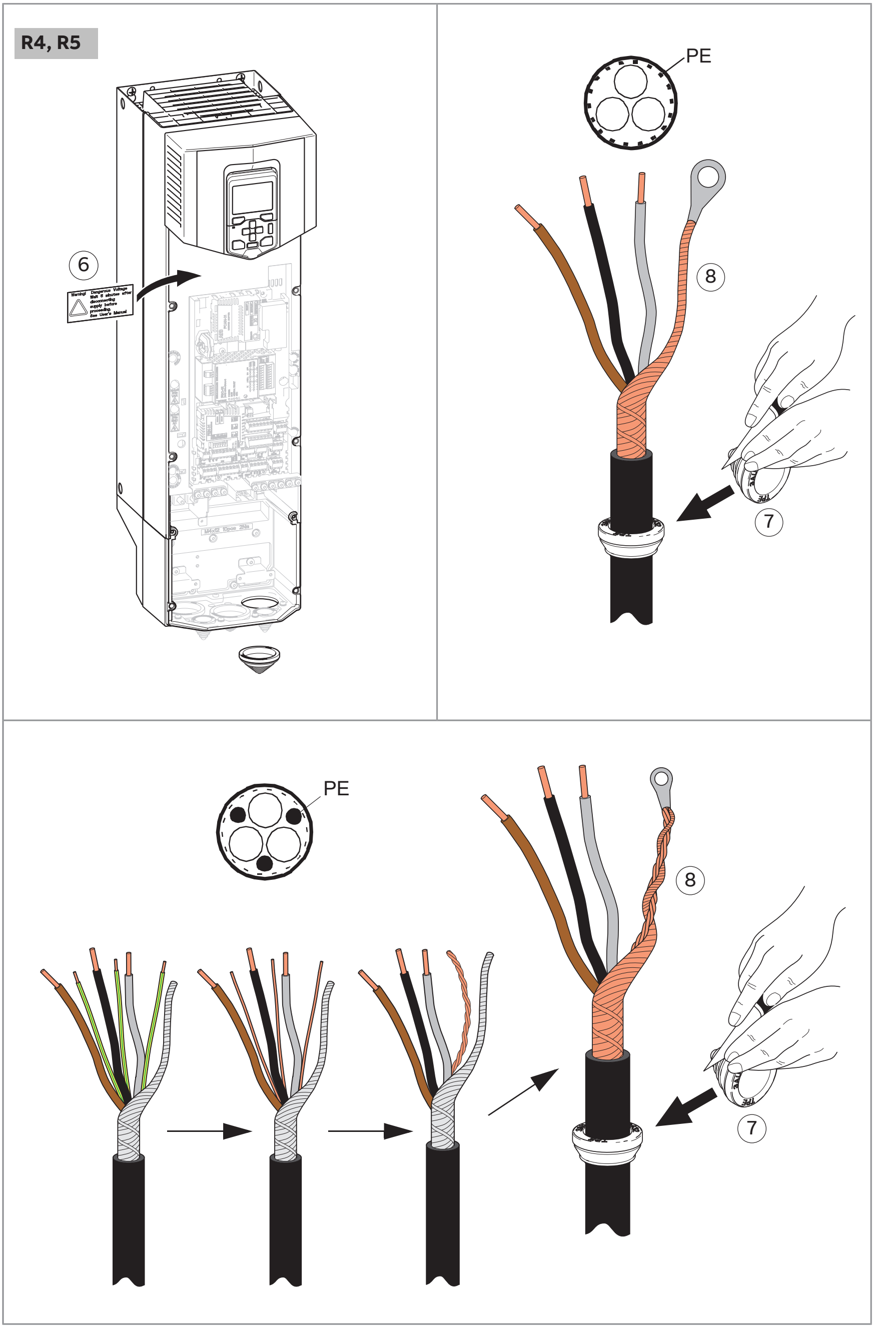


3. <u>For frame R4:</u> For easier installation, remove the EMC shroud that separates the input and output cabling.
4. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips and lift the shroud up from the sides with a screwdriver.
5. Open holes into the shroud for the cables.

R4, R5



6. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
7. Cut holes into the rubber grommets. Slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.
8. Prepare the ends of the input power and motor cables as illustrated in the figure. Bare shield will be grounded 360° under the grounding clamp.


R4, R5
6
PE
8
7
PE
8
7

9. Ground the cable shields 360° under the grounding clamps. Be careful of the sharp edges.

   NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

10. Connect the twisted cable shields to the grounding terminals.
11. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure below.

    Note: For cable lug installation (frame R5): Detach the connector and install a cable lug to the terminal post as follows:
    - Remove the combi screw that attaches the connector to its terminal post and pull the connector off.
    - Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
    - Put the cable lug onto the terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.

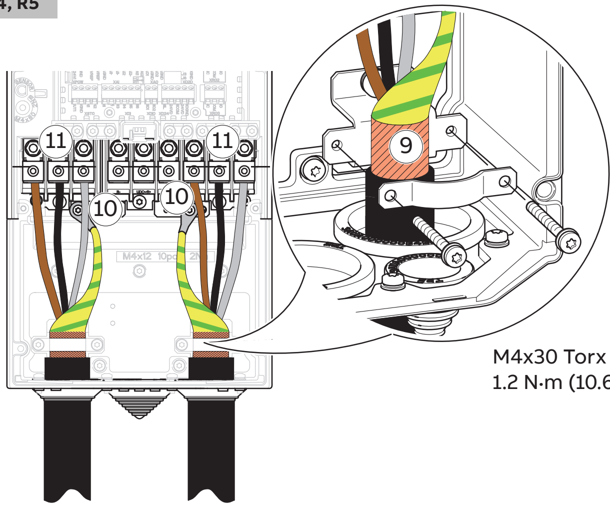
    WARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.

    - Undo the nut that attaches the connector to its terminal post and pull the connector off.
    - Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
    - Put the cable lug onto the terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.

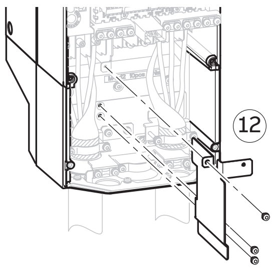
      WARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.

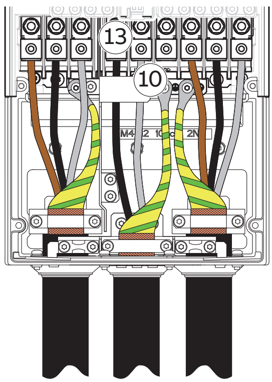
    - Tighten the nut to a torque of 5 N·m.
12. Install the EMC shroud separating the input and output cabling if not installed yet.
13. Drives with option +D150: Slide the brake resistor cable through the brake resistor and control cable clamp assembly. Connect the conductors to the R+ and R- terminals and tighten to the torque given in the figure.
14. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
15. Attach the cables outside the unit mechanically. Install the rubber grommets to the unused entry plate holes.

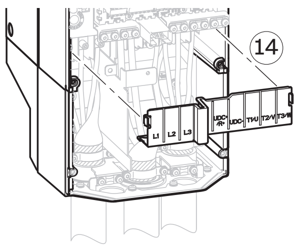
R4, R5



	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W (N·m)	R-, R+/UDC+, UDC- (N·m)	⏚ (N·m)
R4	3.3	3.3	2.9
R5	15	15	2.9







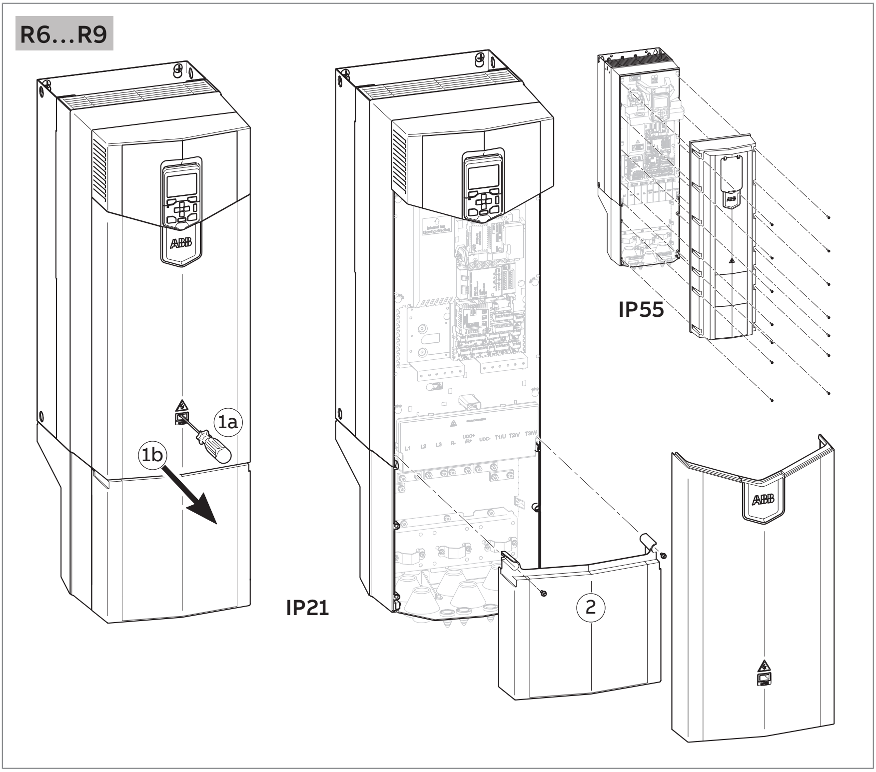
Connection procedure for frames R6…R9

For option +H358 (frames R6…R9), refer to ACS880-01, ACS580-01, ACH580-01, ACQ580-01 UK gland plate (+H358) installation guide (3AXD50000034735 [English]).

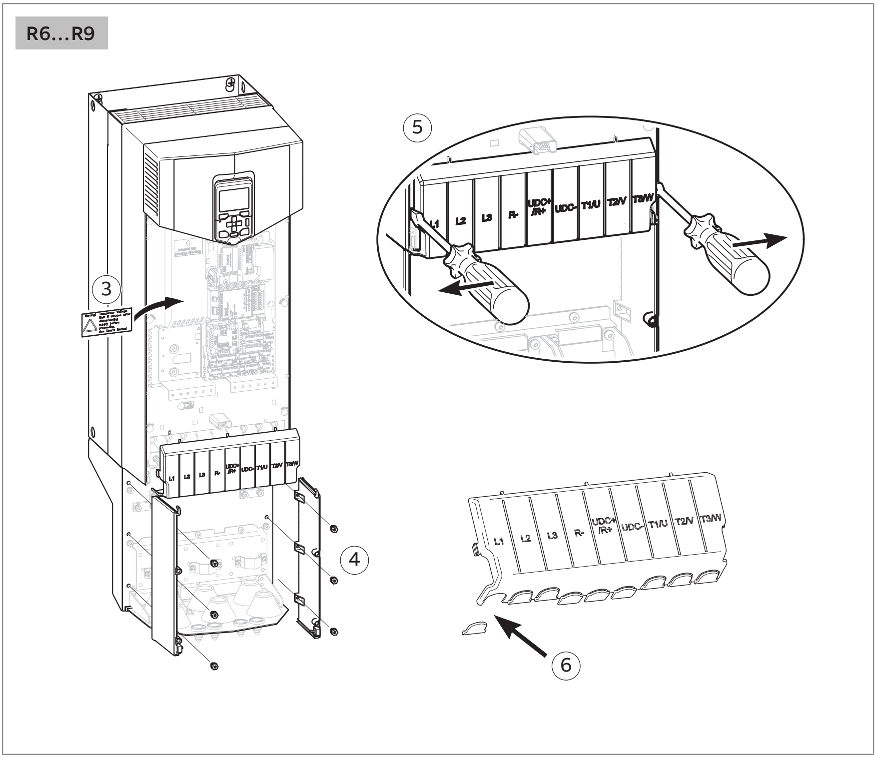
For detaching connectors, installing the cable to connector and attaching the connector again, refer to section Detaching connectors (frames R8 and R9) (page 141).

For cable lug installation, refer to section Cable lug installation (frames R6…R9) (page 143).

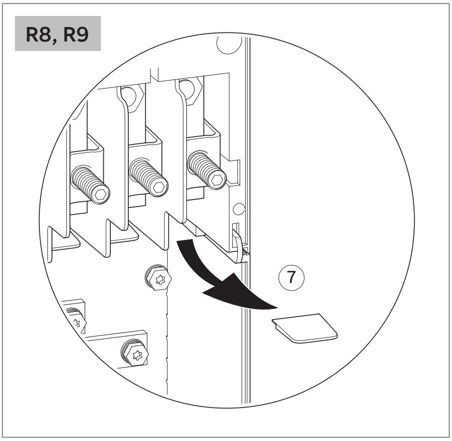
1. Remove the front cover: For IP21 drives: Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and pull the cover by the bottom outwards (b).
2. For IP21 drives: To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screws.



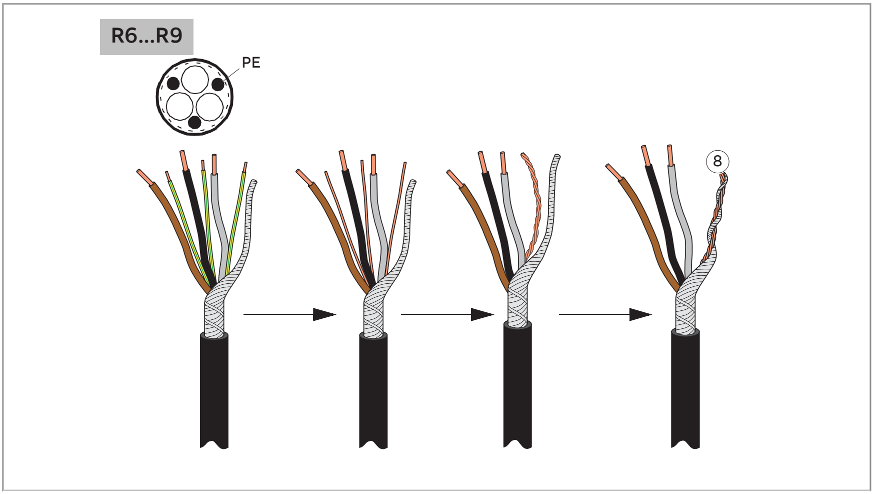
3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit.
4. To remove the side plates of the cable entry box, undo the mounting screws.
5. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips on the sides with a screwdriver and lift.
6. Open holes into the shroud for the cables.

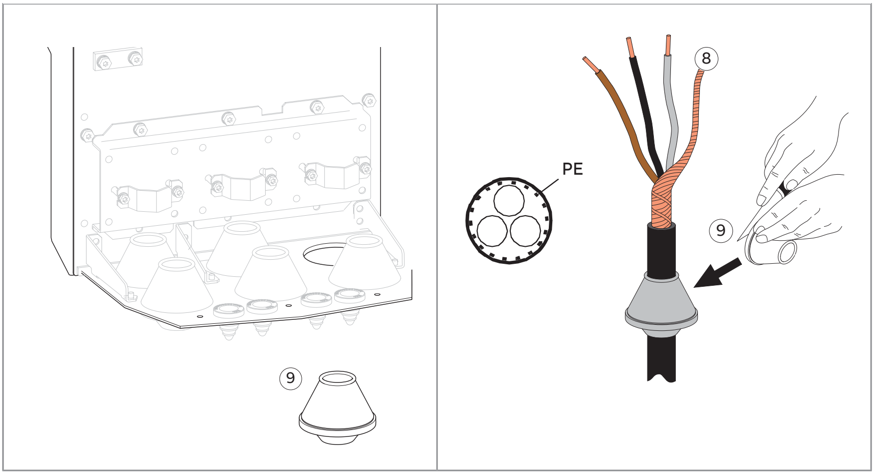


7. If you install parallel cables (frames R8 and R9): Open holes into the shroud on the power cable terminal for the cables.



8. Prepare the ends of the input power and motor cables as illustrated in the figure. The bare shield will be grounded 360° under the clamp.
9. Cut holes into the rubber grommets. Slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.





10. Tighten the clamp onto the stripped part of the cable. Be careful of the sharp edges.

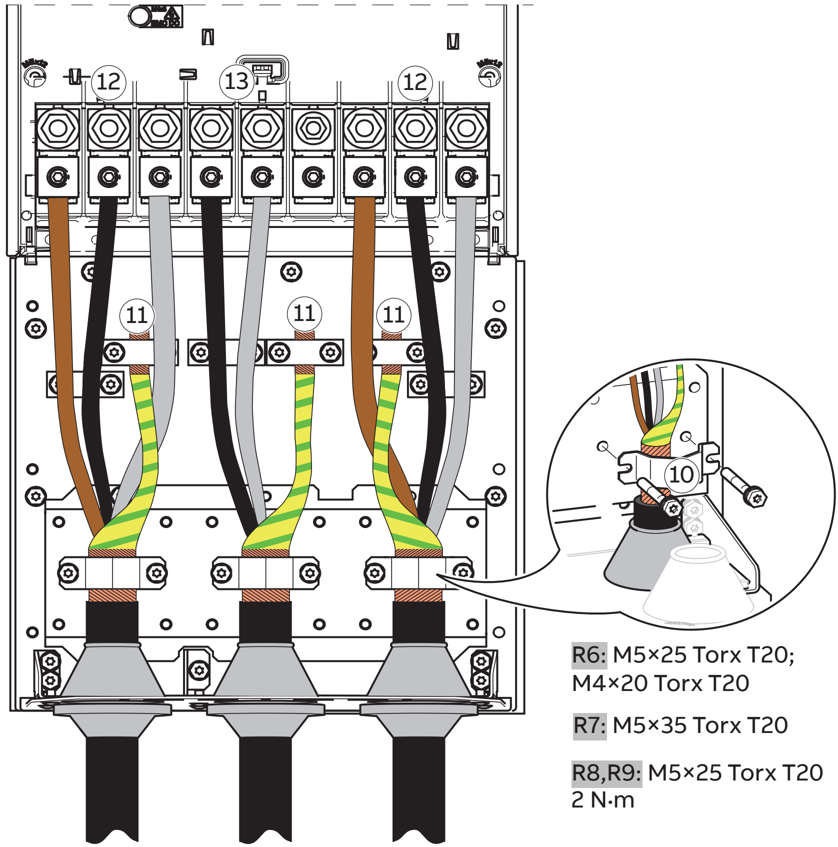
NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

11. Attach the twisted shields of the cables under the grounding clamps.
12. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure.

    Note: Frames R8 and R9: If you put only one conductor to the connector, ABB recommends that you put it under the upper pressure plate.

13. Drives with option +D150: Connect the brake resistor cable conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.

R6…R9



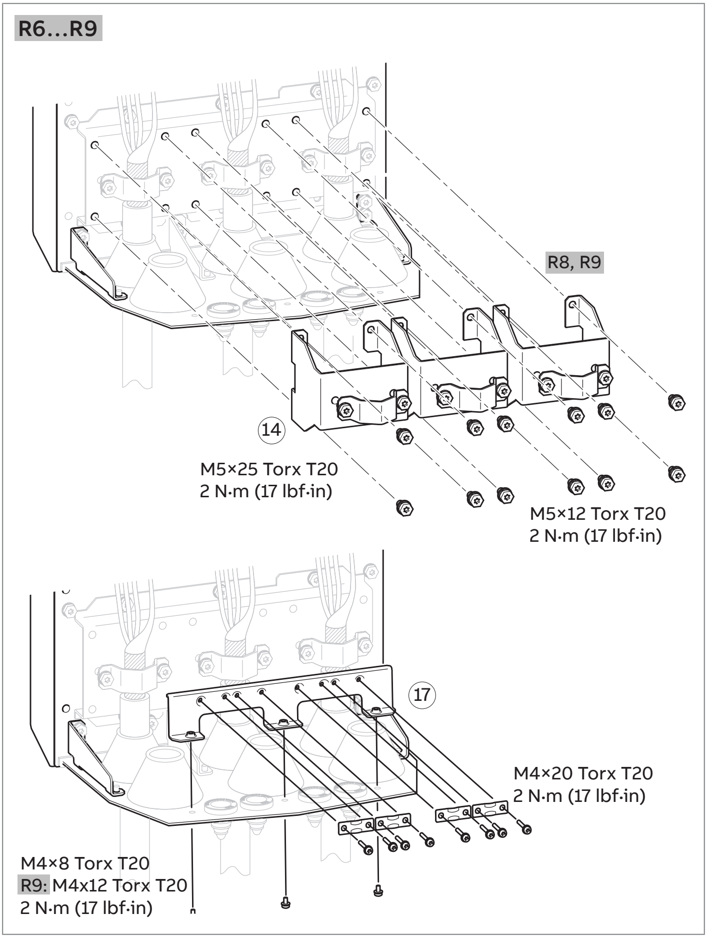
R6: M5×25 Torx T20;
M4×20 Torx T20

R7: M5×35 Torx T20

R8,R9: M5×25 Torx T20
2 N·m

Frame	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V,T3/W		R-, R+/UDC+, UDC-		⏚
	T (Wire screw)		T (Wire screw)		*T*
	M…	N·m	M…	N·m	N·m
R6	M10	30	M8	20	9.8
R7	M10	40	M10	30	9.8
R8	M10	40	M10	40	9.8
R9	M12	70	M12	70	9.8

14. If you install parallel cables (frames R8 and R9), install the grounding shelves for them. Repeat steps 9 to 13.
15. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
16. Install the side plates of the cable entry box.
17. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.
18. Attach the cables outside the drive mechanically. Install the rubber grommets to the unused entry plate holes.

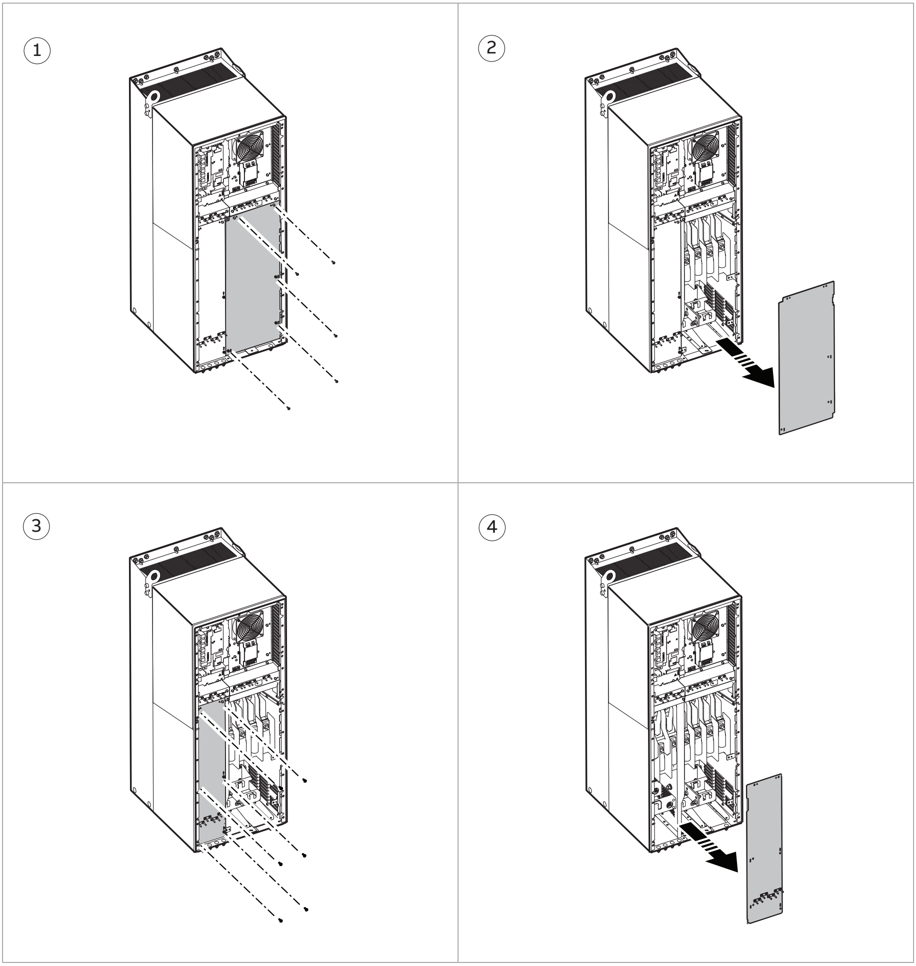


Connection procedure for frame R9e

1. Loosen the 14 captive screws with a T20 Torx screwdriver.
2. Remove the control panel. Use the control panel slot to lift the front cover.
3. Push the control panel cable through the control panel slot to remove it from the front cover.
4. Remove the front cover.
5. Attach a residual voltage warning sticker in the local language above the main cooling fan.

Fastener type	Tightening torque
M4×14 captive screw	1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in)

Remove the EMC cover plates



Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5×12 combi screw	3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in)

Remove the side plates

You can remove the side plates for easier cable installation.

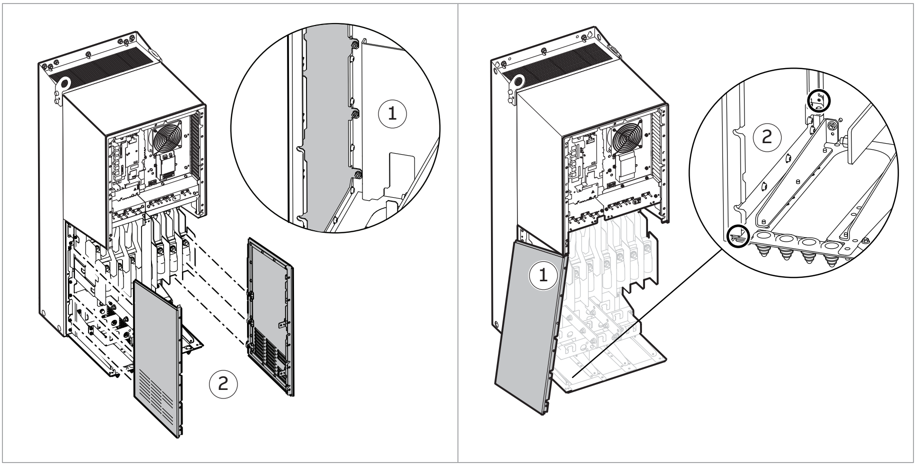
To remove the side plates:

1. Loosen the three captive screws per side plate. Use a 300 mm (11.8 in) screwdriver extension bit.
2. Remove the side plates.

To install the side plates:

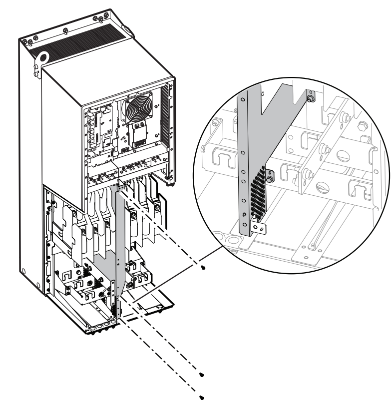
1. Attach the upper front corner of the side plate.
2. Use the guide pins to put the lower edge of the side plate into position.
3. Tighten the three M5×18 captive screws per side plate to 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in). Use a 300 mm (11.8 in) screwdriver extension bit.

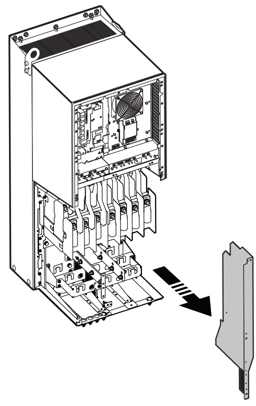
Removal	Installation



Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5×18 captive screw	3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in)

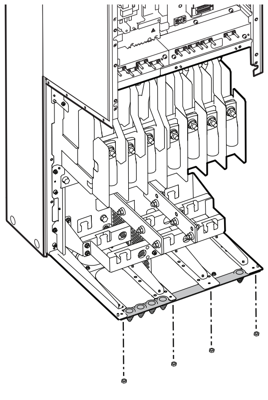
Remove the EMC side plate

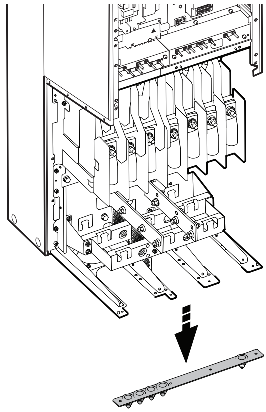




Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5×12 combi screw	3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in)

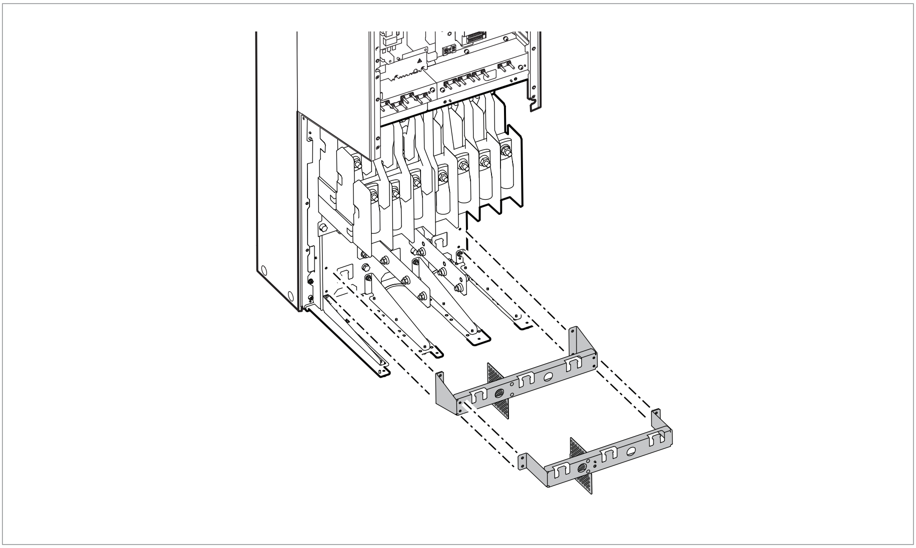
Remove the control cable entry plate





Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5 nut	1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in)

Remove the clamping shelves



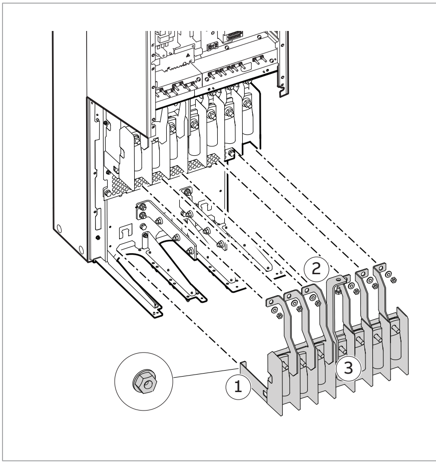
Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5 nut	3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in)

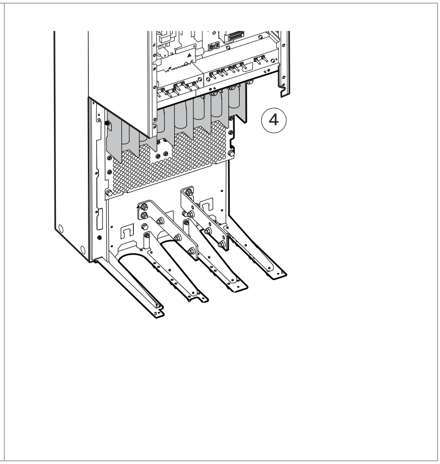
Remove the terminals

The standard delivery includes three rows of terminals. With option +0P840, the third row (front row) terminals are removed from delivery.

Note: Option +0P840 is not available with option +D150.

1. Remove the four M5 nuts. Use a 300 mm (11.8 in) extension bit.
2. The M10 nuts, M10 washers and M10×25 combi screws are delivered in a bag inside the drive. Use them to install the second and third row terminals.
3. Remove the terminal.
4. Repeat until you have only one row of terminals left.





Fastener type	Tightening torque
M5 nut	3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in)
M10 nut + washers	30 N·m (22.1 lbf·ft)
M10×25 combi screw	30 N·m (22.1 lbf·ft)

Connect the power cables

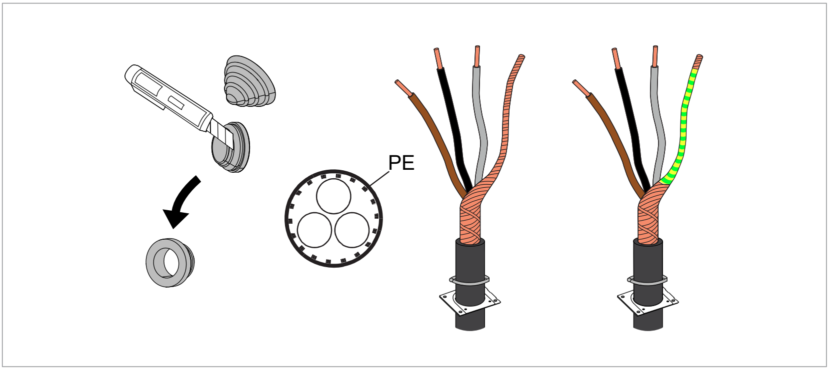
Refer to ACS880-01 drives with brake resistor cable (option +D150) (page 139) for the ACS880-01 brake resistor connection instructions.

Refer to Drives with DC connection (page 135) for the DC connection instructions.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

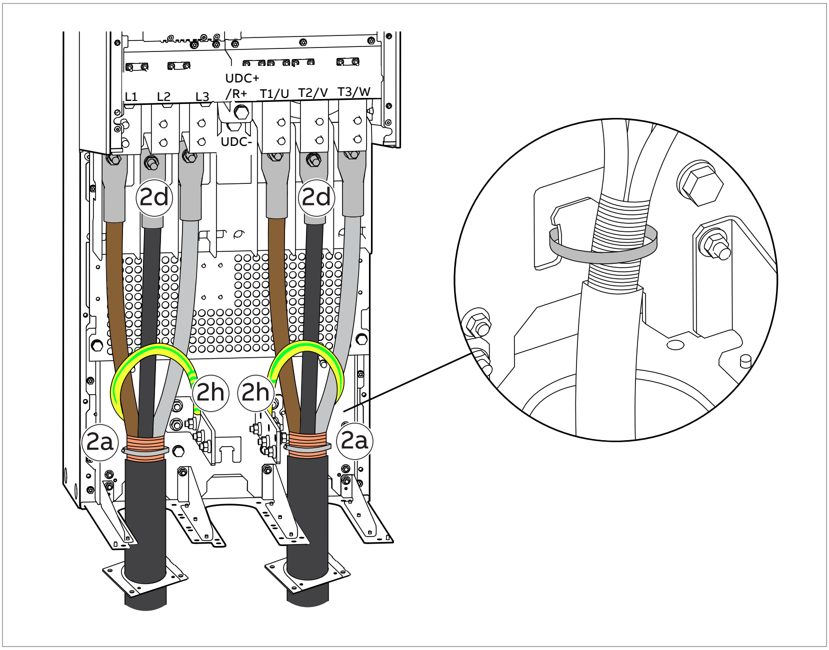
---

1. **Prepare the cables:**
   a. Cut holes into the rubber grommets.
   b. Slide the grommet kits onto the cables.
   c. Slide the hose clamps onto the cables.
   d. Prepare the ends of the input power cable and motor cable as shown in the figure. Leave extra length on each phase conductor.



2. **Connect the cables:**
   a. Ground the shield 360° with the hose clamp around the stripped part of the cable to the grounding support in the backplate. In the next two cable rows, use the grounding supports in the clamping shelf.

      Do not tighten the hose clamp too much. It can cause damage to the cable insulation.
   b. Measure and cut the final length of the phase conductors.
   c. Install cable lugs to each phase conductor.
   d. Connect the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals and the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals.
   e. Attach the phase conductors to the terminals with M10 nuts.
   f. Measure and cut the final length of the grounding contactor.
   g. Install cable lug to the grounding conductor.
   h. Connect the grounding conductor to the grounding bar and attach it with an M8 nut.

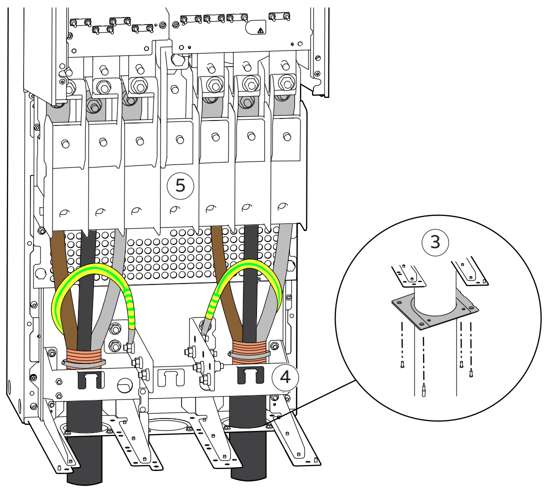


Fastener type	Tightening torque
M8 nut	16 N·m (11.8 lbf·ft)
M10 nut	Minimum: 30 N·m (22.1 lbf·ft) Maximum: 50 N·m (36.9 lbf·ft)

For the tightening torques, refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer.

Finalize the first row of cables:

3. Install the grommet kits to the cable entry plate with four M5 nuts each and tighten the nuts to 1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in).
4. Install the clamping shelf with four M5 nuts and tighten the nuts to 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in).
   - The clamping shelf installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the clamping shelves (page 130).
5. Install terminals for the next row of cables.
   - The terminal installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the terminals (page 131).



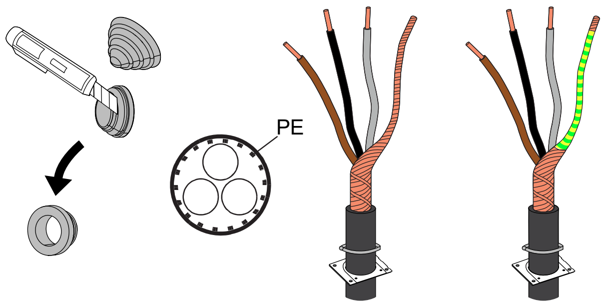
To install the cables to the second row, do steps 1…5.

To install the cables to the third row, do steps 1…3.

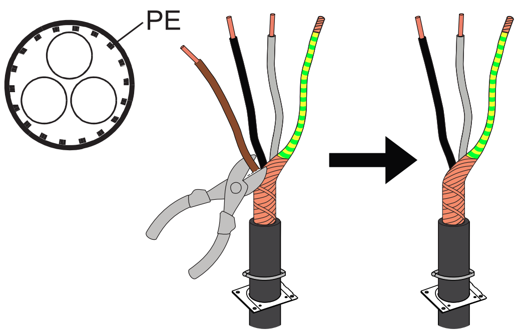
Drives with DC connection

First row of cables

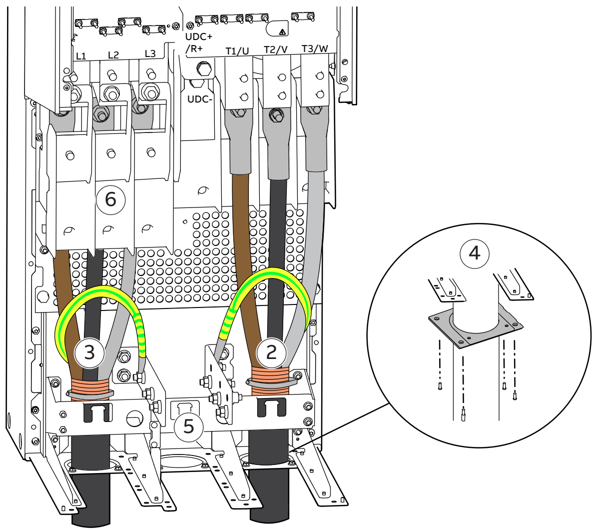
1. Prepare the cables:
    a. Cut holes into the rubber grommets.
    b. Slide the grommet kits onto the cables.
    c. Slide the hose clamps onto the cables.
    d. Prepare the ends of the input power cable, motor cable and DC cable as shown in the figure. Leave extra length on each phase conductor.



    e. Cut off one phase conductor from the DC cable.

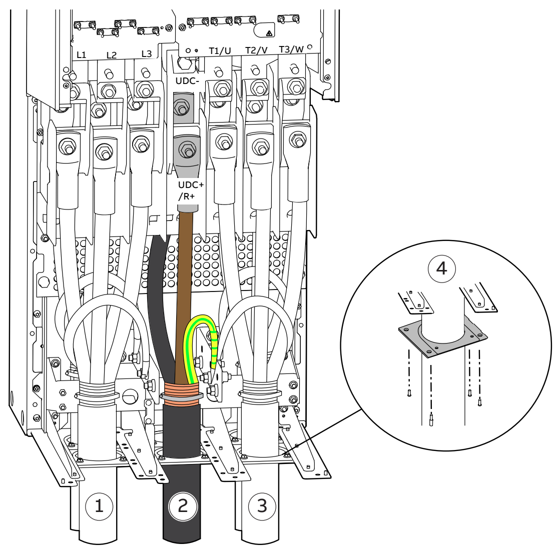


2. Connect the motor cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
3. Connect the input cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
4. Install the grommet kits to the cable entry plate with four M5 nuts each and tighten the nuts to 1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in).
5. Install the clamping shelf with four M5 nuts and tighten the nuts to 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in).
   - The clamping shelf installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the clamping shelves (page 130).
6. Install terminals L1, L2, L3 for the second row of cables.



Second row of cables

1. Connect the input cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
2. Connect the DC cable:
   a. Ground the shield 360° with the hose clamp around the stripped part of the cable to the hole in the clamping shelf.
      Do not tighten the hose clamp too much. It can cause damage to the cable insulation.
   b. Measure and cut the final length of the phase conductors.
   c. Install cable lugs to each phase conductor.
   d. Connect the DC- conductor of the DC cable to terminal UDC- and attach it with an M10 nut.
   e. Install UDC+/R+, T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals.
   f. Connect the DC+ conductor of the DC cable to terminal UDC+/R+ and attach it with an M10 nut.
   g. Measure and cut the final length of the grounding contactor.
   h. Install cable lug to the grounding conductor.
   i. Connect the grounding contactor to the grounding bar and attach it with an M8 nut.
3. Connect the motor cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
4. Install the grommet kits to the cable entry plate with four M5 nuts each and tighten the nuts to 1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in).



For the tightening torques, refer to Connect the power cables (page 132).

5. Install the clamping shelf with four M5 nuts and tighten the nuts to 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in).
    - The clamping shelf installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the clamping shelves (page 130).
6. Install terminals for the third row of cables.
    - The terminal installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the terminals (page 131).

Third row of cables

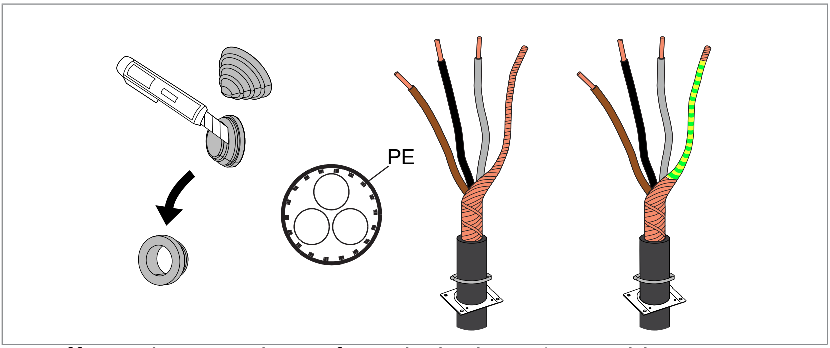
To install cables to the third row, do steps 1…3 in Connect the power cables (page 132).

ACS880-01 drives with brake resistor cable (option +D150)

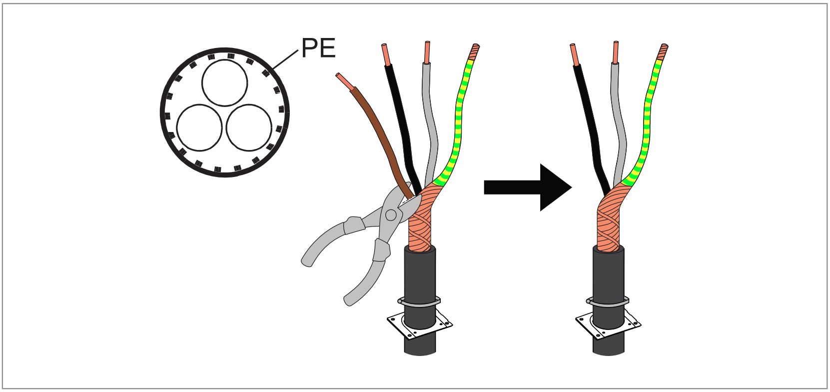
Note: You can connect only one cable to the UDC+/R+ terminal of the drive. To connect both the UDC supply cable and brake resistor cable to the drive, connect them into one cable outside of the drive.

First row of cables

1. Prepare the cables:
   - Cut holes into the rubber grommets.
   - Slide the grommet kits onto the cables.
   - Slide the hose clamps onto the cables.
   - Prepare the ends of the input power cable, motor cable and brake resistor cable as shown in the figure. Leave extra length on each phase conductor.



   - Cut off one phase conductor from the brake resistor cable.

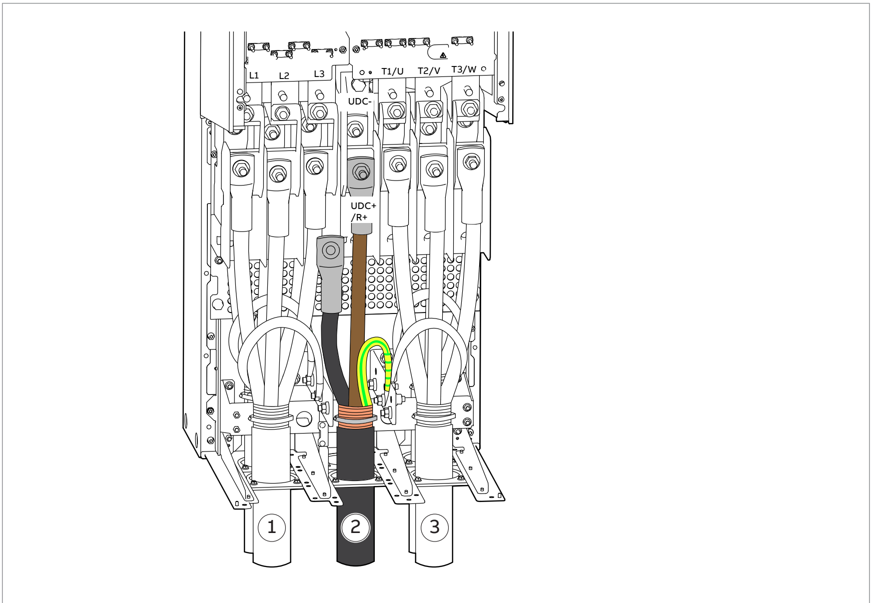


2. Connect the motor cable and input cable and finalize the first row of cables as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).

Second row of cables

1. Connect the input cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
2. Connect the brake resistor cable (option +D150):
   - Ground the shield 360° with the hose clamp around the stripped part of the cable to the hole in the clamping shelf.

     Do not tighten the hose clamp too much. It can cause damage to the cable insulation.
   - Measure and cut the final length of the phase conductors and the grounding conductor.
   - Install cable lugs to each phase conductor and to the grounding conductor.
   - Connect the grounding conductor to the grounding bar and attach it with an M8 nut.
   - Connect the R+ conductor of the brake resistor cable to terminal UDC+/R+ and attach it with a M10 nut. You will connect the R- conductor in the third row of cables.
3. Connect the motor cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).



Fastener type	Tightening torque
M8 nut	16 N·m (11.8 lbf·ft)
M10 nut	Refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer. Minimum: 30 N·m (22.1 lbf·ft) Maximum: 50 N·m (36.9 lbf·ft)

4. Install the grommet kits to the cable entry plate with four M5 nuts each and tighten the nuts to 1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in).
5. Install the clamping shelf with four M5 nuts and tighten the nuts to 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in).
   - The installation procedure of the clamping shelf is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the clamping shelves (page 130).
6. Install terminals for the third row of cables.
   - The terminal installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the terminals (page 131).

Third row of cables

1. Prepare and connect the input cable and motor cable as instructed in Connect the power cables (page 132).
2. Connect the R- conductor of the brake resistor cable to terminal R- and attach it with a M10 nut.
3. Install the grommet kits to the cable entry plate with four M5 nuts each and tighten the nuts to 1.5 N·m (13.3 lbf·in).

Install the control cable entry plate

The installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Remove the control cable entry plate (page 129)

Install the EMC plates and side plates

Install all the plates that you removed before installing the cables. The installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to sections Remove the side plates (page 128), Remove the EMC side plate (page 129) and Remove the EMC cover plates (page 127).

Detaching connectors (frames R8 and R9)

ABB does not recommend that you detach the connectors. If you do, detach and install the connector as follows:

L1, L2 and L3 connectors

1. R8: Loosen the nut that attaches the connector to its terminal post.
   R9: Loosen the combi screw (R9) that attaches the connector to the busbar.
2. Pull the connector off.
3. Put the conductor under the connector pressure plate and pre-tighten the conductor.
4. Put the connector back. Start the nut or combi screw, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.

WARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.

5. Tighten the nut or combi screw to a torque of 30 N·m.
6. Tighten the conductor(s) to 40 N·m for frame R8 or to 70 N·m for frame R9.

T1/U, T2/V and T3/W connectors

1. Loosen the nut that attaches the connector to its its terminal post.
2. Put the conductor under the connector pressure plate and pre-tighten the conductor.
3. Put the connector back onto its terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.
4. **WARNING** Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.
5. Tighten the nut to a torque of 30 N·m.
6. Tighten the conductor(s) to 40 N·m for frame R8 or to 70 N·m for frame R9.

Cable lug installation (frames R6...R9)

The power cable connectors are connected to the drive with a nut to its terminal post or with a combi screw to busbar as follows:

Terminal	**Nut / Screw size**			
	R6	**R7**	**R8**	**R9**
L1, L2, L3	M8×25 combi screw	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10×30 combi screw
R-	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10 nut
R+, UDC+	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10×30 combi screw	M10×30 combi screw
UDC-	M8 nut	M8 nut	M8×30 combi screw	M8×30 combi screw
U/T1, V/T2, W/T3	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10 nut
Tightening torques M8: 16 N·m, M10: 30 N·m For frame size R9e, the maximum width of the cable lugs for L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W terminals is 44 mm (1.73 in). The maximum width of the cable lugs for UDC-, UDC+/R+ and R- terminals is 40 mm (1.57 in).				

1. Loosen the nut or combi screw. Pull the connector off.
2. Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
3. Depending on the terminal and frame size, put the cable lug onto the terminal post and tighten the nut, or connect the cable lug with the combi screw. Start the nut or combi screw, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.

WARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut or screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.

WARNING Use a suitable cable lug. With a thin cable lug (thinner than the original connector) and the original combi screw, the connection is loose and can cause sparkling and fire hazard.

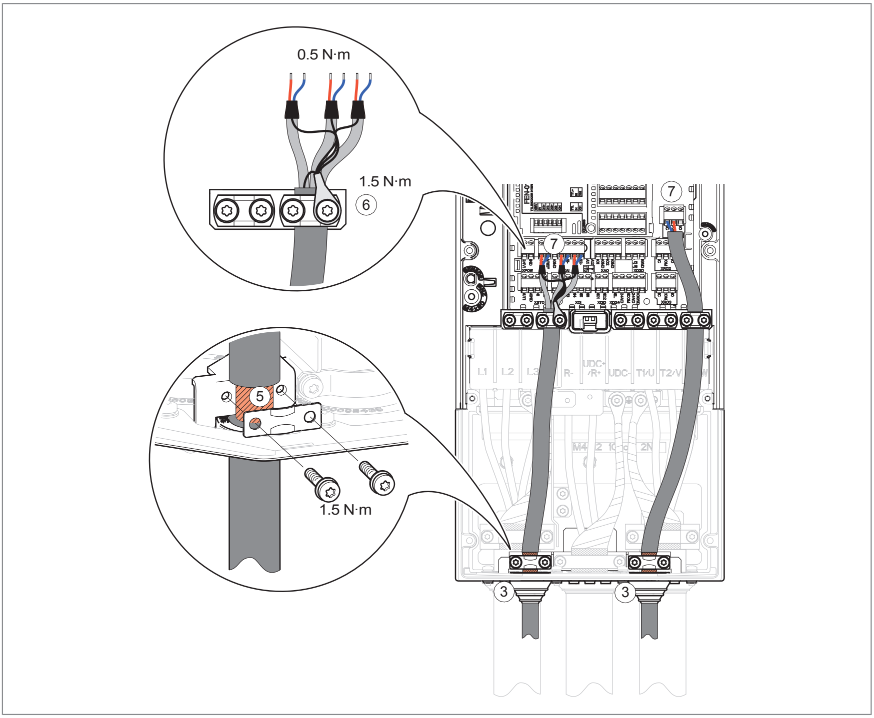
Connecting the control cables

Refer to section Control unit (page 183) for the default I/O connections of the Factory macro of ACS880 primary control program. For other macros and control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Connection procedure, frames R1...R9

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Repeat the steps described in Electrical safety precautions (page 20).
2. Remove the front cover(s). Refer to section Connecting the power cables (page 110).
3. Cut holes into the rubber grommets and slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.
4. Route the cables as shown in the image.
5. Ground the outer shields of all control cables 360 degrees at a grounding clamp in the cable entry box. Tighten the clamp to 1.5 N·m (13 lbf·in). Keep the shields continuous as close to the terminals of the control unit as possible. Secure the cables mechanically at the clamps below the control unit. Frames R1 to R3: Ground also the pair-cable shields and grounding wires at the cable entry box grounding clamp.
6. Frames R4 to R9: Ground the pair-cable shields and all grounding wires to the clamp below the control unit.
7. Connect the conductors to the appropriate terminals of the control unit and tighten to 0.5 N·m (5 lbf·in).



Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

8. Install the front cover. The installation procedure is the opposite of the removal procedure. Refer to Connecting the power cables (page 110).

Note:

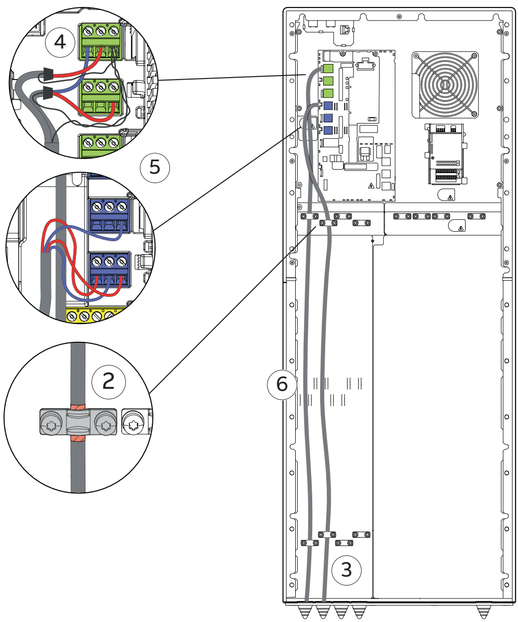
- Leave the other ends of the control cable shields unconnected or ground them indirectly via a high-frequency capacitor with a few nanofarads, eg, 3.3 nF / 630 V. The shield can also be grounded directly at both ends if they are in the same ground line with no significant voltage drop between the end points.
- Keep any signal wire pairs twisted as close to the terminals as possible. Twisting the wire with its return wire reduces disturbances caused by inductive coupling.

Connection procedure, frame R9e

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

Make the connections according to the macro in use. Keep the signal wire pairs twisted as near to the terminals as possible to prevent inductive coupling.

1. Cut a hole into the rubber grommet and slide the grommet onto the cable.
2. Ground the outer shield of the cable 360° under the grounding clamp. Keep the cable unstripped as close to the terminals of the control unit as possible.
3. Secure the cables mechanically at the bottom clamps.
4. If you use double-shielded cables, ground also the pair-cable shields and grounding wire at the SCR terminal.
5. Connect the conductors to the applicable terminals of the control unit and tighten to 0.5…0.6 N·m (0.4 lbf·ft).
6. Tie all control cables with zip ties to the provided cable tie mounts.

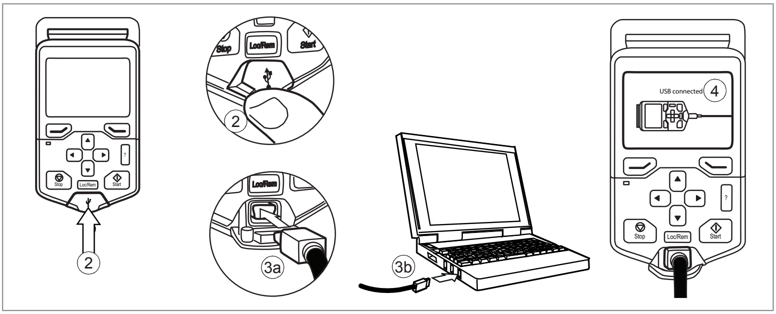


Connecting a PC

NOTICE Do not connect a PC directly to the control panel connector of the control unit. It can cause damage.

To connect a control panel to a PC (with, for example, Drive Composer PC tool):

1. Put the control panel into the panel holder or platform.
2. Remove the USB connector cover on the front of the control panel.
3. Connect a USB cable (Type A to Type Mini-B) between the USB connector on the control panel (3a) and a free USB port on the PC (3b).
4. The panel shows when the connection is active.
5. Refer to the documentation of the PC tool for setup instructions.



Alternatively, you can connect an Ethernet cable (for example, Cat 5e) to the Ethernet port behind the control panel. Make sure that the control panel is on a platform or a DIN rail.

Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)

One control panel (or PC) can be used to control several drives (or inverter units, supply units etc.) by constructing a panel bus. This is done by daisy-chaining the panel connections of the drives. Some drives have the necessary (twin) panel connectors in the control panel holder; those that do not, require the installation of an FDPI-02 module (available separately). For further information, refer to the hardware description and FDPI-02 diagnostics and panel interface user's manual (3AUA0000113618 [English]).

The maximum allowed length of the cable chain is 100 m (328 ft).

Do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.

1. Connect the panel to one drive using an Ethernet (for example Cat 5e) cable.
   - Use Menu - Settings - Edit texts - Drive to give a descriptive name to the drive
   - Use parameter 49.01* to assign the drive with a unique node ID number

- Set other parameters in group 49* if necessary
- Use parameter 49.06* to validate any changes.

*The parameter group is 149 with supply (line-side), brake or DC/DC converter units.

Repeat the above for each drive.

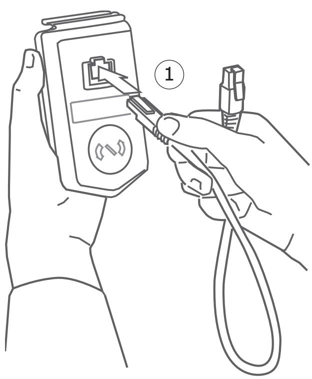
2. With the panel connected to one unit, link the units using Ethernet cables.
3. Switch on the bus termination on the drive that is farthest from the control panel in the chain.
    - With drives that have the panel mounted on the front cover, move the terminating switch into the outer position.
    - With the FDPI-02 module: move termination switch S1 on the FDPI-02 module into the TERMINATED position.

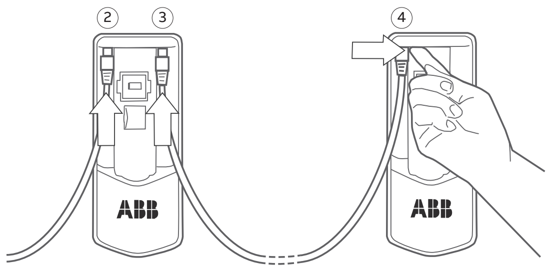
    Make sure that bus termination is off on all other drives.
4. On the control panel, switch on the panel bus functionality (Options - Select drive - Panel bus). The drive to be controlled can now be selected from the list under Options - Select drive.

Twin panel connection

If a PC is connected to the control panel, the drives on the panel bus are automatically displayed in the Drive Composer PC tool.

With twin connectors in the control panel holder:

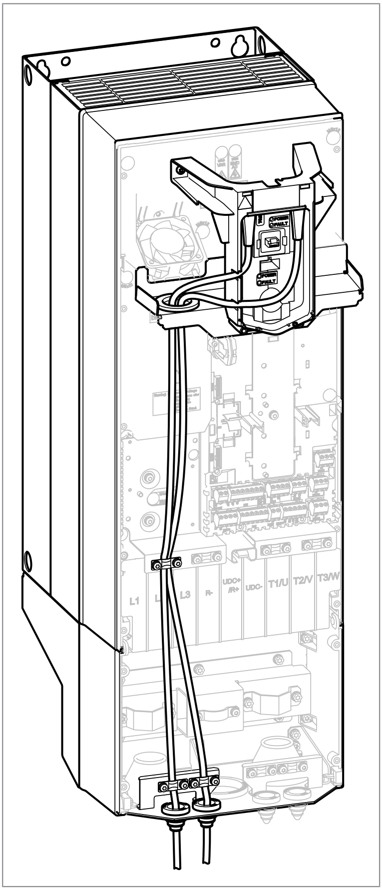




Connection with FDPI-02 modules

Refer to FDPI-02 diagnostics and panel interface user’s manual (3AUA0000113618 [English]).

ACS880-01 IP55 (UL Type 12):



Installing option modules

Note: The instructions in this section are applicable to drives with ZCU control unit. For UCU-20 control unit related instructions, refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

In frames R1 and R2, 90° connector cannot be used in Slot 1. In other frames, there is 50…55 mm free space for the connector and its cable available on Slots 1, 2 and 3.

For frames R1…R3: Pull the control panel mounting platform upwards to gain access to the optional module slots.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap when you handle printed circuit boards. Do not touch the boards unnecessarily. The boards are sensitive to electrostatic discharge.

Pay attention to the free space required by the cabling or terminals coming to the option modules.

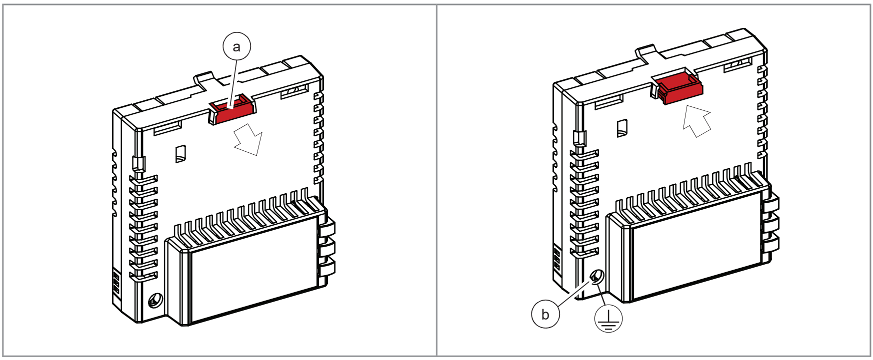
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Pull out the lock (a) with a screwdriver.

   Note: The location of the lock depends on the module type.

3. Install the module to a free option module slot on the control unit.
4. Push in the lock (a).
5. Tighten the grounding screw (b) to a torque of 0.8 N·m (7 lbf·in).

   Note: The screw tightens the connections and grounds the module. It is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.

   NOTICE Do not tighten the screw too much or too little. If you tighten the screw too much, damage to the threads or to the module can occur. A loose screw can cause a malfunction.



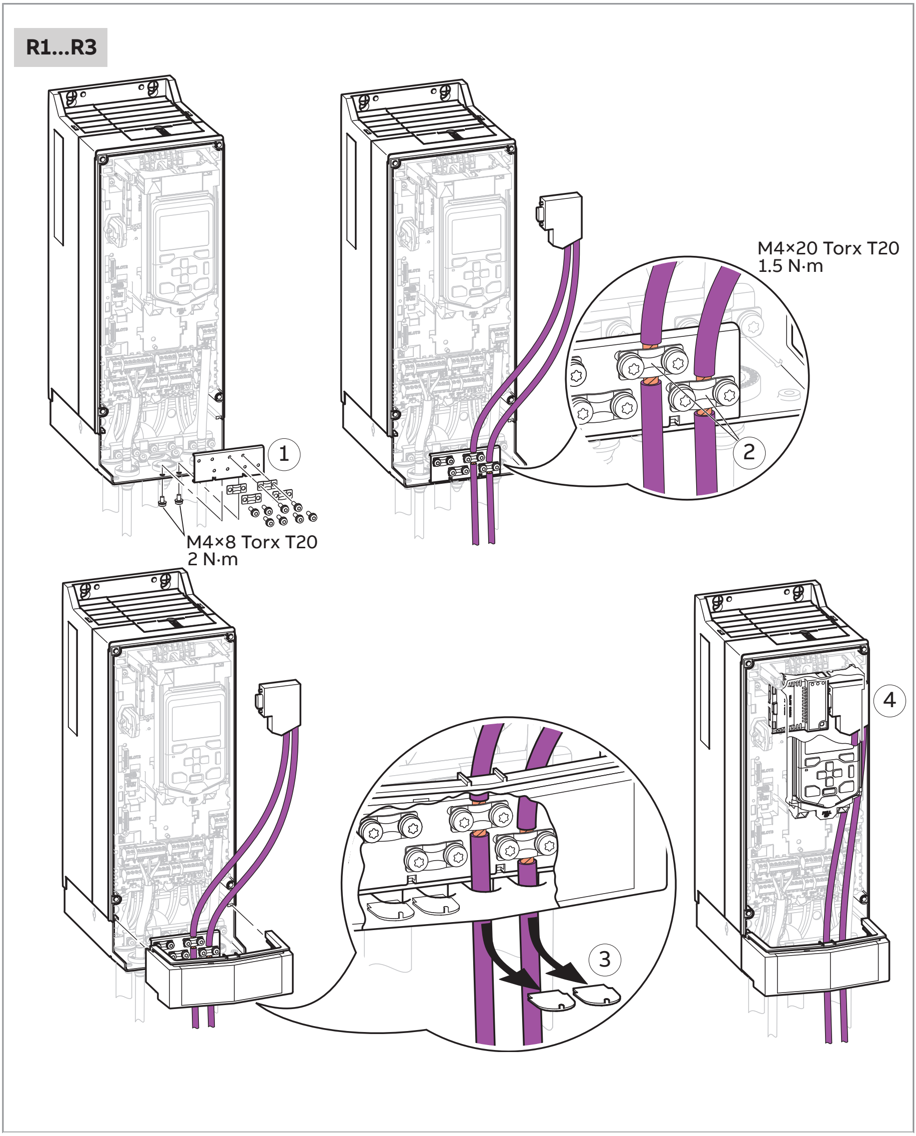
6. Connect the wiring to the module. Obey the instructions given in the documentation of the module.

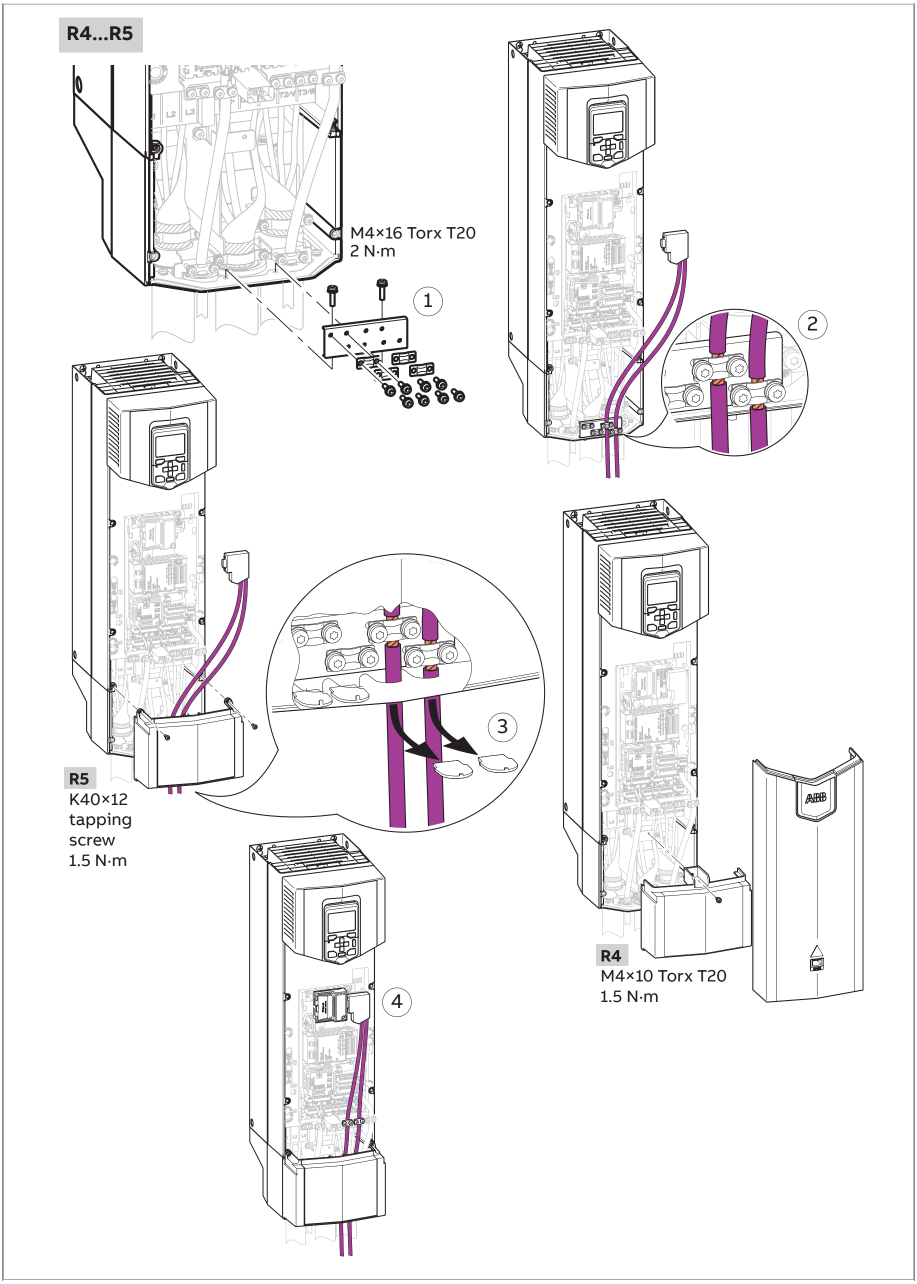
If you must remove the option module after it is installed into the drive, use a suitable tool (for example, small pliers) to carefully pull out the lock.

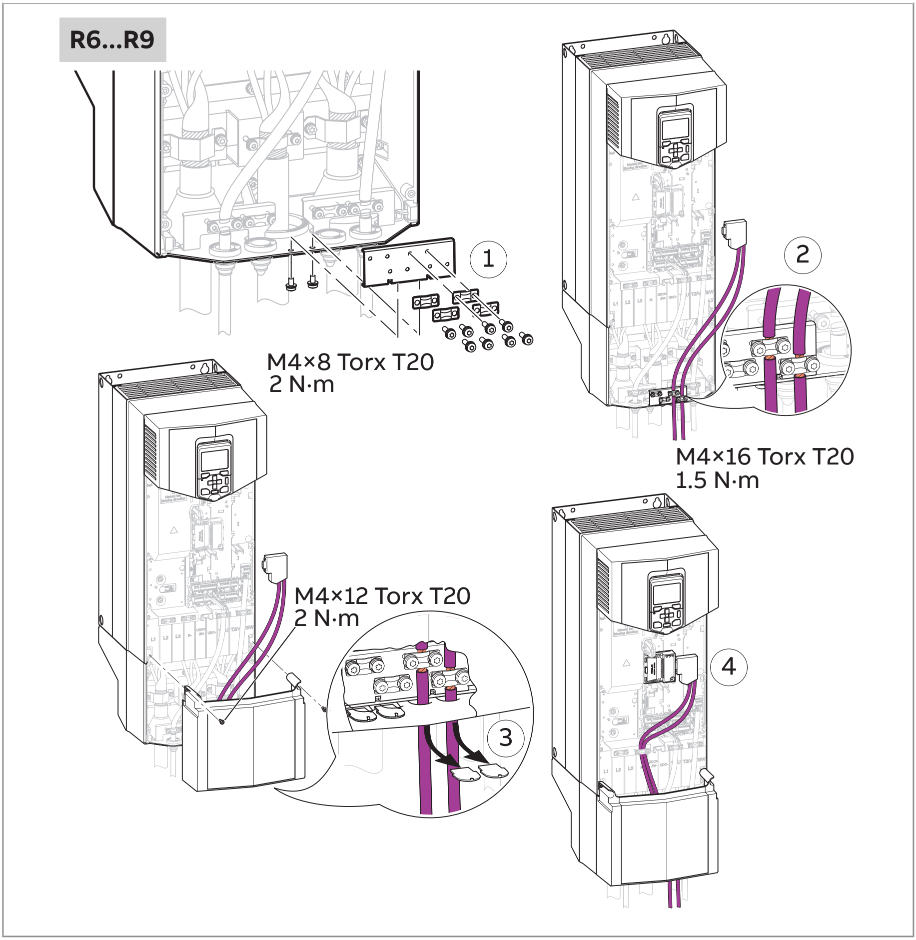
Fieldbus cabling

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Install the additional grounding shelf.
2. Ground the outer shields of the cables 360° at a grounding clamp.
3. Open holes into the cable entry box cover for the cables. Install the cable entry box cover.
4. Plug the connector to the fieldbus module.


R1...R3
1
M4×8 Torx T20
2 N·m
M4×20 Torx T20
1.5 N·m
2
3
4


R4...R5
M4×16 Torx T20
2 N·m
1
2
3
4
R5
K40×12
tapping
screw
1.5 N·m
R4
M4×10 Torx T20
1.5 N·m



Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit

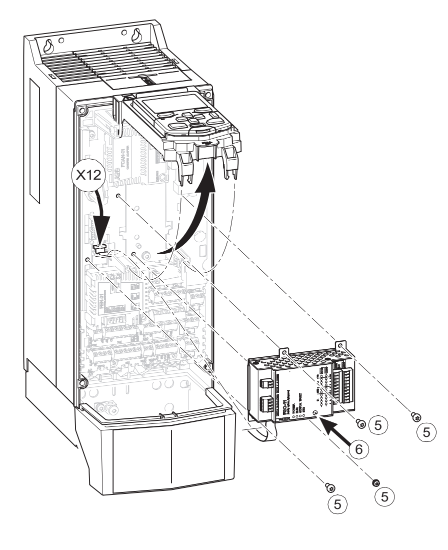
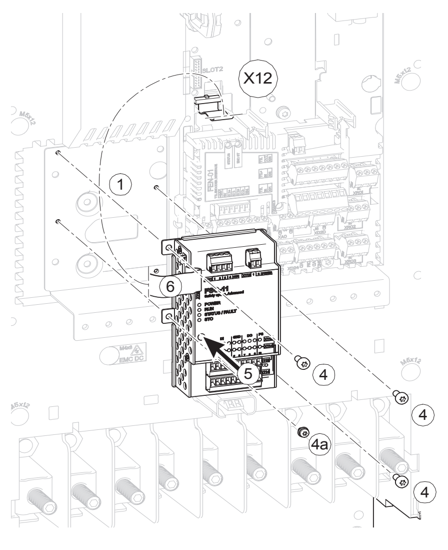
You can install the FSO safety functions module onto Slot 2 on the control unit or, in frames R6…R9, also next to the control unit.

Installation procedure

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Do the steps described in Electrical safety precautions (page 20).

2. Remove the front cover. See section Connecting the power cables (page 110).
3. <u>For frames R1…R3:</u> Pull the control panel mounting platform upwards to gain access to the optional module slots.
4. Insert the module carefully into its position on the control unit or on its place next to the control unit.
5. Attach the module with four screws. Note: The grounding screw (a) is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.
6. Tighten the grounding screw of the electronics to 0.8 N·m.
7. Connect the data communication cable to slot X110 on the module and to connector X12 on the drive control unit.
8. Connect the Safe torque off wires to connector X111 on the module and to connector XSTO on the drive module control unit.
9. Connect the external +24 V power supply cable to connector X112.
10. Connect the other wires as shown in FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015612 [English]) or FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015614 [English]).

	
Installation on Slot 2	Installation next to the control unit (possible for frames R6…R9)

Installing the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module

To install the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module onto the drive control unit, refer to FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000158638 [English]).

Installing the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module

To install the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module onto the drive control unit, refer to FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module user's manual (3AXD50001065478 [English]).

7

Electrical installation – North America (NEC)

Contents of this chapter

This chapter gives instructions on wiring the drive.

Safety

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation, commissioning, or maintenance work.

Necessary tools

To do the electrical installation, you need these tools:

- wire stripper
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- torque wrench.

Measuring the insulation

Refer to section Measuring the insulation (page 108).

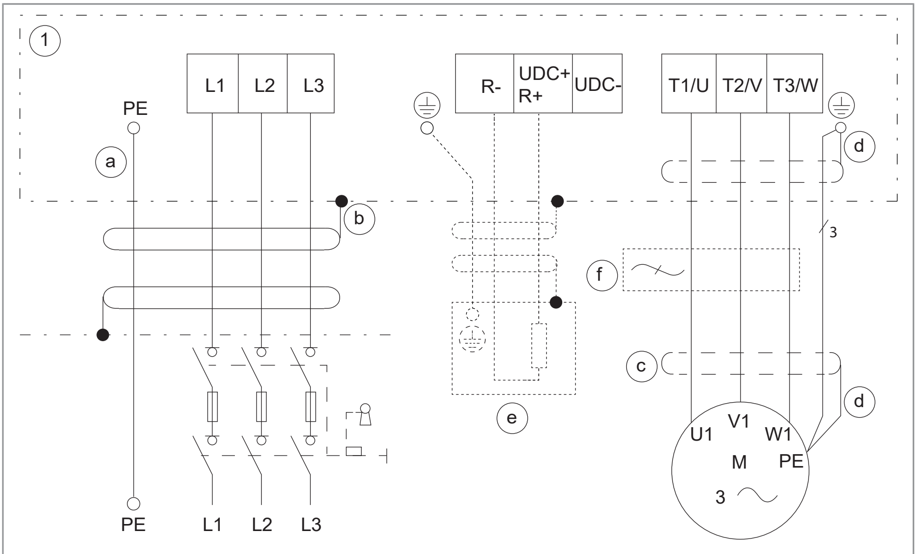
Grounding system compatibility check

Refer to section Grounding system compatibility check (page 109).

Connecting the power cables

Connection diagram

Note: NEC installation can include separate insulated conductors inside a conduit, shielded VFD cable in conduit, or shielded VFD cable without conduit. The normal dashed symbol (c) in this diagram represents the shield of shielded VFD cable. The same solid symbol (b) represents conduit.



1	Drive
a	Insulated ground conductor in a conduit. Ground to drive's PE terminal and to the distribution panel ground bus. For a VFD cable installation, refer to (d).
b	Conduit ground. Bond the conduit to the drive's conduit box and to the distribution panel enclosure. For a VFD cable installation, refer to (c).
c	Shield of a VFD shielded cable. Ground the shield 360° under drive's grounding clamp then twist and connect under the drive's ground terminal. Ground also the shield 360° at the motor end then twist and connect under the motor's ground terminal. For a conduit installation, refer to (b).
d	Symmetrically constructed grounding conductors inside a VFD shielded cable. Twist together and ground under drive's ground terminal and under the motor's ground terminal. For a conduit installation, refer to (a).

e	External brake resistor connection (if used). For a conduit installation: Refer to a and b. For a VFD cable installation: Refer to c and d. In addition, cut the third phase conductor which is not needed for the brake resistor connection. Refer to chapter Resistor braking (page 347).
f	If necessary, install an external filter (du/dt, common mode, or sine filter). Filters are available from ABB.

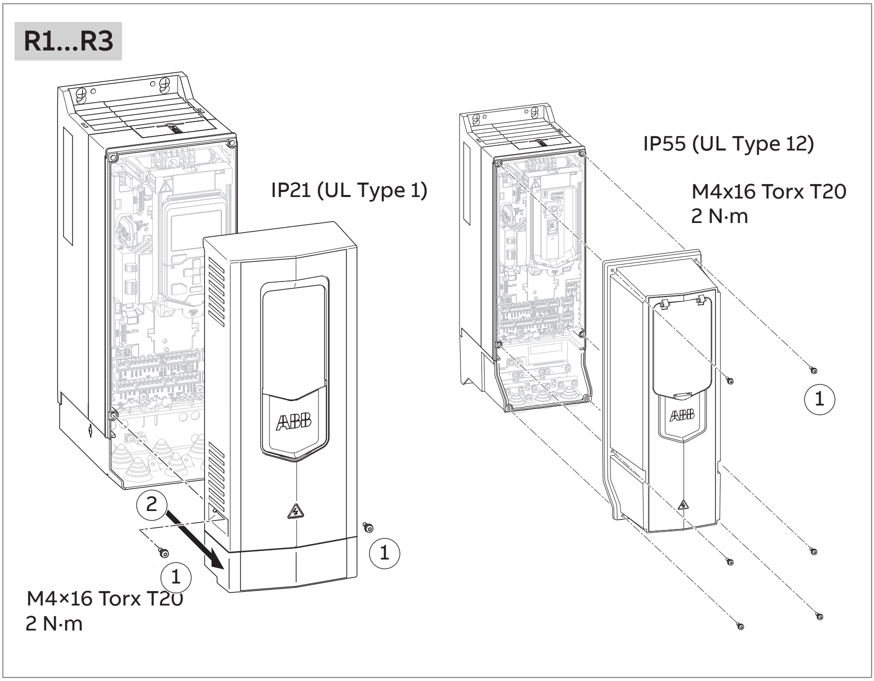
Note: Do not use an asymmetrically constructed motor cable for motors above 30 kW. Connecting its fourth conductor at the motor end increases bearing currents and causes extra wear.

All openings in the drive enclosure must be closed with UL listed devices having the same Type rating as the drive Type.

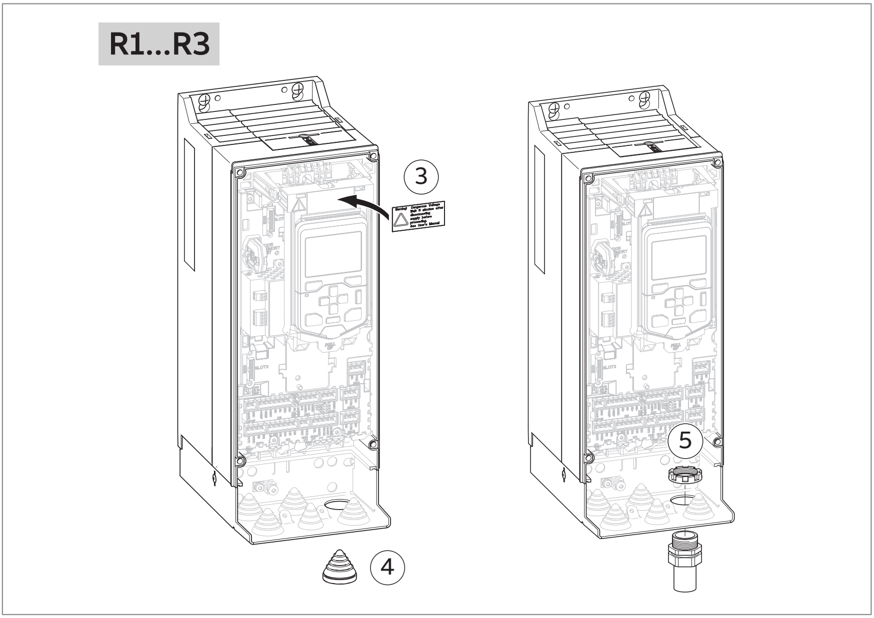
Connection procedure for frames R1 to R3

Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

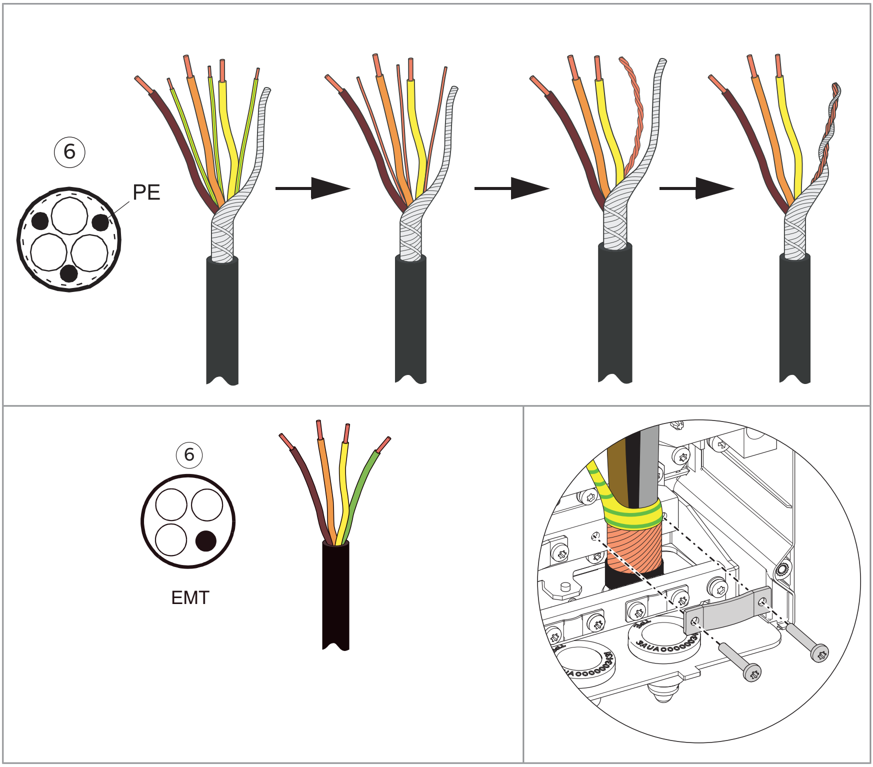
1. Undo the mounting screws at the sides of the front cover.
2. To remove the cover, slide it forward.



3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language to the control panel mounting platform.
4. Remove the rubber grommets from the entry plate for the cables.
5. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.



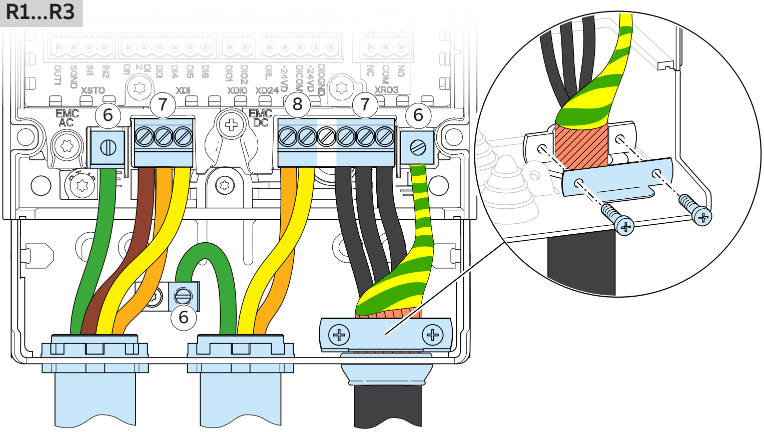
6. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the grounding clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the ground terminal.



7. Connect the phase conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.

8. <u>If brake chopper is in use:</u> Connect the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.

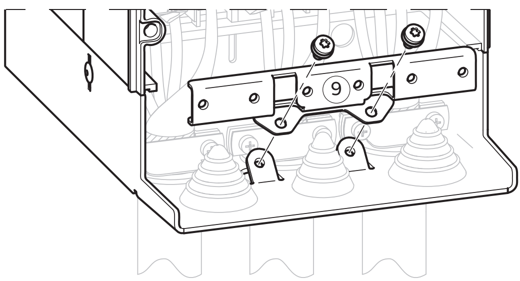
R1...R3



	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3W, r-, R+/UDC+, UDC-	Ground	Clamp
	lbf·ft	lbf·ft	lbf·in
R1	0.4	1.3	13.3
R2	0.4	1.3	13.3
R3	1.3	1.3	17

9. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.

R1...R3



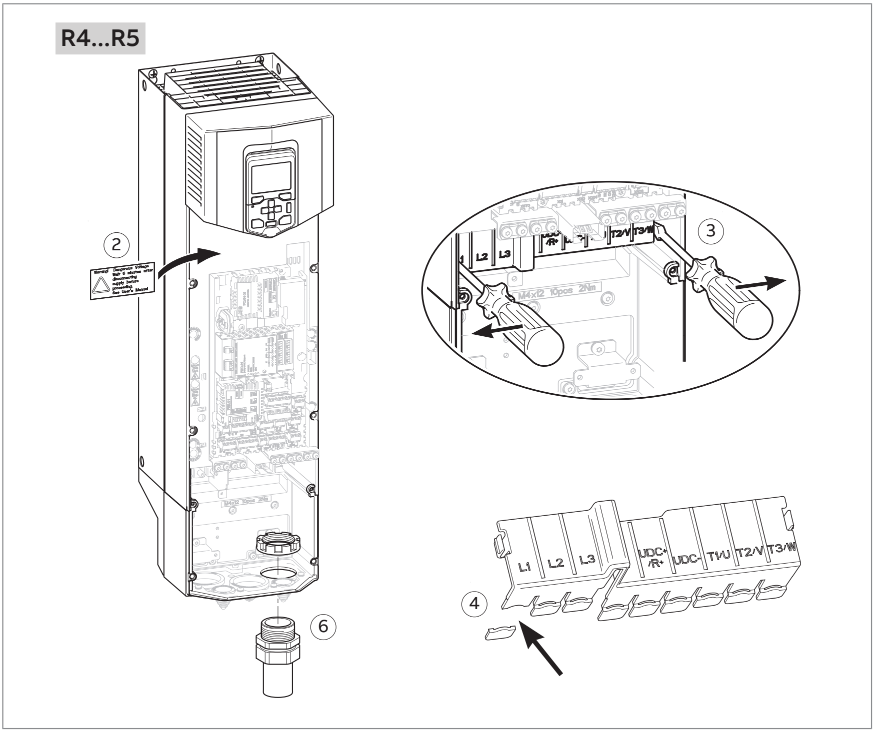
10. Connect the motor cable at the motor end.

Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5

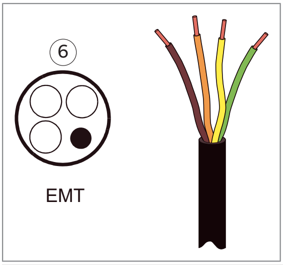
In this connection procedure, the cables are connected to the power cable connectors.

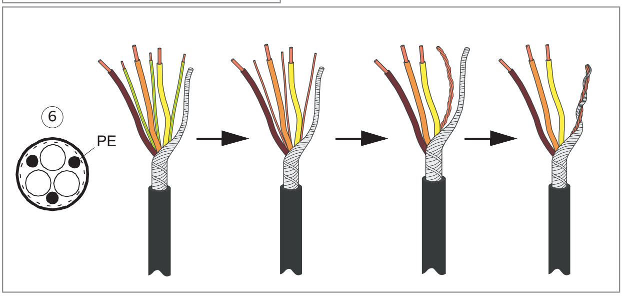
Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

1. Remove the front cover. UL Type 1 units: Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and lift the cover from the bottom outwards (b). To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screw.
2. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
3. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips and lift the shroud up from the sides with a screwdriver.
4. Open holes into the shroud for the cables. For easier installation, remove the EMC shroud that separates the input and output cabling.



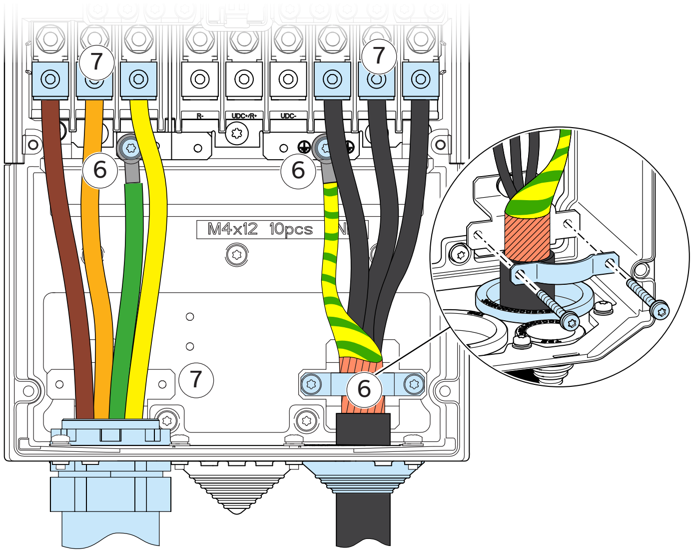
5. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.
6. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the grounding terminal.





7. Connect the conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.

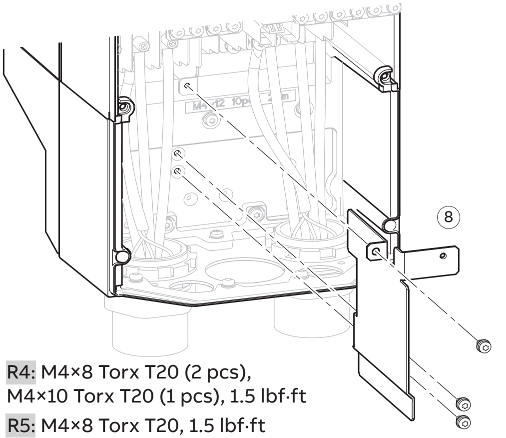
R4...R5



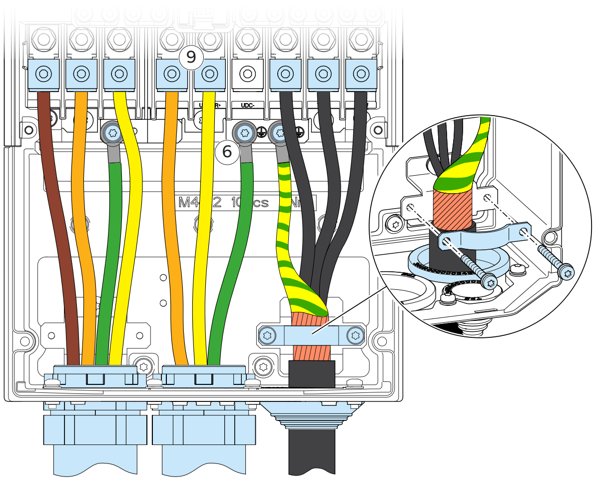
	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3W, R-, R+/UDC+, UDC-	Ground	Clamp
	lbf·ft	lbf·ft	lbf·in
R4	2.4	2.1	10.6
R5	11	2.1	10.6

8. Install the EMC shroud separating the input and output cabling if not installed yet.

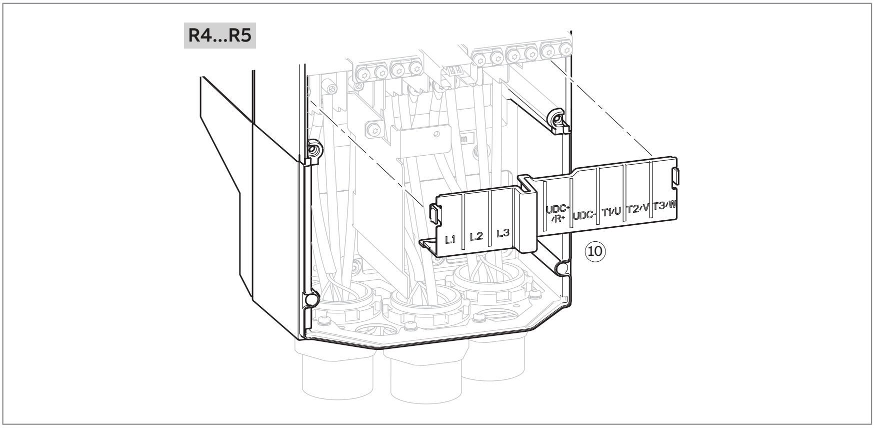
9. <u>Drives with option +D150:</u> Connect the conductors of the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.



R4...R5



10. Install the shroud on the power cable terminals.



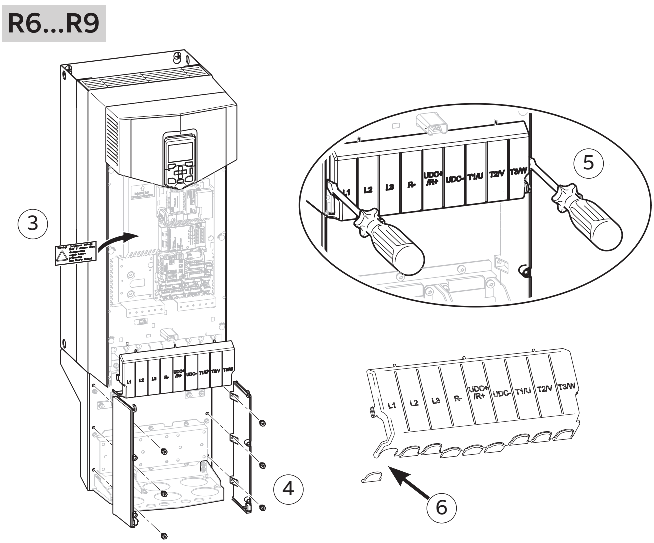
11. Connect the motor cable at the motor end.

Connection procedure for frames R6 to R9

In this connection procedure, the cables are connected to the power cable connectors.

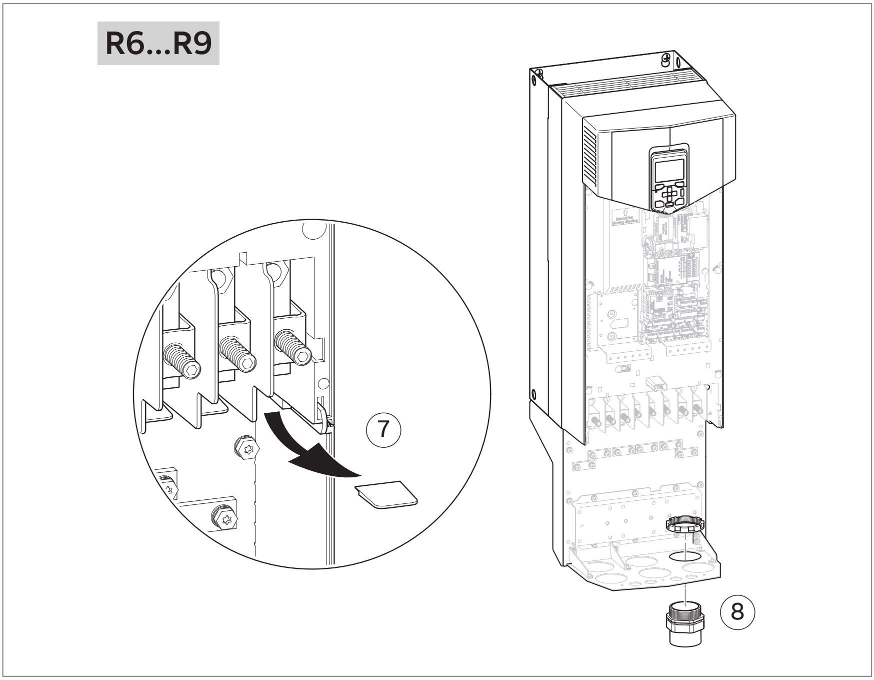
Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

1. Remove the front cover: UL Type 1 drives: Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and pull the cover by the bottom outwards (b).
2. UL Type 1 drives: To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screws.
3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
4. Remove the side plates of the cable entry box.
5. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips on the sides with a screwdriver and lift.
6. If you install parallel cables, open holes into the shroud for the cables.

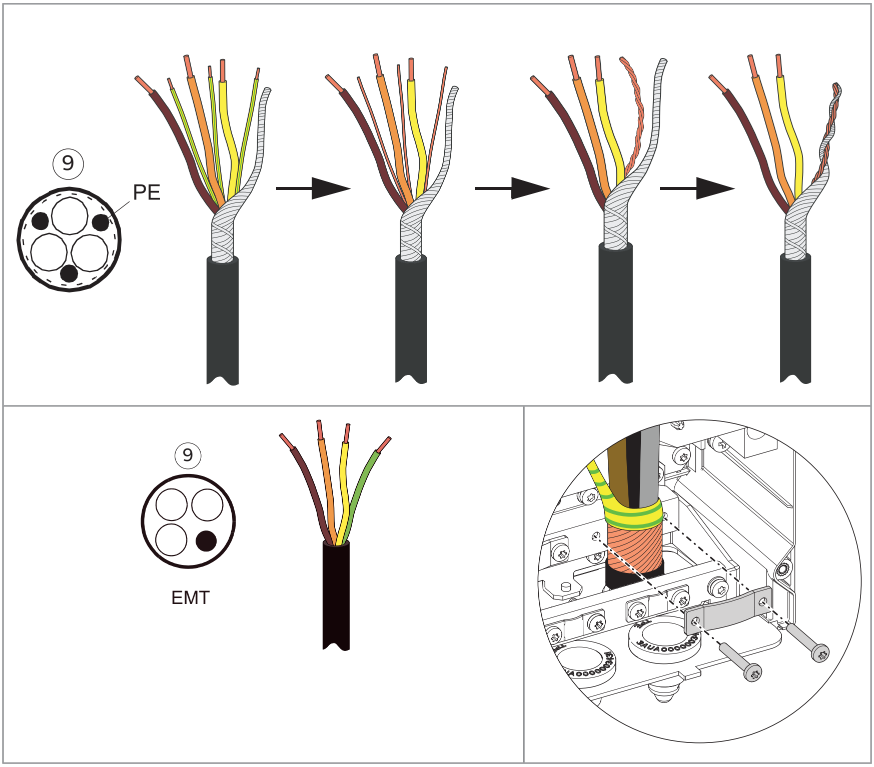


R6,R7,R9: M5×12 Torx T20
R8: M5×20 Torx T20
2 N·m (17 lbf·in)

7. Open holes into the shroud on the power cable terminals for the cables.
8. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.



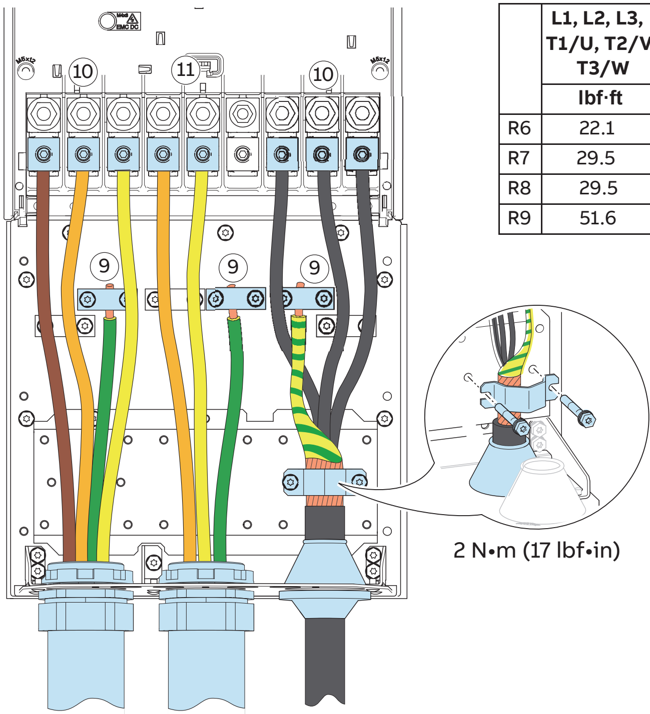
9. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the grounding terminal.



10. Connect the conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.
11. Drives with option +D150: Connect the conductors of the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.

R6...R9

	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W	R-, R+/ UDC+, UDC-	⏚
	lbf·ft	lbf·ft	lbf·ft
R6	22.1	14.8	7.2
R7	29.5	14.8	7.2
R8	29.5	29.5	7.2
R9	51.6	51.6	7.2



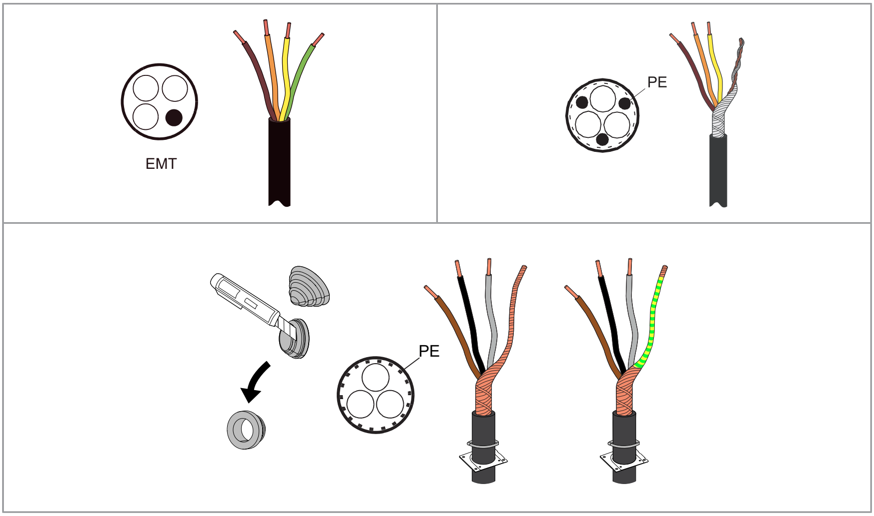
12. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
13. Install the side plates of the cable entry box.

Connection procedure for frame R9e

⚠WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

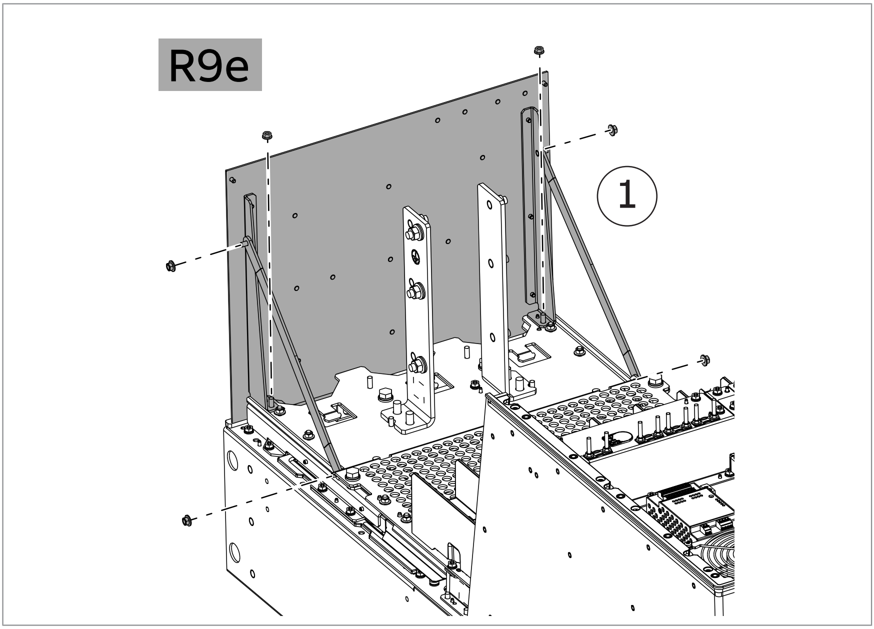
Prepare the cables:

1. Cut the cables to suitable length.
2. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the grounding terminal.
   If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° with the hose clamp around the stripped part of the cable to the grounding support in the backplate.

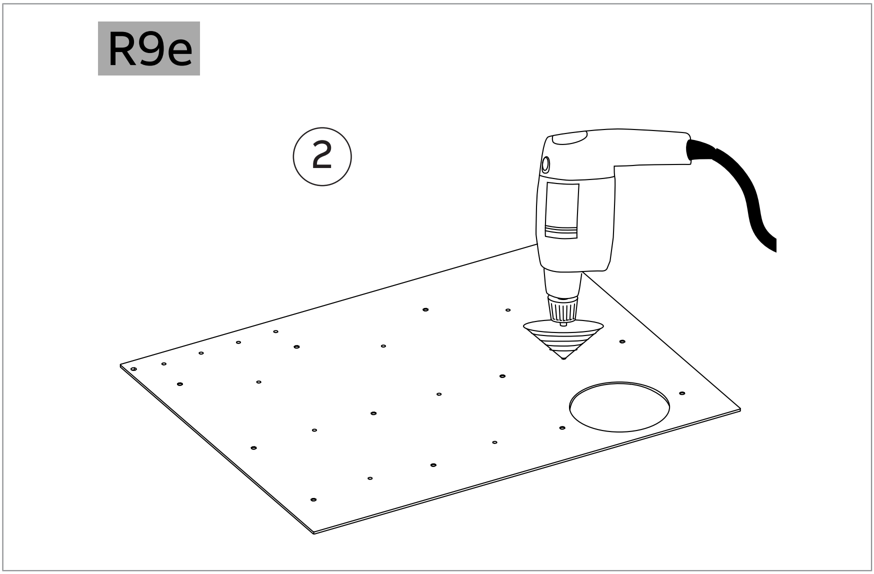


Remove the conduit plate and install the conduit hubs:

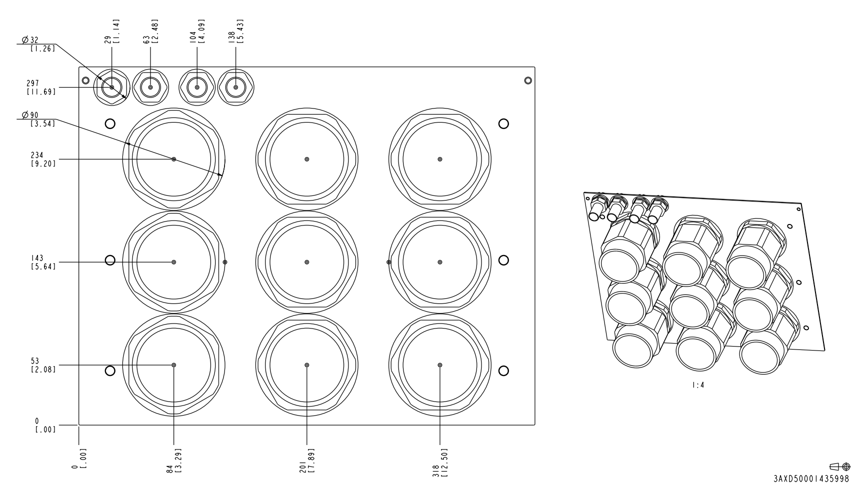
1. Remove the six M5 nuts to remove the conduit plate and side supports.



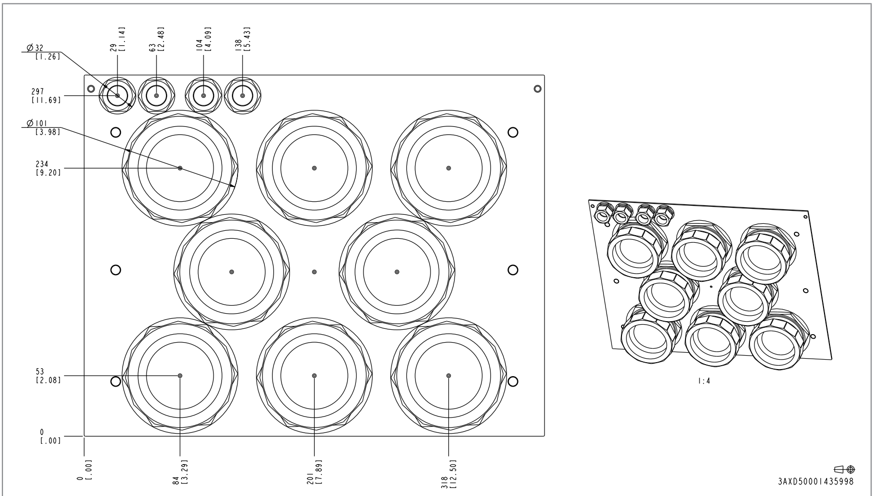
2. Drill holes into the conduit plate for the conduit hubs.



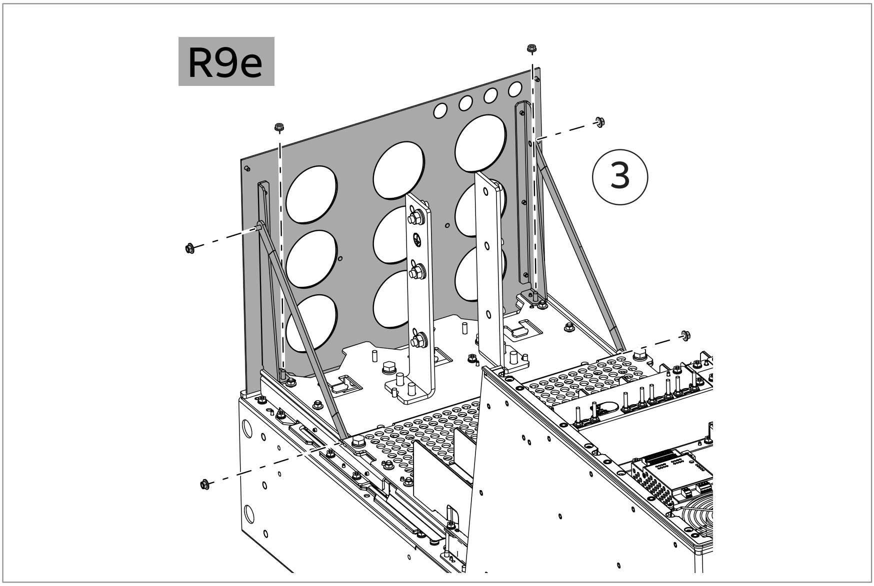
If the conduit diameter is maximum 90 mm (3.54 in), you can make up to 9 holes for the power cables in the conduit plate. The conduit plate has punched center marks for the holes.



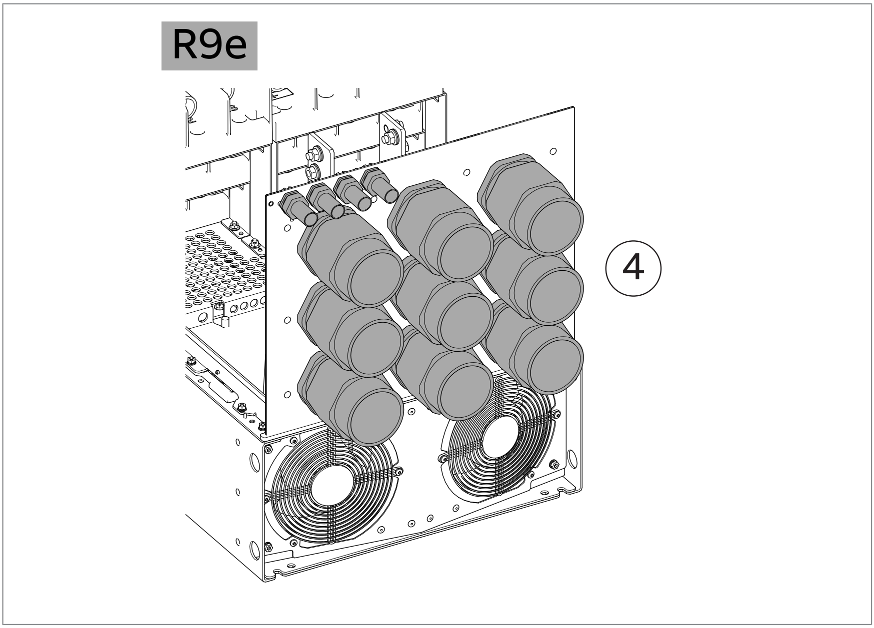
If the conduit diameter is maximum 101 mm (3.98 in), you can make up to 8 holes for the power cables in the conduit plate. The conduit plate has punched center marks for the holes. Do not use the punched center marks for conduits with a diameter of more than 101 mm (3.98 in).



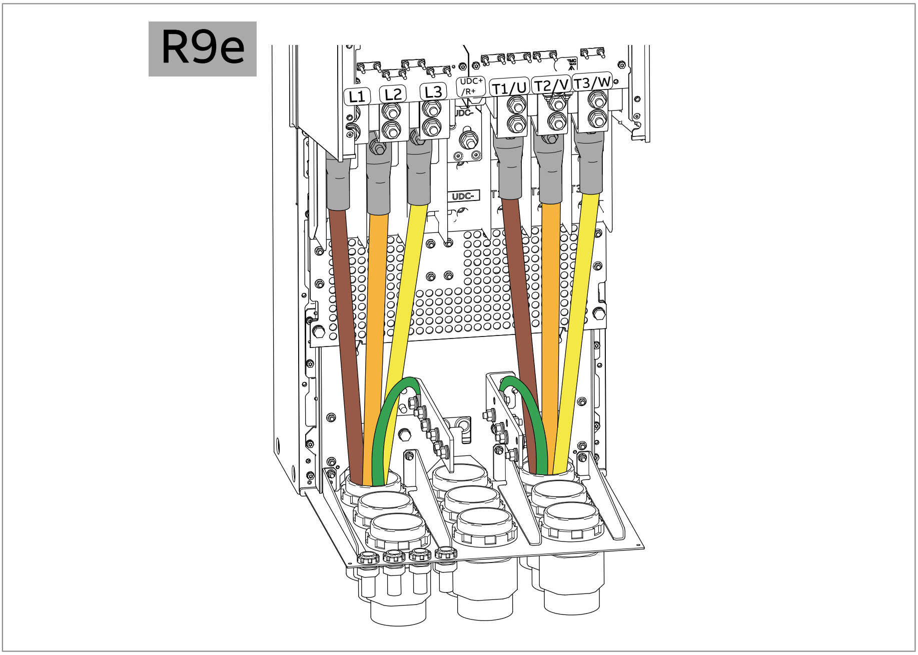
3. Install the conduit plate and side supports back to the drive with six M5 nuts. Tighten the nuts to a torque of 3 N·m (26.6 lbf·in).



4. Install the conduit hubs into the conduit plate.



The connection procedure for power cables is the same as in the IEC installation. This is an example of the NEC installation:



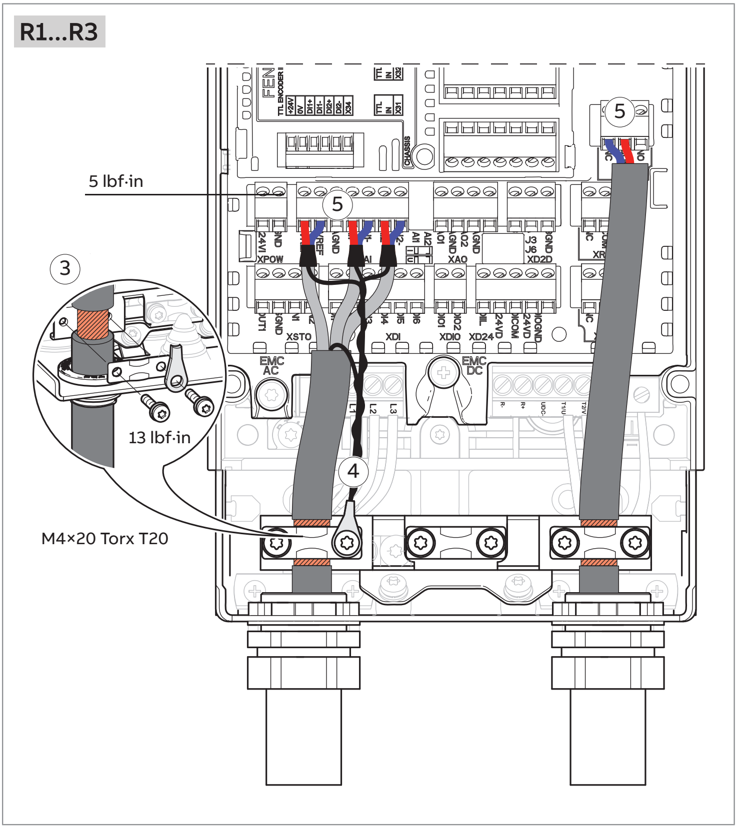
Refer to Connection procedure for frame R9e (page 126) for the connection procedure for power cables.

Connecting the control cables

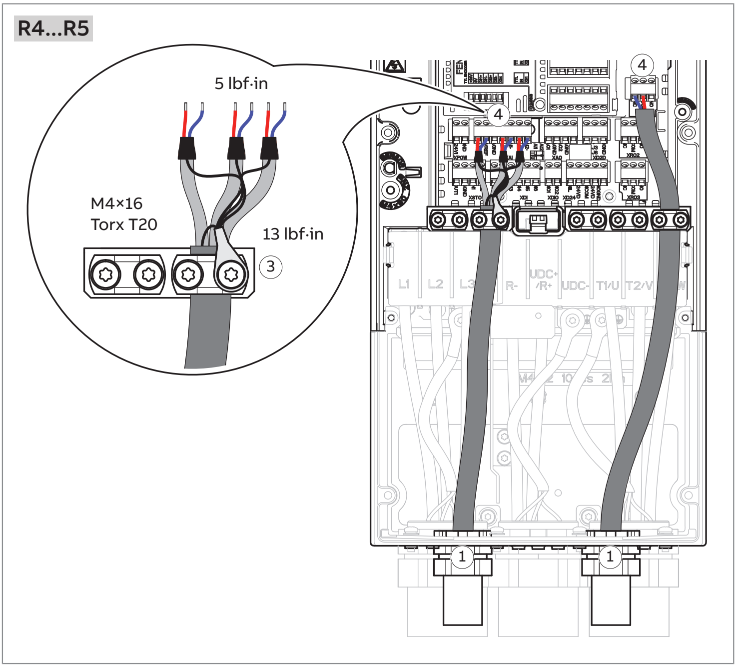
Refer to section Control unit (page 183) for the default I/O connections of the Factory macro of ACS880 primary control program. For other macros and control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Connection procedure

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Attach the cable conduits to the drive conduit plate. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the control cables through the conduit. Cut to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors) and strip the conductors.
3. Ground the outer shields of all control cables 360° at a grounding clamp.
4. Ground the pair-cable shields to the grounding clamp (in frames R4 and R5 below the control unit). Leave the other end of the shields unconnected or ground them indirectly via a high-frequency capacitor with a few nanofarads, eg, 3.3 nF / 630 V.
5. Connect the conductors to the appropriate terminals of the control unit.
6. Wire the optional modules if included in the delivery.
7. Install the front cover. Refer to Connecting the power cables (page 158)

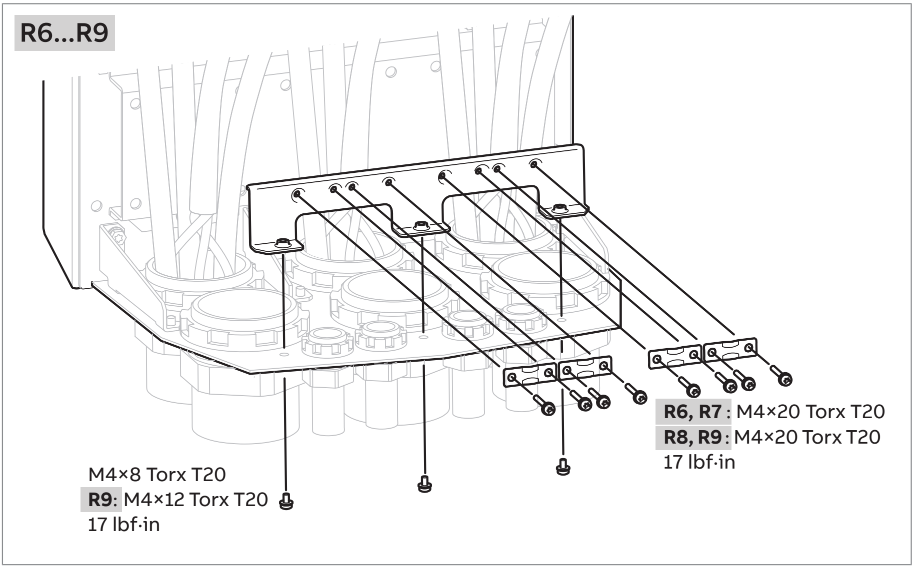


Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

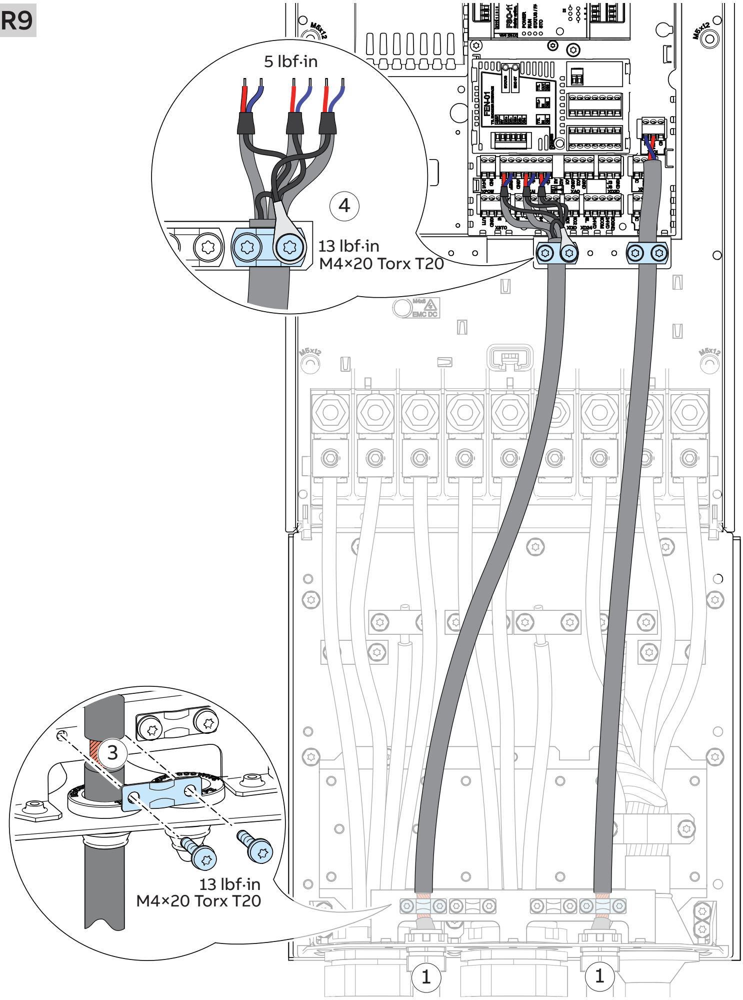


Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

Install the control cable grounding shelf.



R6...R9



Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

Connection procedure for frame R9e

Refer to Connection procedure, frame R9e (page 146).

Connecting a PC

Refer to section Connecting a PC (page 147).

Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)

Refer to section Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel) (page 147).

Installing option modules

Refer to section Installing option modules (page 149).

8

Control unit

Contents of this chapter

This chapter

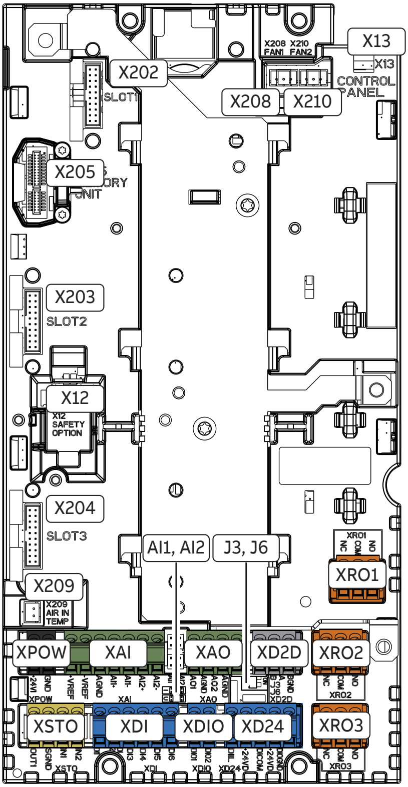
- gives information on the connections of the control unit, and
- has the specifications of the inputs and outputs of the control unit.

General

The drive uses ZCU-12 control unit. UCU-20 control unit is available with plus code +V998. For more information on the UCU-20 control unit, refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

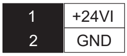
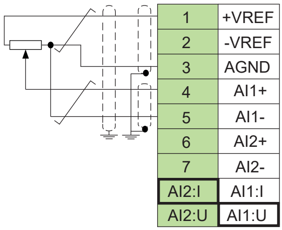
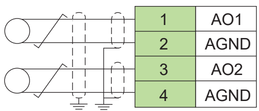
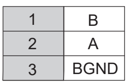
ZCU-12 layout

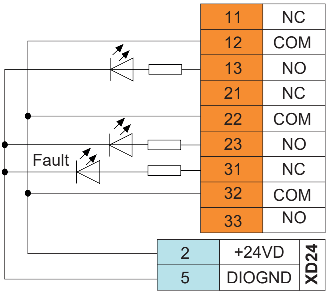
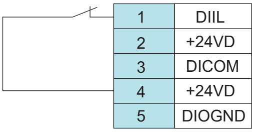
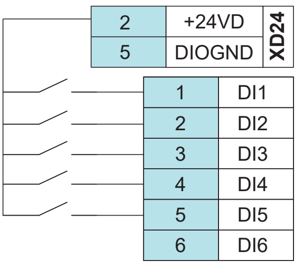
This figure shows the layout of the ZCU-12 control unit.

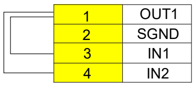


	Description
XAI	Analog inputs
XAO	Analog outputs
XDI	Digital inputs
XDIO	Digital input/outputs
XD24	Digital input interlock (DIIL) and +24 V output
XD2D	Drive-to-drive link or Modbus/RTU
XPOW	External power input
XRO1	Relay output RO1
XRO2	Relay output RO2
XRO3	Relay output RO3
XSTO	Safe torque off connection
X12	Connection for FSO safety functions module
X13	Control panel connection
X202	Option slot 1
X203	Option slot 2
X204	Option slot 3
X205	Memory unit connection
X208	Cooling fan 1 connection
X209	Connection for ambient temperature sensor (at air inlet). Connected at the factory.
X210	Cooling fan 2 connection
AI1, AI2	Current/Voltage selection jumpers (J1, J2) for analog inputs
J3	Drive-to-drive link termination switch (J3)
J6	Common digital input ground selection switch (J6)

Default control connection diagram of the drive control unit (ZCU)

Connection	Term	Description
XPOW External power input		
	+24VI	24 V DC, 2 A min. (without optional modules)
	GND	
XAI Reference voltage and analog inputs		
	+VREF	10 V DC, R_L 1…10 kohm
	-VREF	-10 V DC, R_L 1…10 kohm
	AGND	Ground
	AI1+	**Speed reference**
	AI1-	0(2)…10 V, R_{in} > 200 kohm [1)]
	AI2+	By default not in use.
	AI2-	0(4)…20 mA, R_{in} = 100 ohm [1)]
	AI1	Current (I) / voltage (U) selection jumper for AI1
	AI2	Current (I) / voltage (U) selection jumper for AI2
XAO Analog outputs		
	AO1	**Motor speed rpm**
	AGND	0…20 mA, R_L < 500 ohm
	AO2	**Motor current**
	AGND	0…20 mA, R_L < 500 ohm
XD2D Drive-to-drive link		
	B	Master/follower, drive-to-drive or embedded fieldbus connection
	A	
	BGND	
	J3	Drive-to-drive link termination

Connection	Term	Description
XRO1, XRO2, XRO3 Relay outputs		
	NC	**Ready run** 250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A
	COM	
	NO	
	NC	**Running** 250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A
	COM	
	NO	
	NC	**Fault (-1)** 250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A
	COM	
	NO	
XD24 Auxiliary voltage output, digital interlock		
	DIIL	Run enable
	+24VD	+24 V DC 200 mA 2)
	DICOM	Digital input ground
	+24VD	+24 V DC 200 mA 2)
	DIOGND	Digital input/output ground
XDIO Digital input/outputs		
	DIO1	Output: Ready run
	DIO2	Output: Running
	J6	Ground selection 3)
XDI Digital inputs		
	DI1	Stop (0) / Start (1)
	DI2	Forward (0) / Reverse (1)
	DI3	Reset
	DI4	Acc/Dec time select 4)
	DI5	Constant speed 1 (1 = On) 5)
	DI6	By default, not in use.
XSTO Safe torque off connection		

Connection	Term	Description
	OUT1 SGND IN1 IN2	IN1 and IN2 are connected to OUT1 at the factory. To enable start and operation, IN1 and IN2 must be connected to OUT1. Refer to chapter The Safe torque off function (page 363).
X12	Safety options connection	
X13	Control panel connection	
X205	Memory unit connection	

1) Current [0(4)…20 mA, R_{in} = 100 ohm] or voltage [0(2)…10 V, R_{in} > 200 kohm] input selected by jumper. Change of setting requires reboot of control unit.

2) Total load capacity of these outputs is 4.8 W (200 mA at 24 V) minus the power taken by DIO1 and DIO2.

3) Determines whether DICOM is separated from DIOGND (ie. common reference for digital inputs floats; in practice, selects whether the digital inputs are used in current sinking or sourcing mode). Refer to ZCU ground isolation diagram (page 194). DICOM=DIOGND ON: DICOM connected to DIOGND. OFF: DICOM and DIOGND separate.

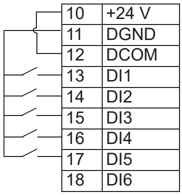
4) 0 = Acceleration/deceleration ramps defined by parameters *23.12*/*23.13* in use. 1 = Acceleration/deceleration ramps defined by parameters *23.14*/*23.15* in use.

5) Constant speed 1 is defined by parameter *22.26*.

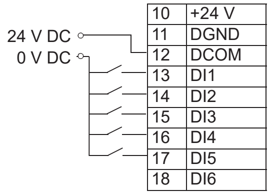
Additional information on the connections

NPN configuration for digital inputs

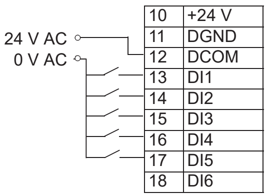
Internal 24 V voltage source



External 24 V DC voltage source



External 24 V AC voltage source



NOTICE If you connect external 24 V AC voltage source to XPOW, do not connect 24 V AC to XDI, XDIO or XD24. It can cause damage to the control unit.

Note: DI6 is not supported in the NPN configuration.

Connecting motor temperature sensors to the drive

Refer to the electrical planning instructions.

Power supply for the control unit (XPOW)

Refer to the control unit connector data for the current and voltage ratings of the power supply.

Connect an additional external power supply to the free +24 V and GND terminals of the XPOW terminal block if:

- the control unit must be kept operational during input power breaks, for example, because of continuous fieldbus communication
- immediate restart is necessary after a power break (that is, no control unit power-up delay is permitted).

Digital interlock (DIIL)

Digital interlock input (DIIL) terminal is originally intended for interlock signals that stop the drive/unit when necessary.

In the ACS880 primary control program, DIIL terminal is the source for the run enable signal by default. The inverter unit or drive cannot start, or it stops when there is no DIIL signal. In other control programs (and units), the default use of the DIIL terminal varies. Refer to the firmware manual for more information.

Note: This input is **not** SIL or PL classified.

The XD2D connector

The XD2D connector provides an RS-485 connection that can be used for

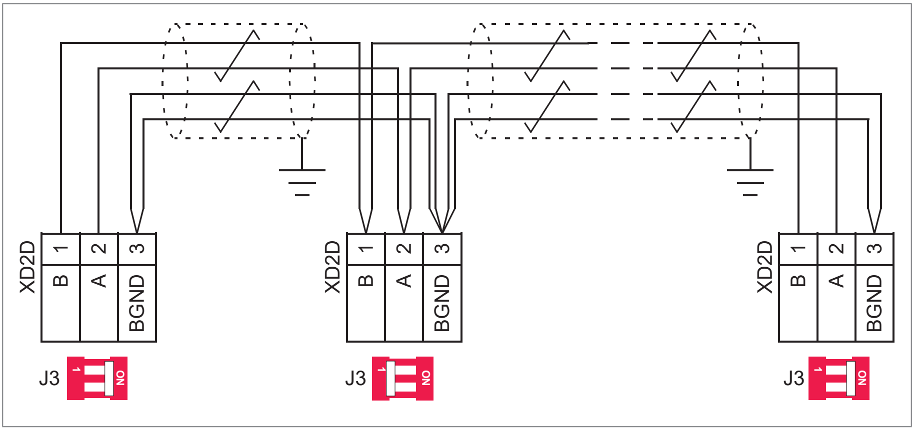
- basic master/follower communication with one master drive and multiple followers,
- fieldbus control through the embedded fieldbus interface (EFB), or
- drive-to-drive (D2D) communication implemented by application programming.

Refer to the firmware manual for the related parameter settings.

Terminate the bus on the units at the ends of the drive-to-drive link. Disable bus termination on the intermediate units.

Use a shielded twisted-pair cable for data, and another pair or a wire for signal ground (nominal impedance 100…165 ohm, for example Belden 9842). For the best immunity, ABB recommends high quality cable. Keep the cable as short as possible. Avoid unnecessary loops and parallel runs near power cables such as motor cables.

The diagram that follows shows the wiring of the drive-to-drive link. The diagram is applicable to ZCU-12 control units.



Safe torque off (XSTO)

The XSTO input only acts as a true Safe torque off input on the inverter control unit. De-energizing the STO input terminals of other control units (supply, DC/DC converter, or brake unit) stops the unit but does not constitute a SIL/PL classified safety function.

Safety functions module connection (X12)

In drives or inverter units with a compatible control program, an optional FSO safety functions module can be connected to the X12 connector. The control program in supply, brake, and DC/DC converter units does not support the FSO safety functions module.

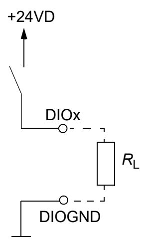
For more information on the FSO safety functions module, refer to the applicable FSO module user's manual.

Note: Inverter modules and control units that have a sticker with the text “No FSO support” are not compatible with the FSO safety functions module.

Connector data

The wire size accepted by all screw terminals (for both stranded and solid wire) is 0.5 … 2.5 mm^2 (22…12 AWG). Connector pitch is 5 mm.

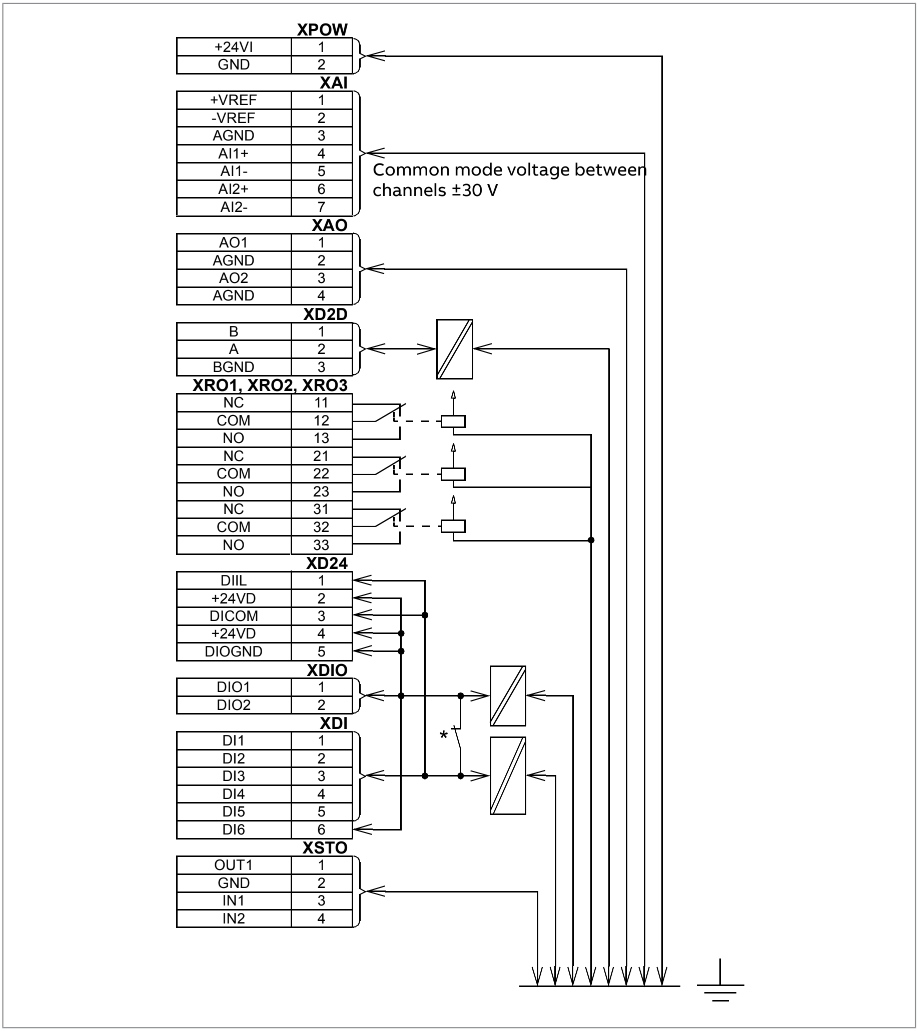
The maximum tightening torque for screw terminals is 0.5 N·m (5 lbf·in).

Power supply (XPOW)	24 V DC (±10%), 2 A External power input.
Relay outputs RO1…RO3 (XRO1…XRO3)	250 V AC / 30 V DC, 2 A Protected by varistors
+24 V output (XD24:5 and XD24:7)	Total load capacity of these outputs is 4.8 W (200 mA / 24 V) minus the power taken by DIO1 and DIO2.
Digital inputs DI1…DI6 (XDI:1…XDI:6)	24 V logic levels: “0” < 5 V, “1” > 15 V R_{in}: 2.0 kohm (DI1…DI5) Input type: NPN/PNP (DI1…DI5), PNP (DI6) Hardware filtering: 0.04 ms, digital filtering up to 8 ms I_{max}: 15 mA (DI1…DI5), 5 mA (DI6)
Start interlock input DIIL (XD24:1)	24 V logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 15 V R_{in}: 2.0 kohm Input type: NPN/PNP Hardware filtering: 0.04 ms, digital filtering up to 8 ms
Digital inputs/outputs DIO1 and DIO2 (XDIO:1 and XDIO:2) Input/output mode selection by parameters. DIO1 can be configured as a frequency input (0…16 kHz with hardware filtering of 4 microseconds) for 24 V level square wave signal (sinusoidal or other wave form cannot be used). In some control programs, DIO2 can be configured as a 24 V level square wave frequency output. Refer to the firmware manual, parameter group 11.	As inputs: 24 V logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 15 V. R_{in}: 2.0 kohm. Filtering: 1 ms. Maximum input voltage is 26 V. As outputs: Total output current from +24VD is limited to 200 mA 
Reference voltage for analog inputs +VREF and -VREF (XAI:1 and XAI:2)	10 V ±1% and -10 V ±1%, R_{load} 1…10 kohm Maximum output current: 10 mA

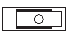
Analog inputs AI1 and AI2 (XAI:4 … XAI:7). Current/voltage input mode selection by jumpers	Current input: -20…20 mA, R_{in} = 100 ohm Voltage input: -10…10 V, R_{in} > 200 kohm Differential inputs, common mode range ±30 V Sampling interval per channel: 0.25 ms Hardware filtering: 0.25 ms Resolution: 11 bit + sign bit Inaccuracy: 1% of full scale range
Analog outputs AO1 and AO2 (XAO)	0…20 mA, R_{load} < 500 ohm Frequency range: 0…300 Hz Resolution: 11 bit + sign bit Inaccuracy: 2% of full scale range
XD2D connector	Physical layer: RS-485 Transmission rate: 8 Mbit/s Cable type: Shielded twisted-pair cable with a twisted pair for data and a wire or another pair for signal ground (nominal impedance 100 … 165 ohm, for example Belden 9842) Maximum length of link: 50 m (164 ft) Termination by jumper
RS-485 connection (X485)	Physical layer: RS-485 Cable type: Shielded twisted-pair cable with a twisted pair for data and a wire or another pair for signal ground (nominal impedance 100 … 165 ohm, for example Belden 9842) Maximum length of link: 50 m (164 ft)
Safe torque off connection (XSTO)	Input voltage range: -3…30 V DC Logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 17 V. **Note:** Both circuits must be closed to enable start and operation (IN1 and IN2 must be connected to OUT). This applies to all control units (including drive, inverter, supply, brake, DC/DC converter etc. control units), but SIL/PL classified Safe torque off functionality is only achieved through the XSTO connector of the drive/inverter control unit. Current consumption: 30 mA (frames R1…R7) or 12 mA (frames R8, R9 and R9e) (continuous) per STO channel EMC (immunity) according to IEC 61326-3-1 and IEC 61800-5-2

Control panel connection (X13)	Connector: RJ-45 Cable length < 100 m (328 ft)
The terminals of the control unit fulfill the Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV) requirements. The PELV requirements of a relay output are not fulfilled if a voltage higher than 48 V is connected to the relay output.	

ZCU ground isolation diagram



* Ground selector (J6) settings



All digital inputs share a common ground (DICOM connected to DIOGND). This is the default setting.

Ground of digital inputs DI1…DI5 and DIIL (DICOM) is isolated from DIO signal ground (DIOGND).

Isolation voltage 50 V.

9

Installation checklist

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains a checklist for the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive.

Checklist

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

WARNING Do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.

Examine the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive before start-up. Do the tasks in the checklist together with a second person.

Make sure that …	☑
The ambient operating conditions meet the drive ambient conditions specification and enclosure rating (IP code).	☐
The supply voltage matches the nominal input voltage of the drive. Refer to the type designation label.	☐

Make sure that …	☑
The insulation resistance of the input power cable, motor cable, and motor is measured according to local regulations and the manuals of the drive.	☐
The drive is attached securely on an even, vertical, and non-flammable wall.	☐
The cooling air can flow freely in and out of the drive.	☐
If the drive is connected to a network other than a symmetrically grounded TN-S system: You have done all the required modifications (for example, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or ground-to-phase varistor). Refer to the electrical installation instructions.	☐
Appropriate AC fuses and main disconnecting device are installed.	☐
There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor(s) between the drive and the switchboard, the conductor is connected to correct terminal, and the terminal is tightened to the correct torque. Grounding is measured according to the regulations.	☐
The input power cable is connected to the correct terminals, the phase order is correct, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	☐
There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor between the motor and the drive. The conductor is connected to the correct terminal, and the terminal is tightened to the correct torque. Grounding has also been measured according to the regulations.	☐
The motor cable is connected to the correct terminals, the phase order is correct, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	☐
The motor cable is routed away from other cables.	☐
No power factor compensation capacitors are connected to the motor cable.	☐
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor between the brake resistor and the drive, and the conductor is connected to the correct terminal, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque. Grounding has also been measured according to the regulations.	☐
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: The brake resistor cable is connected to the correct terminals, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	☐
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: The brake resistor cable is routed away from other cables.	☐

Make sure that ...	☑
The control cables are connected to the correct terminals, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	☐
If a drive bypass connection will be used: The direct-on-line contactor of the motor and the drive output contactor are either mechanically and/or electrically interlocked, that is, they cannot be closed at the same time. A thermal overload device must be used for protection when bypassing the drive. Refer to local codes and regulations.	☐
There are no tools, foreign objects, or dust from drilling inside the drive.	☐
The area in front of the drive is clean: the drive cooling fan cannot draw any dust or dirt inside.	☐
Drive covers and the terminal box cover of the motor are in place.	☐
The motor and the driven equipment are ready for power-up.	☐

10

Start-up

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the start-up procedure of the drive.

Reforming the capacitors

The capacitors must be reformed if the drive has not been powered (either in storage or unused) for a year or more. The manufacturing date is on the type designation label. For information on reforming the capacitors, refer to Capacitor reforming instructions (3BFE64059629 [English]).

Start-up procedure

1. Run setup of the drive control program according to the start-up instructions given in quick start-up guide for ACS880 primary control program or in the firmware manual.
   - For drives with resistor braking (option +D150): see also section Start-up in chapter Resistor braking.
   - For drives with ABB sine filter, check that parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is set to ABB sine filter. For other sine filters, see Sine filter hardware manual (3AXD50000016814 [English]).
   - For drives with ABB motors in explosive atmospheres, see also ACS880 drives with ABB motors in explosive atmospheres (3AXD50000019585 [English]).
2. Validate the Safe torque off function according to the instructions given in chapter The Safe torque off function.

3. Validate the safety functions (options +Q923 or +Q973) as described in FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015612 [English]) or FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015614 [English]).

11

Fault tracing

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the fault tracing possibilities of the drive.

LEDs

Where	LED	Color	When the LED is lit
Control panel mounting platform	POWER	Green	Control unit is powered and +15 V is supplied to the control panel.
	FAULT	Red	Drive in fault state.

Warning and fault messages

See the firmware manual for the descriptions, causes and remedies of the drive control program warning and fault messages.

12

Maintenance

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains maintenance instructions.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

Maintenance intervals

The tables show the maintenance tasks that can be done by the end user. For the ABB Service offering, contact your local ABB Service representative (new.abb.com/contact-centers).

Description of symbols

Action	Description
I	Inspection (visual inspection and maintenance action if needed)
P	Performance of on/off-site work (commissioning, tests, measurements or other work)
R	Replacement

Recommended maintenance intervals after start-up

Annual action	Target
P	Quality of supply voltage
I	Spare parts
P	DC circuit capacitor reforming, spare modules and spare capacitors
I	Tightness of terminals
I	Dustiness, corrosion or temperature
I	Heat sink cleaning

Component	Years from start-up							
	3	6	9	12	15	18	20	21
Cooling								
Main cooling fan			R			R		
Auxiliary cooling fan for circuit boards (frames R1 to R9)			R			R		
Auxiliary cooling fan IP55 (frames R8 and R9)			R			R		
Internal cooling fan, IP21 (frame R9e)			R			R		
Aging								
Battery for ZCU control unit		R		R		R		
Battery for control panel			R			R		
Functional safety								
Safety function test	I See the maintenance information of the safety function							
Safety component expiry (Mission time, T_M)	20 years							
								4FPS10000239703

Note:

- The maintenance and component replacement intervals are valid when the equipment operates within the specified ratings and ambient conditions. ABB recommends annual drive inspections.
- Long-term operation near the specified maximum ratings or ambient conditions may require shorter maintenance intervals for certain components. Contact your local ABB Service representative for additional maintenance recommendations.

Cleaning the exterior

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Clean the exterior. Use:
   - vacuum cleaner with an antistatic hose and nozzle
   - soft brush
   - dry or damp (not wet) cleaning cloth. Moisten with clean water, or mild detergent (pH 5…9 for metal, pH 5…7 for plastic).

   NOTICE Do not use too much water, a hose, or steam to clean the drive. Moisture can go into the drive and cause damage.

Cleaning the heatsink

The heatsink of the power module (drive, supply, inverter, converter, and so on) collects dust from the cooling air. This can cause overtemperature warnings and faults. When it is necessary, clean the heatsink as follows.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

CAUTION Use the required personal protective equipment. Wear protective gloves and long sleeves. Some parts have sharp edges.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the module cooling fan(s). Refer to the separate instructions.
3. Protect the adjacent equipment from dust.
4. Blow dry, clean, and oil-free compressed air from the bottom to the top, and simultaneously use a vacuum cleaner at the air outlet to collect the dust.

   NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap and a vacuum cleaner with an antistatic hose and nozzle. A normal vacuum cleaner creates static discharges which can cause damage to circuit boards.

5. Install the cooling fan.

Fans

The lifespan of the cooling fans of the drive depend on the running time of the fan, ambient temperature and dust concentration. See the firmware manual for the actual signal which indicates the running time of the cooling fan.

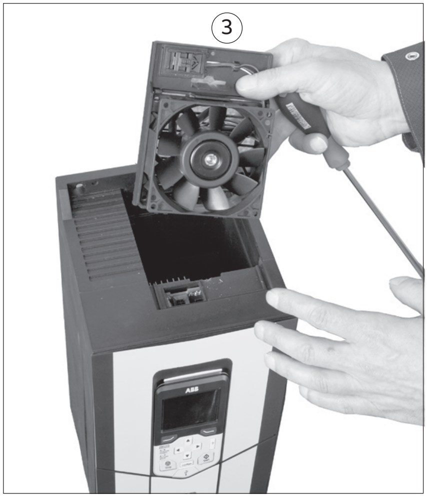
Reset the running time signal after a fan replacement. Also, reset the maintenance counter, if used.

Replacement fans are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R1…R3

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

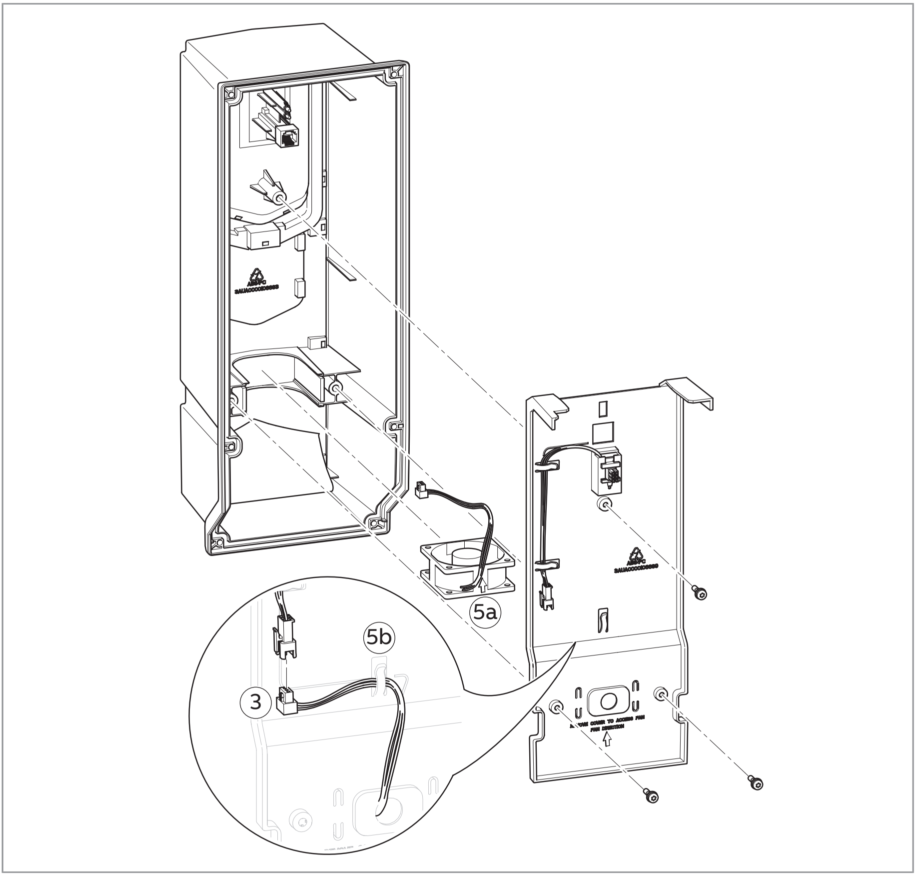
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. To release the retaining clip, push with a flat screwdriver and turn to the right.
3. Lift the fan assembly up.
4. Install the new fan assembly in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
5. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.



Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of IP55 frames R1…R3

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. To remove the front cover, undo the mounting screws at the sides.
3. Unplug the fan power supply wires. This fan is installed to X210:FAN2 in control unit.
4. Lift the fan off.
5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow (5a) on the fan points upwards. Bundle the wires under the clip (5b).


5a
5b
3

Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4 and R5

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

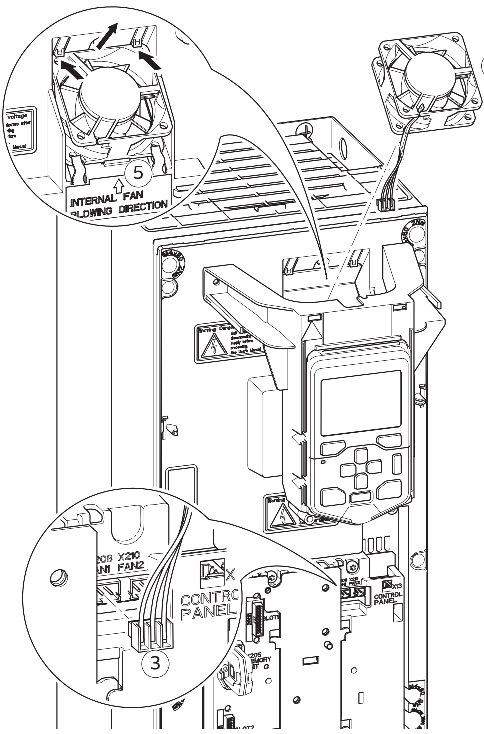
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Lift the fan mounting plate up from the front edge.
3. Unplug the power supply wires.
4. Lift the fan assembly off.
5. Install the new fan assembly in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R4 and R5

This fan is included in R5 types ACS880-01-xxxx-7 and with option +B056+C135.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

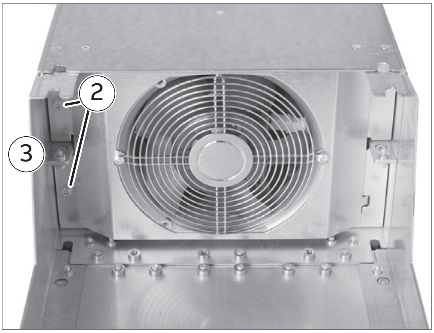
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the front cover.
3. Unplug the fan power supply wires.
4. Lift the fan up.
5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow in the fan points to the direction marked on the drive frame.

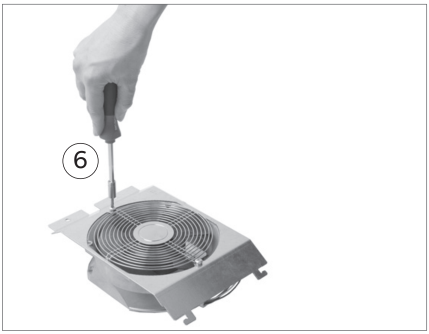


Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R6…R8

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Undo the mounting screws of the fan mounting plate (view from bottom below).
3. Pull the fan mounting plate down from the side edge.
4. Unplug the power supply wires.
5. Lift the fan mounting plate off.
6. Remove the fan from the mounting plate.
7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
8. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

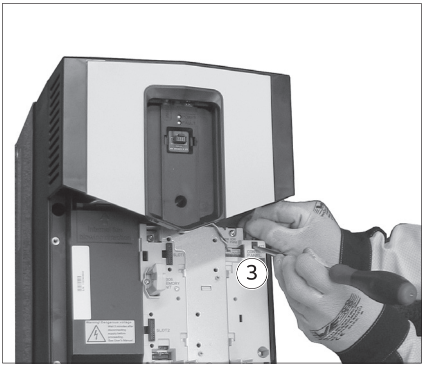


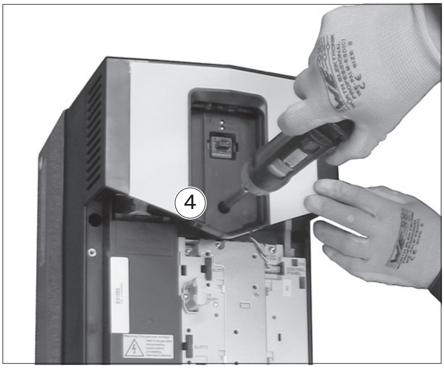


Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R6…R9 (IP21, UL Type 1)

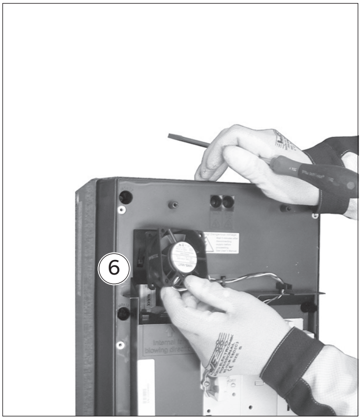
WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the lower front cover.
3. Unplug the control panel power supply wires from the control unit terminal X13 and the auxiliary cooling fan power supply wires from the terminal X208:FAN1.
4. Remove the upper front cover.
5. Release the retaining clips.
6. Lift the fan up.
7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.


3


4


5


6

Replacing the second auxiliary cooling fan of frame R9 (IP55, UL Type 12)

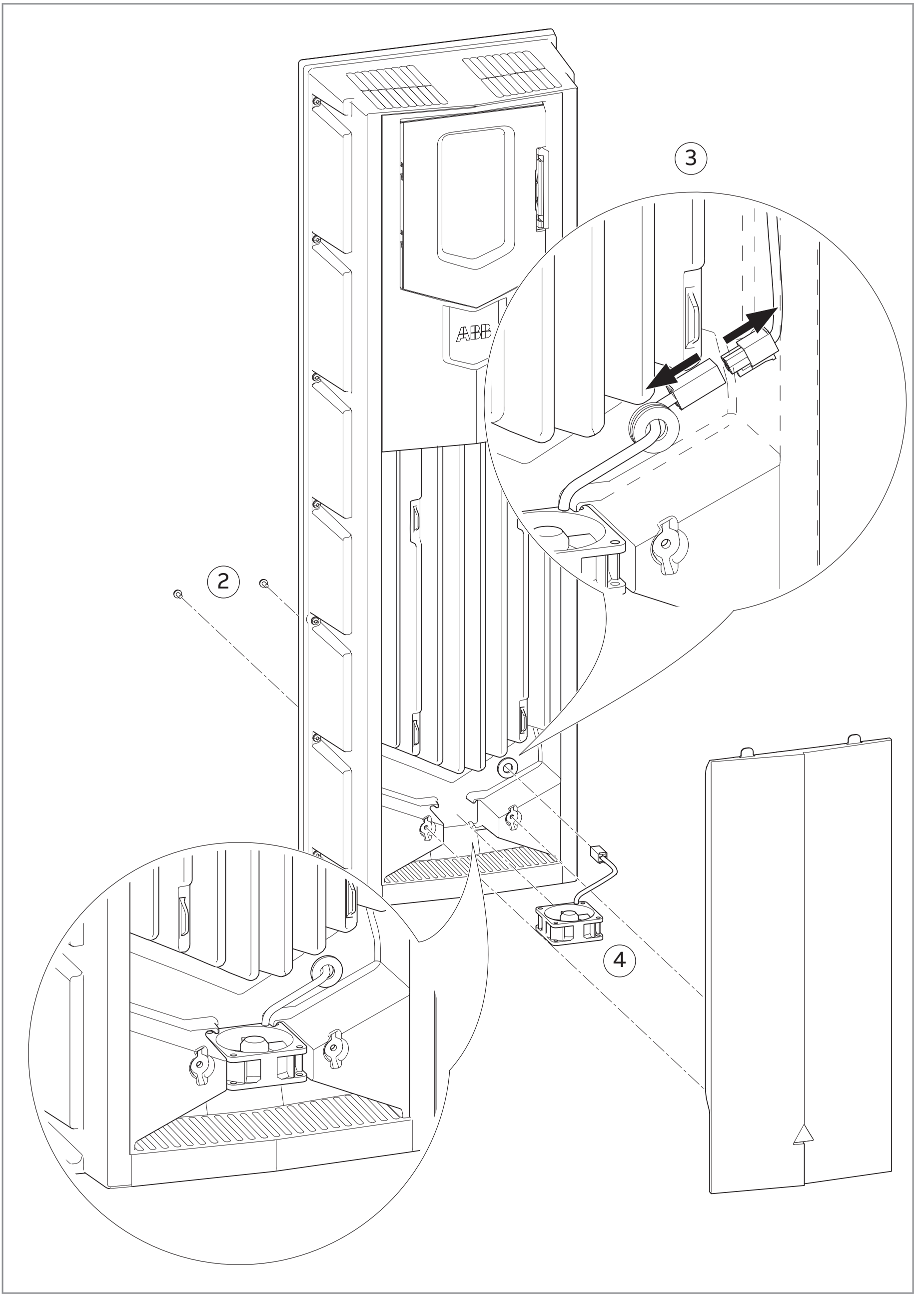
WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the IP55 front cover. Disconnect the power supply wire of the auxiliary cooling fan in the cover (see section Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames R8 and R9 (page 218)).
3. Unplug the fan power supply wires.
4. Release the retaining clips.
5. Lift the the fan off.
6. Unplug the power supply wire from the branching plug.
7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
8. Replace the front cover.
9. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames R8 and R9

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

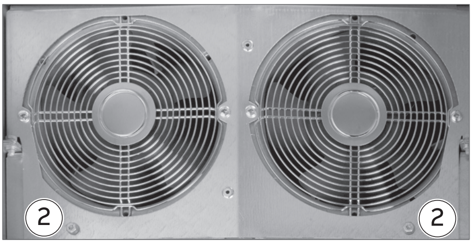
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the lower front cover from the cover.
3. Disconnect the fan power supply wires. This fan is installed to X210:FAN2 in control unit.
4. Remove the fan.
5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

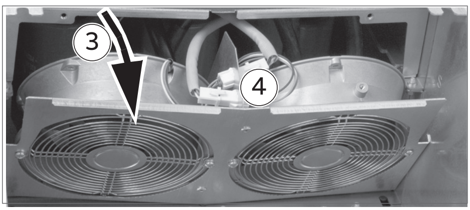

3
ABB
2
4

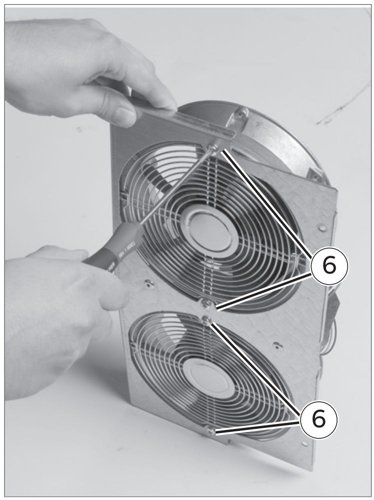
Replacing the main cooling fans of frame R9

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Undo the two mounting screws of the fan mounting plate (view from drive bottom below).
3. Turn the mounting plate downwards.
4. Disconnect the fan power supply wires.
5. Remove the fan mounting plate.
6. Remove the fans by undoing the mounting screws.
7. Install the new fans in reverse order. Make sure that the fans blows upwards.
8. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.







Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4…R9 with option +P968

With option +P968, the connector of the main cooling fan is inside the module on the circuit board.

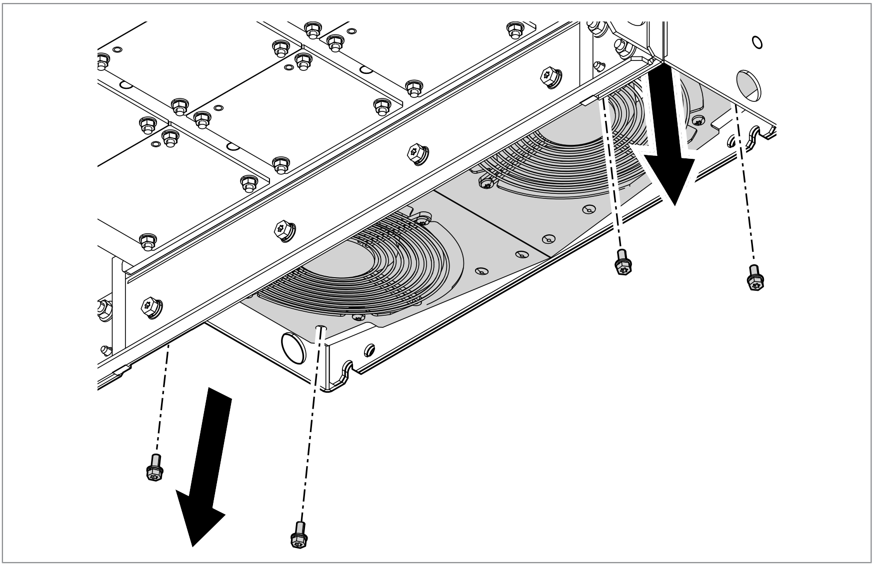
To replace the main cooling fan, contact ABB service.

Replacing the main cooling fans of frame R9e

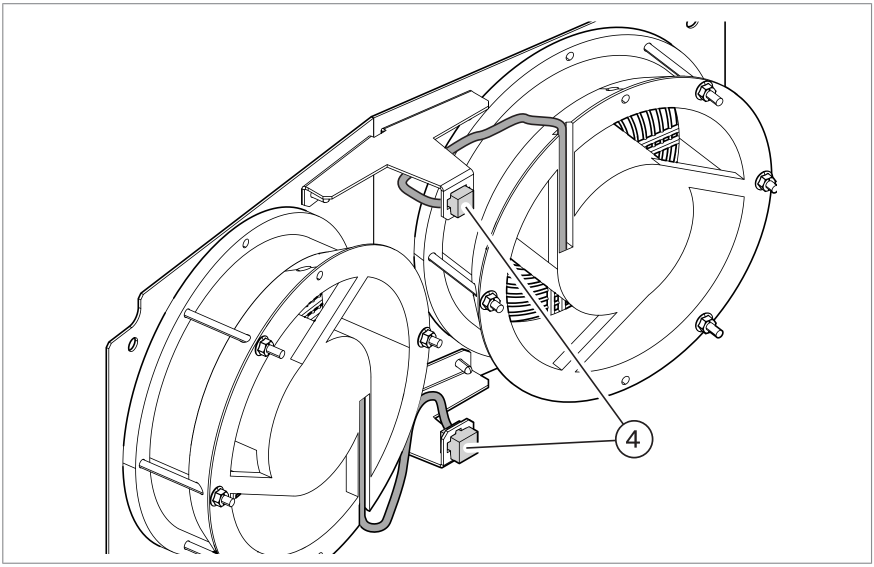
WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

To remove the main cooling fans:

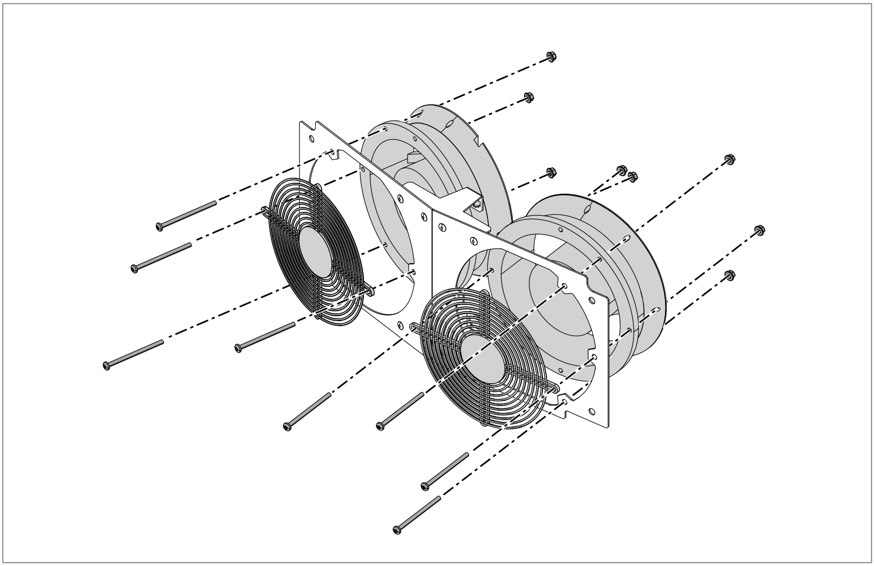
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the 4 M5×12 (T20) screws from the cooling fan assembly. Do not let the cooling fan assembly fall.
3. Carefully remove cooling fan assembly from the drive frame to disconnect the fan power connectors.



4. For each cooling fan, remove the fan power connector from the cooling fan holder.



5. For each cooling fan, remove the 4 M4×65 screws and the M4 nuts.
6. Remove the finger guards from the cooling fan holder.
7. Remove each cooling fan from the cooling fan holder.



To install the main cooling fans:

1. Install the new main cooling fans in the cooling fan holder. Make sure that the direction of the airflow is correct (air flows in from the bottom of the frame) and that the fan power cables can reach their brackets in the cooling fan holder.
2. Put the finger guards into position.
3. For each cooling fan, install and tighten the 4 M4×65 screws and nuts to 2 N·m.
4. For each cooling fan, install the fan power connector into its bracket on the cooling fan holder.
5. Carefully install the cooling fan assembly into the drive frame.
6. Install and tighten the 4 M5×12 (T20) screws to 3 N·m.

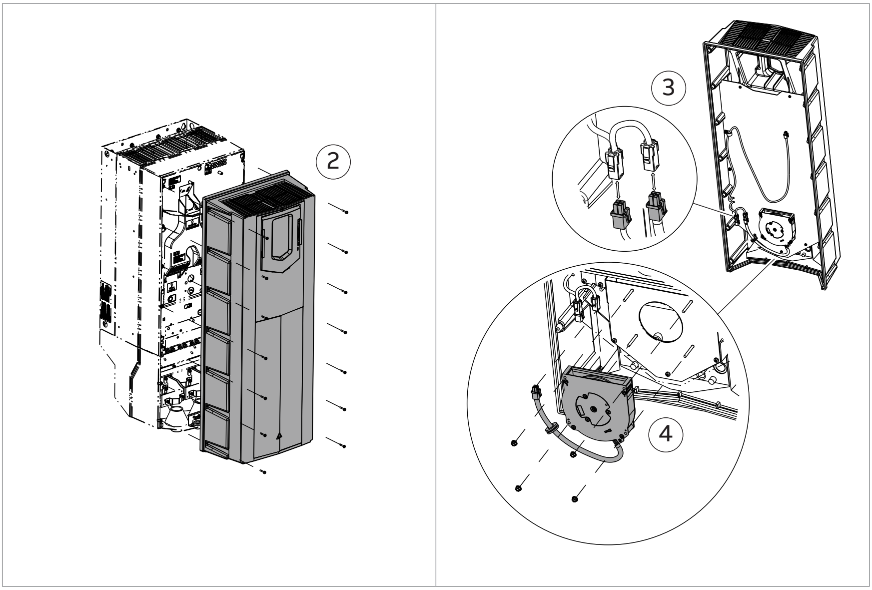
After you replace the main cooling fans, reset the fan service counter. Refer to the firmware manual.

Replacing the auxiliary cooling fans in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frame R9 (drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5)

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

To replace the fan at the back side of the cover:

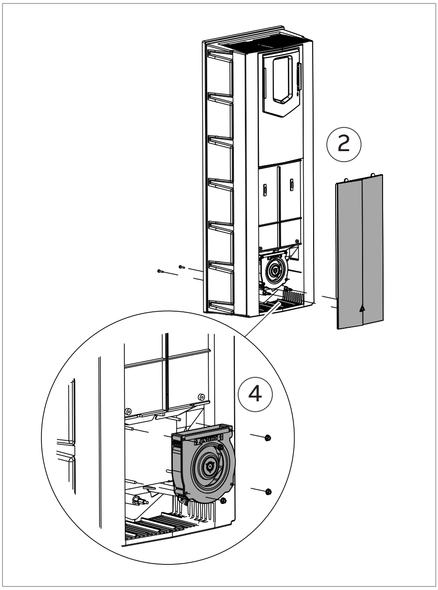
1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the front cover.
3. Disconnect the fan power supply wire. There are two wires, one for the fan at the back side of the cover and one for the fan at the front side of the cover.
4. Remove the fan.
5. Install the new fan in reverse order.
   - Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
   - Make sure that you connect the new fan to the correct connector.



6. Reset the fan service counter (if used) in group 5. Refer to the firmware manual.

To replace the fan at the front side of the cover:

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the lower front cover from the cover.
3. Disconnect the fan power supply wire. Refer to step three in the previous instruction.
4. Remove the fan.
5. Install the new fan in reverse order.
   - Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
   - Make sure that you connect the new fan to the correct connector.

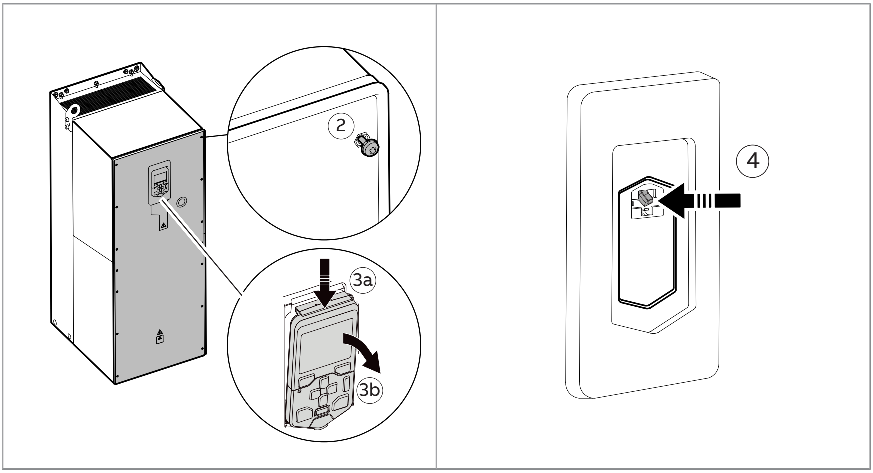


6. Reset the fan service counter (if used) in group 5. Refer to the firmware manual.

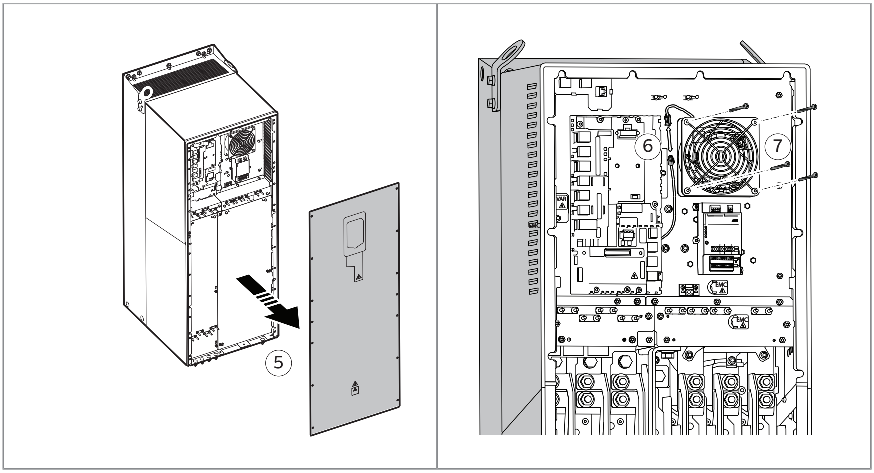
Replacing the internal cooling fan, IP21 (UL Type 1) frame R9e

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Loosen the captive screws (14 pieces) with a T20 Torx screwdriver.
3. Remove the control panel. Use the control panel slot to lift the front cover.
4. Push the control panel cable through the control panel slot to remove it from the front cover.



5. Remove the front cover.
6. Disconnect the fan power supply wire.
7. Remove the fan screws (4 pcs) and pull off the fan.



8. Install the new fan in reverse order, tightening torque of the fan screws 0.5 Nm.

   Note: Make sure that the arrow on the fan points away from you.

Replacing the drive (IP21, UL Type 1, frames R1…R9)

This section gives instructions for replacing the drive module without the cable entry box. This allows you to leave the cables installed (except from disconnecting the conductors).

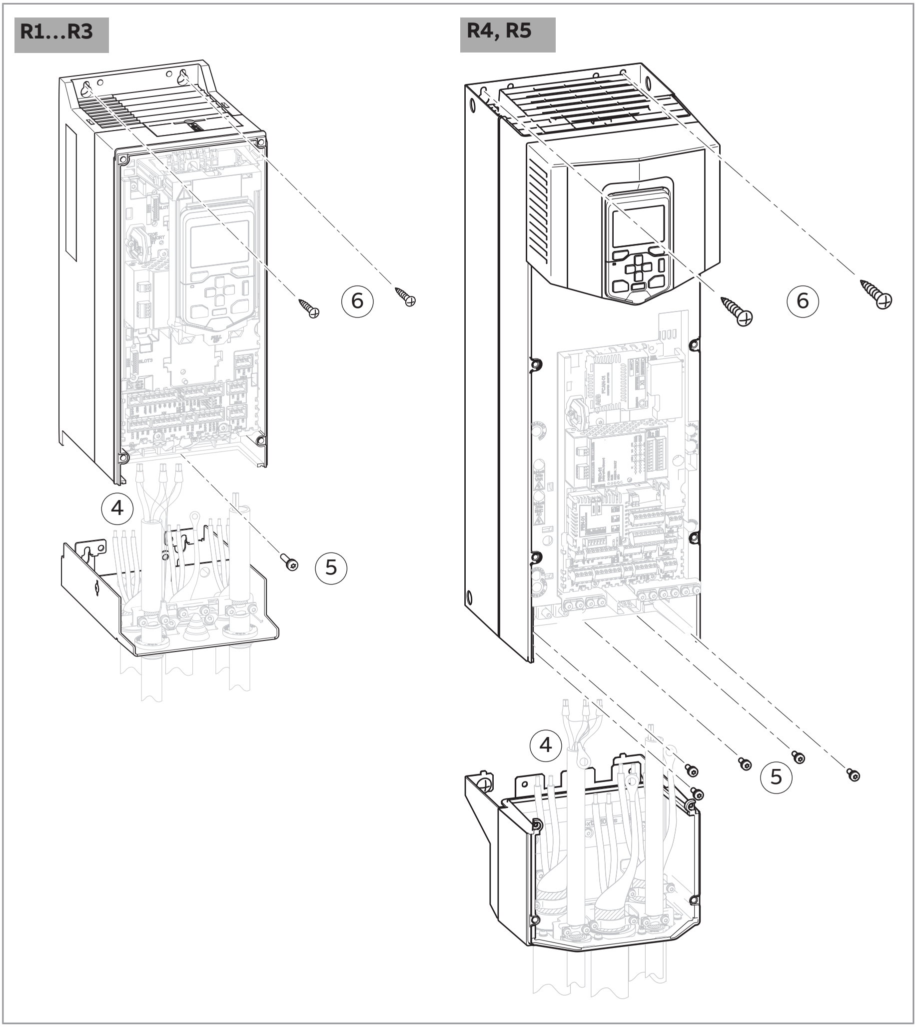
Note: IP55 (UL Type 12) drives: It is not allowed to remove the cable entry box.

⚠WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

---

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Remove the front covers.
3. For frames R6…R9: Remove the side plates of the cable entry box by loosening the mounting screws.
4. Disconnect the power and control cables.
5. Undo the screw(s) that fasten the drive module to the cable entry box.
6. Undo the two screws or bolts that attach the drive module to the wall from top.

7. Undo the two screws or bolts which attach the drive module and cable entry box to the wall. Leave the lower wall mounting screws of the cable box in place.
8. Lift the drive off.
9. Install the new drive module in reverse order.



Capacitors

The intermediate DC circuit of the drive contains several electrolytic capacitors. The operating time, load, and surrounding air temperature have an effect on the operating life of these capacitors. A lower ambient temperature can increase the operating life of capacitors.

Capacitor failure can cause damage to the unit, an input cable fuse failure, or a fault trip. If you think that any capacitors in the drive have failed, contact ABB.

Reforming the capacitors

Reform the capacitors if the drive was not powered for a year or more (is in storage or is unused). Read the manufacturing date from the type designation label. For the instructions, refer to Capacitor reforming instructions (3BFE64059629 [English]).

Control panel

Refer to ACS-AP-I, -S, -W and ACH-AP-H, -W Assistant control panels user's manual (3AUA0000085685 [English]).

Control unit

For maintenance information of the UCU-20 control unit (option +V998), refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

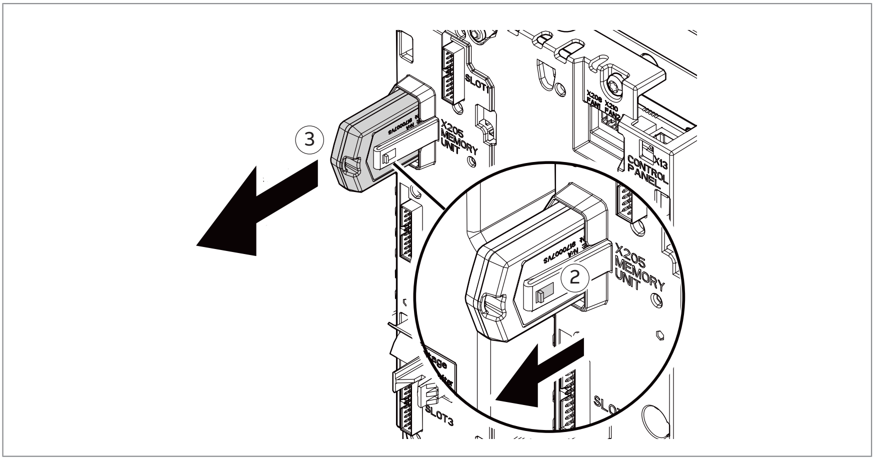
Replacing the memory unit of ZCU-12

After replacing a control unit, you can retain the existing parameter settings by transferring the memory unit from the defective control unit to the new control unit. After power-up, the drive will scan the memory unit. This can take several minutes.

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

WARNING Do not remove or install the memory unit when the control unit is energized. There can be a risk of electric shock from relay outputs or adjacent equipment. Also, damage to the control unit or memory unit can occur.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Pull the clip at the side of the memory up.



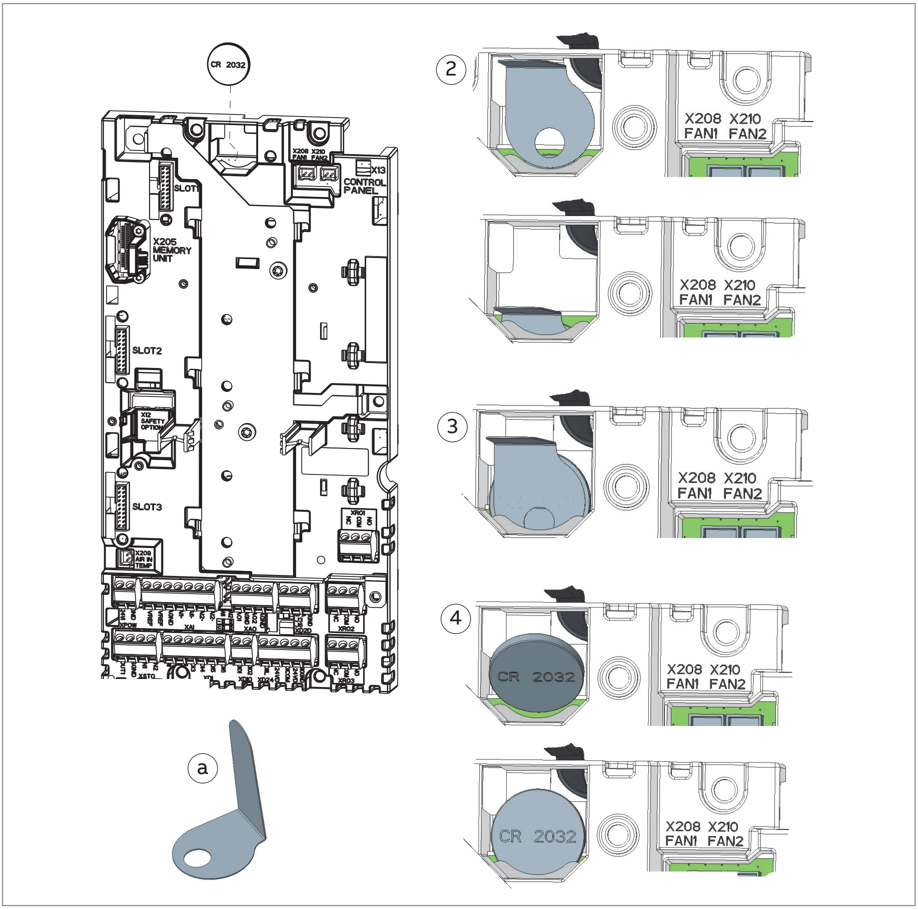
3. Take the unit off.
4. Install the unit in reverse order.

Replacing the ZCU-12 control unit battery

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

You can change the control unit battery with a battery ejector (a in the drawing below) or, for example, with a flat screwdriver. You can order a battery replacement kit that contains a battery ejector and type CR2032 battery from ABB service.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Move the battery ejector into the battery slot on the battery.
3. Carefully pull the battery out of the battery holder.
4. Carefully put a new CR2032 battery into the battery holder.



Replacing safety functions modules (FSO-12, option +Q973 and FSO-21, option +Q972)

Do not repair safety functions modules. Replace a faulty module with a new one as described in section Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit (page 154).

Functional safety components

The mission time of functional safety components is 20 years, which equals the time during which failure rates of electronic components remain constant. This applies to the components of the standard Safe torque off circuit as well as any modules, relays, and other components that are part of functional safety circuits.

The expiry of mission time terminates the certification and SIL/PL classification of the safety function. To certify the components, these options exist:

- Renew the whole drive and all optional functional safety modules and components.
- Renew the components in the safety function circuit. In practice, this is economical only with large drives that have replaceable circuit boards and other components such as relays.

Note that some of the components may have been renewed earlier, which restarts their mission time. The remaining mission time of the whole circuit is, however, determined by its oldest component.

For more information, contact ABB.

13

Technical data

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains the technical specifications of the drive including the ratings, sizes and technical requirements, provisions for fulfilling the requirements for CE, UL and other approval marks.

Marine type-approved drives (option +C132)

Refer to ACS880-01…, ACS880-04…, ACS880-11…, ACS880-31…, ACS880-14… and ACS880-34… +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]) for the ratings, marine-specific data and reference to valid marine type approvals.

Drives for SynRM motors

Refer to ACS880-01 drives for SynRM motors supplement (3AXD50000029482 [English]) for the ratings, fuses and other technical data.

Electrical ratings

The nominal ratings for the drives with 50 Hz and 60 Hz supply are given below. The symbols are described below the tables. ABB recommends the DriveSize dimensioning tool for selecting the drive, motor and gear combination.

IEC RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Nominal use				Light-duty use		Heavy-duty use	
		I_1	I_{max}	I_2	P_n	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}
		A	A	A	kW	kVA	A	kW	A	kW
U_n = 230 V										
04A6-2	R1	4.6	6.3	4.6	0.75	1.8	4.4	0.75	3.7	0.55
06A6-2	R1	6.6	7.8	6.6	1.1	2.6	6.3	1.1	4.6	0.75
07A5-2	R1	7.5	11.2	7.5	1.5	3.0	7.1	1.5	6.6	1.1
10A6-2	R1	10.6	12.8	10.6	2.2	4.2	10.1	2.2	7.5	1.5
16A8-2	R2	16.8	18.0	16.8	4.0	7	16.0	4.0	10.6	2.2
24A3-2	R2	24.3	28.6	24.3	5.5	10	23.1	5.5	16.8	4.0
031A-2	R3	31.0	41	31	7.5	12	29.3	7.5	24.3	5.5
046A-2	R4	46	64	46	11	18	44	11	38	7.5
061A-2	R4	61	76	61	15	24	58	15	45	11.0
075A-2	R5	75	104	75	18.5	30	71	18.5	61	15
087A-2	R5	87	122	87	22	35	83	22	72	18.5
115A-2	R6	115	148	115	30	46	109	30	87	22
145A-2	R6	145	178	145	37	58	138	37	105	30
170A-2	R7	170	247	170	45	68	162	45	145	37
206A-2	R7	206	287	206	55	82	196	55	169	45
274A-2	R8	274	362	274	75	109	260	75	213	55
U_n = 400 V										
02A4-3	R1	2.4	3.1	2.4	0.75	1.7	2.3	0.75	1.8	0.55
03A3-3	R1	3.3	4.1	3.3	1.1	2.3	3.1	1.1	2.4	0.75
04A0-3	R1	4.0	5.6	4.0	1.5	2.8	3.8	1.5	3.3	1.1
05A6-3	R1	5.6	6.8	5.6	2.2	3.9	5.3	2.2	4.0	1.5
07A2-3	R1	8.0	9.5	8.0	3.0	5.5	7.6	3.0	5.6	2.2

IEC RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	**Frame size**	**Input rating**	**Output ratings**							
			Nominal use				**Light-duty use**		**Heavy-duty use**	
		I_1	I_{max}	I_2	P_n	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}
		A	A	A	kW	kVA	A	kW	A	kW
09A4-3	R1	10.0	12.2	10.0	4.0	6.9	9.5	4.0	8.0	3.0
12A6-3	R1	12.9	16.0	12.9	5.5	8.9	12.0	5.5	10.0	4.0
017A-3	R2	17	21	17	7.5	12	16	7.5	12.6	5.5
025A-3	R2	25	29	25	11	17	24	11	17	7.5
032A-3	R3	32	42	32	15	22	30	15	25	11
038A-3	R3	38	54	38	18.5	26	36	18.5	32	15.0
045A-3	R4	45	64	45	22	31	43	22	38	18.5
061A-3	R4	61	76	61	30	42	58	30	45	22
072A-3	R5	72	104	72	37	50	68	37	61	30
087A-3	R5	87	122	87	45	60	83	45	72	37
105A-3	R6	105	148	105	55	73	100	55	87	45
145A-3	R6	145	178	145	75	100	138	75	105	55
169A-3	R7	169	247	169	90	117	161	90	145	75
206A-3	R7	206	287	206	110	143	196	110	169	90
246A-3	R8	246	350	246	132	170	234	132	206	110
293A-3	R8	293	418	293	160	203	278	160	246*	132
363A-3	R9	363	498	363	200	251	345	200	293	160
430A-3	R9	430	545	430	250	298	400	200	363**	200
490A-3 1)	R9	450	680	490	250	339	480**	250	385***	200
595A-3	R9e	529	858	595	315	367	590	315	505	250
670A-3	R9e	596	954	670	355	413	660	355	595	315
U_n = 400 V										
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	2.1	0.75	1.8	2.0	0.55	1.7	0.55
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	3.0	1.1	2.6	2.8	1.1	2.1	0.75
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	3.4	1.1	2.9	3.2	1.1	3.0	1.1
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.8	1.5	4.2	4.6	1.5	3.4	1.1

IEC RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	**Frame size**	**Input rating**	**Output ratings**							
			Nominal use				**Light-duty use**		**Heavy-duty use**	
		I_1	I_{max}	I_2	P_n	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}
		A	**A**	**A**	**kW**	**kVA**	**A**	**kW**	**A**	**kW**
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	5.2	2.2	4.5	5.0	2.2	4.8	1.5
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	7.6	3.0	6.6	7.2	3.0	5.2	2.2
11A0-5	R1	11.0	16.0	11.0	4.0	9.5	10.4	4.0	7.6	3.0
014A-5	R2	14	21	14	5.5	12	13	5.5	11	4.0
021A-5	R2	21	29	21	7.5	18	19	7.5	14	5.5
027A-5	R3	27	42	27	11.0	23	26	11.0	21	7.5
034A-5	R3	34	54	34	15.0	29	32	15.0	27	11
040A-5	R4	40	64	40	18.5	35	38	18.5	34	15
052A-5	R4	52	76	52	22	45	49	22	40	18.5
065A-5	R5	65	104	65	30	56	62	30	52	22
077A-5	R5	77	122	77	37	67	73	37	65	30
096A-5	R6	96	148	96	45	83	91	45	77	37
124A-5	R6	124	178	124	55	107	118	55	96	45
156A-5	R7	156	247	156	75	135	148	75	124	55
180A-5	R7	180	287	180	90	156	171	90	156	75
240A-5	R8	240	350	240	110	208	228	110	180	90
260A-5	R8	260	418	260	132	225	247	132	240*	110
361A-5	R9	361	542	361	200	313	343	160	302	160
414A-5	R9	414	542	414	250	359	393	200	361**	200
477A-5 1)	R9	450	600	477	250	412	454**	250	385***	200
585A-5	R9e	423	858	585	315	366	575	315	505	250
635A-5	R9e	477	954	635	355	413	625	355	585	315
U_n = 500 V										
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	2.1	0.75	1.8	2.0	0.75	1.7	0.55
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	3.0	1.1	2.6	2.8	1.1	2.1	0.75
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	3.4	1.5	2.9	3.2	1.5	3.0	1.1

IEC RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Nominal use				Light-duty use		Heavy-duty use	
		I_1	I_{max}	I_2	P_n	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}
		A	A	A	kW	kVA	A	kW	A	kW
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.8	2.2	4.2	4.6	2.2	3.4	1.5
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	5.2	3.0	4.5	4.9	3.0	4.8	2.2
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	7.6	4.0	6.6	7.2	4.0	5.2	3.0
11A0-5	R1	11.0	16.0	11.0	5.5	9.5	10.4	5.5	7.6	4.0
014A-5	R2	14	21	14	7.5	12	13	7.5	11	5.5
021A-5	R2	21	29	21	11	18	19	11	14	7.5
027A-5	R3	27	42	27	15	23	26	15	21	11
034A-5	R3	34	54	34	18.5	29	32	18.5	27	15
040A-5	R4	40	64	40	22	35	38	22	34	19
052A-5	R4	52	76	52	30	45	49	30	40	22
065A-5	R5	65	104	65	37	56	62	37	52	30
077A-5	R5	77	122	77	45	67	73	45	65	37
096A-5	R6	96	148	96	55	83	91	55	77	45
124A-5	R6	124	178	124	75	107	118	75	96	55
156A-5	R7	156	247	156	90	135	148	90	124	75
180A-5	R7	180	287	180	110	156	171	110	156	90
240A-5	R8	240	350	240	132	208	228	132	180	110
260A-5	R8	260	418	260	160	225	247	160	240*	132
361A-5	R9	361	542	361	200	313	343	200	302	200
414A-5	R9	414	542	414	250	359	393	250	361 **	200
477A-5[1)]	R9	450	600	477	250	412	454**	250	385***	200
585A-5	R9e	423	858	585	315	366	575	315	505	250
635A-5	R9e	477	954	635	355	413	625	355	585	315
U_n = 690 V										
07A4-7	R3	7.4	12.2	7.4	5.5	8.8	7.0	5.5	5.6	4
09A9-7	R3	9.9	18	9.9	7.5	11.8	9.4	7.5	7.4	5.5

IEC RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Nominal use				Light-duty use		Heavy-duty use	
		I_1	I_{max}	I_2	P_n	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}
		A	A	A	kW	kVA	A	kW	A	kW
14A3-7	R3	14.3	22	14.3	11	17	13.6	11	9.9	7.5
019A-7	R3	19	29	19	15	23	18	15	14.3	11
023A-7	R3	23	38	23	18.5	27	22	18.5	19	15
027A-7	R3	27	46	27	22	32	26	22	23	18.5
035A-7	R5	35	64	35	30	42	33	30	26	22
042A-7	R5	42	70	42	37	50	40	37	35	30
049A-7	R5	49	71	49	45	59	47	45	42	37
061A-7	R6	61	104	61	55	73	58	55	49	45
084A-7	R6	84	124	84	75	100	80	75	61	55
098A-7	R7	98	168	98	90	117	93	90	84	75
119A-7	R7	119	198	119	110	142	113	110	98	90
142A-7	R8	142	250	142	132	170	135	132	119	110
174A-7	R8	174	274	174	160	208	165	160	142	132
210A-7	R9	210	384	210	200	251	200	200	174	160
271A-7	R9	271	411	271	250	324	257	250	210	200

[1] For high-speed variant (+N7500) availability, contact ABB.

UL (NEC) RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Max. current	App. power	Light-duty use			Heavy-duty use		
		I_1	I_{max}	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}		I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}	
		A	A	kVA	A	kW	hp	A	kW	hp
U_n = 230 V										
04A6-2	R1	4.4	6.3	1.8	4.4	0.75	1.0	3.7	0.55	0.75
06A6-2	R1	6.3	7.8	2.6	6.3	1.1	1.5	4.6	0.75	1.0

UL (NEC) RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Max. current	App. power	Light-duty use			Heavy-duty use		
		I_1	I_{max}	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}		I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}	
		A	A	kVA	A	kW	hp	A	kW	hp
07A5-2	R1	7.1	11.2	3.0	7.1	1.5	2.0	6.6	1.1	1.5
10A6-2	R1	10.1	12.8	4.2	10.1	2.2	3.0	7.5	1.5	2.0
16A8-2	R2	16.0	18.0	7	16.0	4.0	5.0	10.6	2.2	3.0
24A3-2	R2	23.1	28.6	10	23.1	5.5	7.5	16.8	4.0	5.0
031A-2	R3	29.3	41	12	29.3	7.5	10	24.3	5.5	7.5
046A-2	R4	44	64	18	44	11	15	38	7.5	10
061A-2	R4	58	76	24	58	15	20	45	11.0	15
075A-2	R5	71	104	30	71	18.5	25	61	15	20
087A-2	R5	83	122	35	83	22	30	72	18.5	25
115A-2	R6	109	148	46	109	30	40	87	22	30
145A-2	R6	138	178	58	138	37	50	105	30	40
170A-2	R7	162	247	68	162	45	60	145	37	50
206A-2	R7	196	287	82	196	55	75	169	45	60
274A-2	R8	260	362	109	260	75	100	213	55	75
U_n = 480 V										
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	1.8	2.1	0.75	1.0	1.7	0.55	0.75
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	2.6	3.0	1.1	1.5	2.1	0.75	1.0
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	2.9	3.4	1.5	2.0	3.0	1.1	1.5
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.2	4.8	2.2	3.0	3.4	1.5	2.0
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	4.5	5.2	3.0	3.0	4.8	1.5	2.0
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	6.6	7.6	4.0	5.0	5.2	2.2	3.0
11A0-5	R1	11	16.0	9.5	11	5.5	7.5	7.6	4.0	5.0
014A-5	R2	14	21	12	14	7.5	10	11	5.5	7.5
021A-5	R2	21	29	18	21	11	15	14	7.5	10
027A-5	R3	27	42	23	27	15	20	21	11	15
034A-5	R3	34	54	29	34	18.5	25	27	15	20.0

UL (NEC) RATINGS										
ACS880-01-...	Frame size	Input rating	Output ratings							
			Max. current	App. power	Light-duty use			Heavy-duty use		
		I_1	I_{max}	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}		I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}	
		A	A	kVA	A	kW	hp	A	kW	hp
040A-5	R4	40	64	35	40	22	30	34	18.5	25
052A-5	R4	52	76	45	52	30	40	40	22	30
065A-5	R5	65	104	56	65	37	50	52	30	40
077A-5	R5	77	122	67	77	45	60	65	37	50
096A-5	R6	96	148	83	96	55	75	77	45	60
124A-5	R6	124	178	107	124	75	100	96	55	75
156A-5	R7	156	247	135	156	90	125	124	75	100
180A-5	R7	180	287	156	180	110	150	156	90	125
240A-5	R8	240	350	208	240	132	200	180	110	150
260A-5	R8	260	418	225	260	132	200	240*	110	150
302A-5	R9	302	498	262	302	200	250	260	132	200
361A-5	R9	361	542	313	361	200	300	302	200	250
414A-5	R9	414	542	359	414*	250	350	361**	200	300
477A-5 1)	R9	450	600	412	454**	250	350	385***	200	300
585A-5	R9e	468	858	366	575	336	450	505	261	350
635A-5	R9e	520	954	413	625	373	500	585	298	400
U_n = 575 V										
07A4-7	R3	7.0	12.2	8.8	7.0	4.0	5.0	5.6	3.0	3.0
09A9-7	R3	9.4	18	11.8	9.4	5.5	7.5	7.4	4.0	5.0
14A3-7	R3	13.6	22	17	13.6	7.5	10	9.9	5.5	7.5
019A-7	R3	18	29	23	18	11	15	14.3	7.5	10
023A-7	R3	22	38	27	22	15	20	19	11	15
027A-7	R3	27	46	32	27	18.5	25	23	15	20
035A-7	R5	41	64	42	41	30	40	32	22	30
042A-7	R5	52	70	50	52	37	50	41	30	40
049A-7	R5	52	71	59	52	37	50	41	30	40

UL (NEC) RATINGS										
ACS880-01-…	**Frame size**	**Input rating**	**Output ratings**							
			Max. cur-rent	**App. power**	**Light-duty use**			**Heavy-duty use**		
		I_1	I_{max}	S_n	I_{Ld}	P_{Ld}		I_{Hd}	P_{Hd}	
		A	**A**	**kVA**	**A**	**kW**	**hp**	**A**	**kW**	**hp**
061A-7	R6	62	104	73	62	45	60	52	37	50
084A-7	R6	77	124	100	77	55	75	62	45	60
098A-7	R7	99	168	117	99	75	100	77	55	75
119A-7	R7	125	198	142	125	90	125	99	75	100
142A-7	R8	144	250	170	144	110	150	125	90	125
174A-7 (See Note 4 below)	R8	180	274	208	180	132	200	144	110	150
210A-7	R9	242	384	251	242	160	250	192	132	200
271A-7 (See Note 5 below)	R9	271	411	324	271	200	250	242*	160	250

1) For high-speed variant (+N7500) availability, contact ABB.

Definitions

U_n	Nominal voltage of the drive
I_1	Nominal rms input current
I_2	Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)
P_n	Typical motor power in no-overload use
S_n	Apparent power
I_{Ld}	Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes * I_{Ld} is 414 A in 30 °C ambient temperature and 393 A in 40 °C ambient temperature. The drive can deliver 414 A continuously with no overload in 40 °C. **Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 50 seconds every 5 minutes (IP55 drives only)
P_{Ld}	Typical motor power in light-overload use
I_{max}	Maximum output current. Available for 10 seconds at start. Then as long as allowed by drive temperature.
I_{Hd}	Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. * Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. ** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. ***Continuous rms output current allowing 40% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. ****Continuous rms output current allowing 45% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
P_{Hd}	Typical motor power in heavy-duty use

Note 1: The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

Note 2: To achieve the rated motor power given in the table, the rated current of the drive must be greater than or equal to the rated motor current.

Note 3: Typical motor power for 480 V UL (NEC) ratings applies to 460 V motors.

Note 4 – ACS880-01-174A-7 amp rating: The drive can deliver 192 A continuously with no overload.

Note 5 – ACS880-01-271A-7 power rating: The power rating is as per NEC Table 42.1. However, the drive can be used for a typical 4-pole motor rated to 300 hp meeting NEMA MG 1 Table 12-11 minimum efficiency standard (EPAct efficiency electrical motors) if motor full load current is not more than 271 A.

UL Listed drive multiple ratings

National Electric Code (NEC 2020) requires that drive input conductors are sized based on the drive nameplate input current rating and the output conductors are sized based on the full load motor current. There are several scenarios where this sizing procedure is not optimal including multi-motor systems, applications where a larger replacement drive is substituted in an emergency breakdown, and cases where a motor is undersized for the drive. In these situations, power distribution components are often oversized to comply with NEC requirements.

ABB has collaborated with Underwriters Laboratories (UL) to create drive multiple ratings from 50% to 100% in 5% increments for the drive. For more information, refer to Multiple ratings for ABB ACS380-04, ACS580-01, ACQ580-01 and ACS880-01 drives manual supplement (3AXD50000916184 [English]).

Deratings

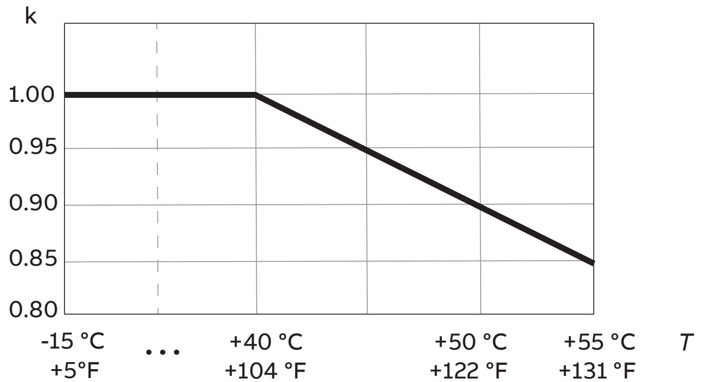
Surrounding air temperature derating

Note: IP55 drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998) have different air temperature limits. Refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

IP21 (UL Type 1) frames R1…R9 and R9e and IP55 (UL Type 12) frames R1…R7, R9 and R9e.

In the temperature range +40…55 °C (+104…131 °F), the rated output current is derated by 1% for every added 1 °C (1.8 °F).

To calculate the output current, multiply the current in the ratings table by the derating factor (k):



IP55 (UL Type 12) frame R8

ACS880-01-…	Derated output current (I_2)					
	35 °C (95 °F)	40 °C (104 °F)	45 °C (113 °F)	50 °C (122 °F)	55 °C (131 °F)	Frame
U_n = 230 V						
274A-2	274	274	260	226	192	R8

ACS880-01-...	Derated output current (I_2)					
	35 °C (95 °F)	**40 °C (104 °F)**	**45 °C (113 °F)**	**50 °C (122 °F)**	**55 °C (131 °F)**	**Frame**
U_n = 400 V						
246A-3	246	246	234	221	209	R8
293A-3	293	293	278	242	209	R8
U_n = 500 V						
240A-5	240	240	228	216	186	R8
260A-5	260	260	247	216	186	R8
U_n = 690 V						
142A-7	142	142	135	128	121	R8
174A-7	174	174	165	144	122	R8

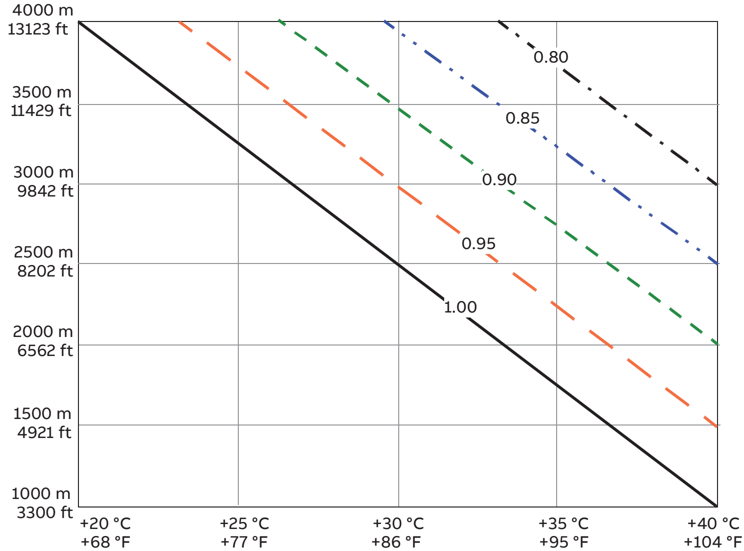
ACS880-01-...	Derated output current (I_{Ld})					
	35 °C (95 °F)	**40 °C (104 °F)**	**45 °C (113 °F)**	**50 °C (122 °F)**	**55 °C (131 °F)**	**Frame**
U_n = 230 V						
274A-2	260	260	247	215	182	R8

ACS880-01-...	Derated output current (I_{Hd})					
	35 °C (95 °F)	**40 °C (104 °F)**	**45 °C (113 °F)**	**50 °C (122 °F)**	**55 °C (131 °F)**	**Frame**
U_n = 230 V						
274A-2	213	213	202	176	149	R8

Altitude derating

At altitudes more than 1000 m (3281 ft) above sea level, the output current derating is 1 percentage point for every added 100 m (328 ft). For example, the derating factor for 1500 m (4921 ft) is 0.95. The maximum permitted installation altitude is given in the technical data.

If the surrounding air temperature is less than +40 °C (104 °F), the derating can be reduced by 1.5 percentage points for every 1 °C (1.8 °F) reduction in temperature. A few altitude derating curves are shown below.



	Derating factor 1.00
	Derating factor 0.95
	Derating factor 0.90
	Derating factor 0.85
	Derating factor 0.80

For a more accurate derating, use the DriveSize PC tool.

Deratings for special settings in the drive control program

Enabling special settings in the drive control program can require output current derating.

Ex motor, sine filter, low noise

Deratings are needed in these cases:

- drive is used with an ABB motor for explosive atmospheres (Ex) and "EX motor" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled
- sine filter given in the selection table in chapter Filters is used and "ABB Sine filter" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled
- "Low noise optimization" is selected in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode.

Note: If Ex motors are used together with sine filters, "EX motor" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is disabled and "ABB Sine filter" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled. Obey the instructions of the motor manufacturer.

With other than recommended sine filters and non-ABB Ex motors, contact ABB.

ACS880-01-...	Setting of parameter 95.15: Ex motor enabled				Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
	Drive output ratings				Drive output ratings			
	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	kW	A	A	A	kW	A	A
U_n = 230 V								
04A6-2	4.6	0.75	4.4	3.7	4.3	0.55	4.1	3.5
06A6-2	6.6	1.1	6.3	4.6	6.2	0.8	5.9	4.3
07A5-2	7.5	1.5	7.1	6.6	7.4	1.5	7.0	6.2
10A6-2	10.6	2.2	10.1	7.5	10.0	2.2	9.5	7.4
16A8-2	16.8	4.0	16.0	10.6	15.9	4.0	15.1	10.0
24A3-2	24.3	5.5	23.1	16.8	23.1	5.5	21.9	15.9
031A-2	31	7.5	29.3	24.3	30.5	7.5	29.0	23.1
046A-2	46	11.0	44	38	43.0	11.0	41	31
061A-2	61	15	58	45	58	15	55	41
075A-2	75	19	71	61	65	15	62	55
087A-2	87	22	83	72	77	18.5	73	62
115A-2	106	22	101	87	100	22	95	73
145A-2	134	30	127	105	126	30	120	95
170A-2	161	37	153	134	153	37	145	120
206A-2	195	45	185	161	186	45	177	145
274A-2	251	55	238	195	233	55	221	169
U_n = 400 V								
02A4-3	2.4	0.75	2.3	1.80	2.3	0.75	2.2	1.7
03A3-3	3.3	1.1	3.1	2.4	3.1	1.1	2.9	2.3
04A0-3	4.0	1.5	3.8	3.3	3.8	1.5	3.6	3.1

ACS880-01-...	Setting of parameter 95.15: Ex motor enabled				Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
	Drive output ratings				Drive output ratings			
	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	kW	A	A	A	kW	A	A
05A6-3	5.6	2.2	5.3	4.0	5.3	2.2	5.0	3.8
07A2-3	8.0	3.0	7.6	5.6	7.2	3.0	6.8	5.3
09A4-3	10.0	4.0	9.5	8.0	9.2	4.0	8.7	7.2
12A6-3	12.9	5.5	12.0	10.0	12.1	5.5	11.5	9.2
017A-3	17	8	16	12.6	16	7.5	15	12
025A-3	25	11	24	17	24	11	23	16
032A-3	32	15	30	25	31	15	29	23
038A-3	38	19	36	32	37	18.5	35	31
045A-3	45	22	43	38	43	22	41	36
061A-3	61	30	58	45	58	30	55	43
072A-3	72	37	68	61	64	30	61	58
087A-3	87	45	83	72	77	37	73	64
105A-3	97	45	92	87	91	45	86	77
145A-3	134	55	127	97	126	55	120	91
169A-3	160	75	152	134	152	75	144	126
206A-3	195	90	185	160	186	90	177	152
246A-3	225	110	214	195	209	110	199	186
293A-3	269	132	256	225*	249	132	237	209*
363A-3	325	160	309	269	296	160	281	249
430A-3	385	200	366	325**	352	160	334	296**
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
595A-3	565	315	561	480	536	315	531	455
670A-3	637	355	627	565	603	355	534	536
U_n = 500 V								
02A1-5	2.1	0.75	2.0	1.7	1.9	0.55	1.8	1.5

ACS880-01-...	Setting of parameter 95.15: Ex motor enabled				Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
	Drive output ratings				Drive output ratings			
	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	kW	A	A	A	kW	A	A
03A0-5	3.0	1.1	2.8	2.1	2.8	0.75	2.7	1.9
03A4-5	3.4	1.5	3.2	3.0	3.1	1.1	2.9	2.8
04A8-5	4.8	2.2	4.6	3.4	4.4	1.5	4.2	3.1
05A2-5	5.2	3.0	5.0	4.8	4.8	2.2	4.6	4.4
07A6-5	7.6	4.0	7.2	5.2	7.0	3.0	6.7	4.8
11A0-5	11.0	5.5	10.4	7.6	10.2	4.0	9.7	7.0
014A-5	14	7.5	13	11	13	5.5	12	10.2
021A-5	21	11.0	19	14	19	7.5	18	13
027A-5	27	15	26	21	25	11.0	24	19.0
034A-5	34	18.5	32	27.0	31	15	29	25
040A-5	40	22	38	34	34	18.5	32	31.0
052A-5	52	30	49	40	44	22	42	34
065A-5	65	37	62	52	52	30	49	44
077A-5	77	45	73	65	61	37	58	52
096A-5	88	45	84	77	82	45	78	61
124A-5	115	55	109	88	104	55	99	82
156A-5	147	75	140	115	140	75	133	104
180A-5	170	90	162	147	161	90	153	140
240A-5	220	110	209	170	204	110	194	161
260A-5	238	132	226	220*	221	110	210	204*
302A-5	270	160	257	238	242	132	230	221
361A-5	322	200	306	270	289	160	275	242
414A-5	370	200	352	322**	332	200	315	289**
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
585A-5	556	315	546	480	527	315	518	455

ACS880-01-...	Setting of parameter 95.15: Ex motor enabled				Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
	Drive output ratings				Drive output ratings			
	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use	Nominal use		Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}	I_2	P_n	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	kW	A	A	A	kW	A	A
635A-5	603	355	594	556	572	355	563	527
U_n = 690 V								
07A4-7	7.4	5.5	7.0	5.6	7.0	4.0	6.7	5.6
09A9-7	9.9	7.5	9.4	7.4	9.4	5.5	8.9	7.0
14A3-7	14.3	11	13.6	9.9	13.6	7.5	12.9	9.4
019A-7	19	15	18	14.3	18	11	17	14
023A-7	23	18.5	22	19	22	15	21	18
027A-7	27	22	26	23	26	18.5	25	22
035A-7	35	30	33	26	33	22	31	24
042A-7	42	37	40	35	40	30	38	33
049A-7	49	45	47	42	46	37	44	40
061A-7	61	55	58	49	49	45	47	46
084A-7	84	75	80	61	68	55	65	49
098A-7	98	90	93	84	83	75	79	68
119A-7	119	110	113	98	101	90	96	83
142A-7	126	110	120	119	112	90	106	90
174A-7	154	132	146	126	137	110	130	112
210A-7	184	160	175	154	161	132	153	137
271A-7	238	200	226	184	207	160	197	161

Definitions

U_n	Nominal voltage of the drive
I_2	Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)
P_n	Typical motor power in no-overload use
I_{Ld}	Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes

I_{Hd} Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
* Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

P_{Hd} Typical motor power in heavy-duty use

The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled		
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	A	A
U_n = 230 V			
04A6-2	4.1	3.9	3.3
06A6-2	5.9	5.6	4.1
07A5-2	6.7	6.4	5.9
10A6-2	9.5	9.0	6.7
16A8-2	15.0	14.3	9.5
24A3-2	22.0	20.9	15.0
031A-2	30.0	28.5	22.0
046A-2	41.0	39.0	30.0
061A-2	56	53	41
075A-2	56	53	47
087A-2	67	64	56
115A-2	94	89	67
145A-2	118	112	94
170A-2	146	139	118
206A-2	178	169	146
274A-2	216	205	178
U_n = 400 V			
02A4-3	2.2	2.1	1.7
03A3-3	3.0	2.9	2.2
04A0-3	3.6	3.4	3.0
05A6-3	5.0	4.8	3.6

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled		
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	A	A
07A2-3	6.5	6.2	5.0
09A4-3	8.5	8.1	6.5
12A6-3	11.3	10.7	8.5
017A-3	15	14.3	11.3
025A-3	22	20.9	15.0
032A-3	30	29	22
038A-3	35	33	30
045A-3	41	39	35
061A-3	56	53	41
072A-3	56	53	47
087A-3	67	64	56
105A-3	86	82	67
145A-3	118	112	86
169A-3	146	139	118
206A-3	178	169	146
246A-3	194	184	178
293A-3	236	224	194*
363A-3	274	260	236
430A-3	325	309	274**
490A-3	-	-	-
595A-3	509	437	374
670A-3	573	489	441
U_n = 500 V			
02A1-5	1.8	1.7	1.4
03A0-5	2.6	2.5	1.8
03A4-5	2.9	2.8	2.6
04A8-5	4.1	3.9	2.9

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled		
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
	I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	A	A
05A2-5	4.4	4.2	4.1
07A6-5	6.5	6.2	4.4
11A0-5	9.4	8.9	6.5
014A-5	12.0	11.4	9.4
021A-5	18.0	17.1	12.0
027A-5	23.0	21.9	18.0
034A-5	29	28	23
040A-5	29	28	23
052A-5	37	35	29
065A-5	39	37	33
077A-5	46	44	39
096A-5	72	68	46
124A-5	93	88	72
156A-5	133	126	93
180A-5	153	145	133
240A-5	191	181	153
260A-5	206	196	191*
302A-5	206	196	191
361A-5	258	245	206
414A-5	296	281	258**
477A-5	-	-	-
585A-5	500	426	374
635A-5	543	463	434
U_n = 690 V			
07A4-7	7.0	6.7	5.6
09A9-7	9.4	8.9	7.0
14A3-7	13.6	12.9	9.4

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled		
	Nominal use	**Light-duty use**	**Heavy-duty use**
	I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	A	**A**	**A**
019A-7	18	17	14
023A-7	22	21	18
027A-7	26	25	22
035A-7	33	31	24
042A-7	40	38	33
049A-7	46	44	40
061A-7	49	47	46
084A-7	68	65	49
098A-7	83	79	68
119A-7	101	96	83
142A-7	101	96	84
174A-7	122	116	101
210A-7	138	131	122
271A-7	178	169	138

Definitions

U_n Nominal voltage of the drive

I_2 Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)

P_n Typical motor power in no-overload use

I_{Ld} Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes

I_{Hd} Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
* Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

P_{Hd} Typical motor power in heavy-duty use

The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

High speed mode

Selection "High speed mode" of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings improves control performance at high output frequencies. ABB recommends it to be selected with output frequency of 120 Hz and above.

This table gives the drive ratings for the maximum output frequency when "High speed mode" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled. With smaller output frequencies, the current derating is less. Contact ABB for operation above the recommended maximum output frequency or for the output current derating with output frequencies above 120 Hz and below the maximum output frequency.

At the 120 Hz output frequency: no derating.

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings			
	Maximum output frequency			
	f_{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
		I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	Hz	A	A	A
U_n = 230 V				
04A6-2	500	4.1	3.9	3.3
06A6-2	500	5.9	5.6	4.1
07A5-2	500	6.7	6.4	5.9
10A6-2	500	9.5	9.0	6.7
16A8-2	500	15.0	14.3	9.5
24A3-2	500	22.0	20.9	15.0
031A-2	500	30.0	28.5	22.0
046A-2	500	41.0	39.0	30.0
061A-2	500	56	53	41
075A-2	500	56	53	47
087A-2	500	67	64	56
115A-2	500	84	80	67
145A-2	500	106	101	84
170A-2	500	135	128	106
206A-2	500	165	157	135
274A-2	500	189	180	165
U_n = 400 V				

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings			
	Maximum output frequency			
	f_{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
		I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	Hz	A	A	A
02A4-3	500	2.2	2.1	1.7
03A3-3	500	3.0	2.9	2.2
04A0-3	500	3.6	3.4	3.0
05A6-3	500	5.0	4.8	3.6
07A2-3	500	6.5	6.2	5.0
09A4-3	500	8.5	8.1	6.5
12A6-3	500	11.3	10.7	8.5
017A-3	500	15	14.3	11.3
025A-3	500	22	20.9	15.0
032A-3	500	30	29	22
038A-3	500	35	33	30
045A-3	500	41	39	35
061A-3	500	56	53	41
072A-3	500	56	53	47
087A-3	500	67	64	56
105A-3	500	77	73	67
145A-3	500	106	101	77
169A-3	500	135	128	106
206A-3	500	165	157	135
246A-3	500	170	162	143
293A-3	500	202	192	170*
363A-3	500	236	224	202
430A-3	500	280	266	236**
490A-3	-	-	-	-
595A-3	500	595	590	505

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings			
	Maximum output frequency			
	f_{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
		I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	Hz	A	A	A
670A-3	500	670	660	595
U_n= 500 V				
02A1-5	500	1.8	1.7	1.4
03A0-5	500	2.6	2.5	1.8
03A4-5	500	2.9	2.8	2.6
04A8-5	500	4.1	3.9	2.9
05A2-5	500	4.4	4.2	4.1
07A6-5	500	6.5	6.2	4.4
11A0-5	500	9.4	8.9	6.5
014A-5	500	12.0	11.4	9.4
021A-5	500	18.0	17.1	12.0
027A-5	500	23.0	21.9	18.0
034A-5	500	29	28	23
040A-5	500	29	28	23
052A-5	500	37	35	29
065A-5	500	39	37	33
077A-5	500	46	44	39
096A-5	500	58	55	46
124A-5	500	74	70	58
156A-5	500	122	116	74
180A-5	500	140	133	122
240A-5	500	168	160	140
260A-5	500	182	173	168*
302A-5	500	182	173	168
361A-5	500	206	196	182
414A-5	500	236	224	206**

ACS880-01-...	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings			
	Maximum output frequency			
	f_{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use
		I_2	I_{Ld}	I_{Hd}
	Hz	A	A	A
477A-5	-	-	-	-
585A-5	500	585	575	505
635A-5	500	635	625	585
U_n = 690 V				
07A4-7	500	6.7	6.4	5.4
09A9-7	500	8.9	8.5	6.7
14A3-7	500	12.9	12.3	8.9
019A-7	500	17	16	13
023A-7	500	21	20	17
027A-7	500	24	23	21
035A-7	500	32	30	23
042A-7	500	38	36	32
049A-7	500	44	42	38
061A-7	500	44	42	40
084A-7	500	53	50	44
098A-7	500	68	65	53
119A-7	500	83	79	68
142A-7	500	83	79	72
174A-7	500	96	91	83
210A-7	500	101	96	83
271A-7	500	130	124	101

Definitions

f	Output frequency
*f*max	Maximum output frequency with High speed mode
U_n	Nominal voltage of the drive
I_2	Continuous rms output current. No overload capability at 40 °C (104 °F)

P_n	Typical motor power in no-overload use
I_{Ld}	Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes
I_{Hd}	Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. * Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes. ** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

Fuses (IEC)

gG and aR fuses for protection against short-circuit in the input power cable or drive are listed below. Either fuse type can be used for frames R1 to R9 if it operates rapidly enough. The operating time depends on the supply network impedance and the cross-sectional area and length of the supply cable.

For frames R7 to R9, ABB recommends ultra-rapid (aR) fuses. Refer to Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses (page 270). For frame R9e, only aR fuses (DIN 43653) are allowed.

Note 1: See also section Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection.

Note 2: Fuses with higher current rating than the recommended ones must not be used. Fuses with lower current rating can be used.

Note 3: For non-UL installations: Fuses from other manufacturers can be used if they meet the ratings and the melting curve of the fuse does not exceed the melting curve of the fuse mentioned in the table.

aR fuses DIN 43653 stud-mount

ABB recommends stud-mount fuses for better cooling, but blade style fuses can be used as well.

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current 1) (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A^2s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653
U_n = 230 V							
04A6-2	45	4.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
06A6-2	45	6.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
07A5-2	45	7.5	16	48	690	170M1309	000
10A6-2	45	10.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
16A8-2	75	16.8	25	130	690	170M1311	000

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current [1)] (A)**	**Input current (A)**	**Fuse**				
			A	**A^2s**	**V**	**Bussmann type**	**Type DIN 43653**
24A3-2	140	24.3	40	460	690	170M1313	000
031A-2	250	31.0	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
046A-2	310	46	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
061A-2	590	61	125	8500	690	170M1318	000
075A-2	390	75	125	7500	690	170M3013	1
087A-2	580	87	160	8500	690	170M3014	1
115A-2	810	115	200	15000	690	170M3015	1
145A-2	1100	145	250	28500	690	170M3016	1
170A-2	1400	170	315	46500	690	170M3017	1
206A-2	1750	206	350	68500	690	170M3018	1
274A-2	2050	274	400	105000	690	170M3019	1
U_n = 400 V							
02A4-3	75	2.4	25	130	690	170M1311	000
03A3-3	75	3.3	25	130	690	170M1311	000
04A0-3	75	4.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000
05A6-3	75	5.6	25	130	690	170M1311	000
07A2-3	75	8.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000
09A4-3	75	10.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000
12A6-3	75	12.9	25	130	690	170M1311	000
017A-3	140	17	40	460	690	170M1313	000
025A-3	140	25	40	460	690	170M1313	000
032A-3	250	32	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
038A-3	250	38	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
045A-3	310	45	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
061A-3	450	61	100	4650	690	170M1317	000
072A-3	590	72	125	8500	690	170M1318	000
087A-3	800	87	160	16000	690	170M1319	000
105A-3	810	105	200	15000	690	170M3015	1

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current 1) (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A^2s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653
145A-3	1100	145	250	28500	690	170M3016	1
169A-3	1400	169	315	46500	690	170M3017	1
206A-3	1750	206	350	68500	690	170M3018	1
246A-3	2100	246	450	105000	690	170M5009	2
293A-3	2400	293	500	145000	690	170M5010	2
363A-3	3400	363	630	275000	690	170M5012	2
430A-3	4100	430	700	405000	690	170M5013	2
490A-3	4100	450	700	405000	690	170M5013	2
595A-3	6500	529	1000	945000	690	170M6014	3
670A-3	6500	596	1000	945000	690	170M6014	3
U_n = 500 V							
02A1-5	32	2.1	25	130	690	170M1308	000
03A0-5	32	3.0	25	130	690	170M1308	000
03A4-5	32	3.4	25	130	690	170M1308	000
04A8-5	32	4.8	25	130	690	170M1308	000
05A2-5	32	5.2	25	130	690	170M1308	000
07A6-5	32	7.6	25	130	690	170M1308	000
11A0-5	32	11.0	25	130	690	170M1308	000
014A-5	140	14	40	460	690	170M1313	000
021A-5	140	21	40	460	690	170M1313	000
027A-5	250	27	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
034A-5	250	34	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
040A-5	310	40	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
052A-5	450	52	100	4650	690	170M1317	000
065A-5	590	65	125	8500	690	170M1318	000
077A-5	800	77	160	16000	690	170M1319	000
096A-5	810	96	200	15000	690	170M3015	1
124A-5	1100	124	250	28500	690	170M3016	1

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current [1] (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A^2s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653
156A-5	1400	156	315	46500	690	170M3017	1
180A-5	1750	180	315	46500	690	170M3018	1
240A-5	1800	240	400	74000	690	170M5008	2
260A-5	2100	260	450	105000	690	170M5009	2
302A-5	3000	302	550	190000	690	170M5011	2
361A-5	3400	361	630	275000	690	170M5012	2
414A-5	4100	414	700	405000	690	170M5013	2
477A-5	4100	450	700	405000	690	170M5013	2
585A-5	6500	423	1000	945000	690	170M6014	3
635A-5	6500	477	1000	945000	690	170M6014	3
U_n = 690 V							
07A4-7	45	7.4	16	48	690	170M1309	000
09A9-7	59	9.9	20	78	690	170M1310	000
14A3-7	105	14.3	32	270	690	170M1312	000
019A-7	140	19	40	460	690	170M1313	000
023A-7	180	23	50	770	690	170M1314	000
027A-7	180	27	50	770	690	170M1314	000
035A-7	250	35	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
042A-7	310	42	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
049A-7	310	49	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
061A-7	590	61	125	8500	690	170M1318	000
084A-7	800	84	160	16000	690	170M1319	000
098A-7	810	98	200	15000	690	170M3015	1
119A-7	810	119	200	15000	690	170M3015	1
142A-7	1100	142	250	28500	690	170M3016	1
174A-7	1400	174	315	46500	690	170M3017	1
210A-7	1800	210	400	74000	690	170M5008	2

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current 1) (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A²s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653
271A-7	2100	271	450	105000	690	170M5009	2

1) minimum short-circuit current of the installation

aR fuses DIN 43620 blade style

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses blade style (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current 1) (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A²s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620
U_n = 230 V							
04A6-2	42	4.6	16	48	690	170M1559	000
06A6-2	42	6.6	16	48	690	170M1559	000
07A5-2	42	7.5	16	48	690	170M1559	000
10A6-2	60	10.6	20	78	690	170M1560	000
16A8-2	75	16.8	25	130	690	170M1561	000
24A3-2	140	24.3	40	460	690	170M1563	000
031A-2	240	31.0	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
046A-2	320	46	80	2550	690	170M1566	000
061A-2	600	61	125	8500	690	170M1568	000
075A-2	810	75	200	15000	690	170M3815	1
087A-2	1100	87	250	28500	690	170M3816	1
115A-2	1500	115	315	46500	690	170M3817	1
145A-2	1500	145	315	46500	690	170M3817	1
170A-2	2100	170	450	105000	690	170M5809	2
206A-2	2500	206	500	155000	690	170M5810	2
274A-2	2500	274	630	220000	690	170M5810	3
U_n = 400 V							
02A4-3	75	2.4	25	130	690	170M1561	000
03A3-3	75	3.3	25	130	690	170M1561	000

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses blade style (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current [1] (A)**	**Input current (A)**	**Fuse**				
			A	**A^2s**	**V**	**Bussmann type**	**Type DIN 43620**
04A0-3	75	4.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000
05A6-3	75	5.6	25	130	690	170M1561	000
07A2-3	75	8.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000
09A4-3	75	10.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000
12A6-3	75	12.9	25	130	690	170M1561	000
017A-3	140	17	40	460	690	170M1563	000
025A-3	140	25	40	460	690	170M1563	000
032A-3	240	32	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
038A-3	240	38	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
045A-3	320	45	80	2550	690	170M1566	000
061A-3	450	61	100	4650	690	170M1567	000
072A-3	600	72	125	8500	690	170M1568	000
087A-3	820	87	160	16000	690	170M1569	000
105A-3	1500	105	315	46500	690	170M3817	1
145A-3	1500	145	315	46500	690	170M3817	1
169A-3	2100	169	450	105000	690	170M5809	2
206A-3	2500	206	500	145000	690	170M5810	2
246A-3	3400	246	630	275000	690	170M5812	2
293A-3	4600	293	800	490000	690	170M6812D	3
363A-3	6500	363	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3
430A-3	9800	430	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3
490A-3	9800	450	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3
595A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
670A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 500 V							
02A1-5	75	2.1	25	130	690	170M1561	000
03A0-5	75	3.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000
03A4-5	75	3.4	25	130	690	170M1561	000

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses blade style (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current [1] (A)**	**Input current (A)**	**Fuse**				
			A	**A^2s**	**V**	**Bussmann type**	**Type DIN 43620**
04A8-5	75	4.8	25	130	690	170M1561	000
05A2-5	75	5.2	25	130	690	170M1561	000
07A6-5	75	7.6	25	130	690	170M1561	000
11A0-5	75	11.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000
014A-5	140	14	40	460	690	170M1563	000
021A-5	140	21	40	460	690	170M1563	000
027A-5	240	27	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
034A-5	240	34	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
040A-5	320	40	80	2550	690	170M1566	000
052A-5	450	52	100	4650	690	170M1567	000
065A-5	600	65	125	8500	690	170M1568	000
077A-5	820	77	160	16000	690	170M1569	000
096A-5	1100	96	250	28500	690	170M3816	1
124A-5	1500	124	315	46500	690	170M3817	1
156A-5	1700	156	400	74000	690	170M5808	2
180A-5	2500	180	500	155000	690	170M5810	2
240A-5	2950	240	550	190000	690	170M5811	2
260A-5	4600	260	800	490000	690	170M6812D	3
302A-5	6500	302	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3
361A-5	6500	361	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3
414A-5	9800	414	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3
477A-5	9800	450	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3
585A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 690 V							
07A4-7	42	7.4	16	48	690	170M1559	000
09A9-7	60	9.9	20	78	690	170M1560	000
14A3-7	110	14.3	32	270	690	170M1562	000

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses blade style (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current [1)] (A)	Input current (A)	Fuse				
			A	A^2s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620
019A-7	140	19	40	460	690	170M1563	000
023A-7	190	23	50	770	690	170M1564	000
027A-7	190	27	50	770	690	170M1564	000
035A-7	240	35	63	1450	690	170M1565	000
042A-7	320	42	80	2550	690	170M1566	000
049A-7	320	49	80	2550	690	170M1566	000
061A-7	600	61	125	8500	690	170M1568	000
084A-7	820	84	160	16000	690	170M1569	000
098A-7	1100	98	400	74000	690	170M3816	2
119A-7	1100	119	400	74000	690	170M3816	2
142A-7	2500	142	500	145000	690	170M5810	2
174A-7	2500	174	500	145000	690	170M5810	2
210A-7	3400	210	700	320000	690	170M6811D	3
271A-7	3400	271	700	320000	690	170M6811D	3

1) minimum short-circuit current of the installation

gG fuses DIN 43620 blade style

Check on the fuse time-current curve to ensure the operating time of the fuse is below 0.5 seconds. Obey the local regulations.

gG fuses (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	Min. short-circuit current [1)]	Input current	Fuse				
	A	A	A	A^2s	V	ABB type	DIN size
U_n = 230 V							
04A6-2	40	4.6	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
06A6-2	80	6.6	10	360	500	OFAF000H10	000
07A5-2	120	7.5	16	740	500	OFAF000H16	000
10A6-2	120	10.6	16	740	500	OFAF000H16	000

gG fuses (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-…	Min. short-circuit current 1)	Input current	Fuse				
	A	A	A	A^2s	V	ABB type	DIN size
16A8-2	200	16.8	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000
24A3-2	350	24.3	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000
031A-2	400	31.0	50	16000	500	OFAF000H50	000
046A-2	500	46	63	20100	500	OFAF000H63	000
061A-2	800	61	80	37500	500	OFAF000H80	000
075A-2	1000	75	100	65000	500	OFAF000H100	000
087A-2	1300	87	125	100000	500	OFAF00H125	00
115A-2	1700	115	160	170000	500	OFAF00H160	00
145A-2	2300	145	200	300000	500	OFAF0H200	0
170A-2	3300	170	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0
206A-2	5500	206	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1
274A-2	7000	274	400	1100000	500	OFAF2H400	2
U_n = 400 V							
02A4-3	17	2.4	4	53	500	OFAF000H4	000
03A3-3	40	3.3	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
04A0-3	40	4.0	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
05A6-3	80	5.6	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
07A2-3	80	8.0	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
09A4-3	120	10.0	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000
12A6-3	120	12.9	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000
017A-3	200	17	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000
025A-3	250	25	32	4500	500	OFAF000H32	000
032A-3	350	32	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000
038A-3	400	38	50	15400	500	OFAF000H50	000
045A-3	500	45	63	21300	500	OFAF000H63	000
061A-3	800	61	80	37000	500	OFAF000H80	000
072A-3	1000	72	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000
087A-3	1000	87	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000

gG fuses (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current 1)**	**Input current**	**Fuse**				
	A	**A**	**A**	**A^2s**	**V**	**ABB type**	**DIN size**
105A-3	1300	105	125	103000	500	OFAF00H125	00
145A-3	1700	145	160	185000	500	OFAF00H160	00
169A-3	3300	169	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0
206A-3	5500	206	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1
246A-3	6400	246	355	920000	500	OFAF1H355	1
293A-3	7800	293	425	1300000	500	OFAF2H425	2
363A-3	9400	363	500	2000000	500	OFAF2H500	2
430A-3	10200	430	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
490A-3	10200	450	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
595A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
670A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 500 V							
02A1-5	17	2.1	4	53	500	OFAF000H4	000
03A0-5	40	3.0	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
03A4-5	40	3.4	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
04A8-5	80	4.8	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
05A2-5	80	5.2	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
07A6-5	120	7.6	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000
11A0-5	120	11.0	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000
014A-5	200	14	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000
021A-5	250	21	32	4500	500	OFAF000H32	000
027A-5	350	27	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000
034A-5	400	34	50	15400	500	OFAF000H50	000
040A-5	500	40	63	21300	500	OFAF000H63	000
052A-5	800	52	80	37000	500	OFAF000H80	000
065A-5	1000	65	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000
077A-5	1000	77	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000
096A-5	1300	96	125	103000	500	OFAF00H125	00

gG fuses (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current 1)**	**Input current**	**Fuse**				
	A	**A**	**A**	**A^2s**	**V**	**ABB type**	**DIN size**
124A-5	1700	124	160	185000	500	OFAF00H160	00
156A-5	3300	156	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0
180A-5	5500	180	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1
240A-5	6400	240	355	920000	500	OFAF1H355	1
260A-5	7000	260	400	1100000	500	OFAF2H400	2
302A-5	9400	302	500	2000000	500	OFAF2H500	2
361A-5	10200	361	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
414A-5	10200	414	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
477A-5	10200	450	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
585A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 690 V							
07A4-7	115	7.4	16	1200	690	OFAA000GG16	000
09A9-7	145	9.9	20	2400	690	OFAA000GG20	000
14A3-7	190	14.3	25	4000	690	OFAA000GG25	000
019A-7	280	19	35	12000	690	OFAA000GG35	000
023A-7	450	23	50	24000	690	OFAA000GG50	000
027A-7	450	27	50	24000	690	OFAA000GG50	000
035A-7	520	35	63	30000	690	OFAA000GG63	000
042A-7	800	42	80	51000	690	OFAA0GG80	0
049A-7	800	49	80	51000	690	OFAA0GG80	0
061A-7	1050	61	100	95000	690	OFAA0GG100	0
084A-7	1700	84	160	240000	690	OFAA1GG160	1
098A-7	1700	98	160	240000	690	OFAA1GG160	1
119A-7	2200	119	200	350000	690	OFAA1GG200	1
142A-7	3200	142	250	700000	690	OFAA1GG250	1
174A-7	5500	174	315	850000	690	OFAA2GG315	2
210A-7	7000	210	400	1300000	690	OFAA3GG400	3

gG fuses (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01-...	**Min. short-circuit current 1)**	**Input current**	**Fuse**				
	A	**A**	**A**	**A^2s**	**V**	**ABB type**	**DIN size**
271A-7	7000	271	400	1300000	690	OFAA3GG400	3

1) minimum short-circuit current of the installation

Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses

The combinations (cable size, cable length, transformer size and fuse type) in this table fulfill the minimum requirements for the proper operation of the fuse. Use this table to select between gG and aR fuses or to calculate the short-circuit current of the installation as described in Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation (page 273).

ACS880-01-...	Cable type		Supply transformer minimum apparent power S_N (kVA)					
	Copper	Alumin-um	Maximum cable length with gG fuses			Maximum cable length with aR fuses		
	mm²	mm²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m
U_n = 230 V								
04A6-2	3×1.5	-	1.1	1.1	-	1.1	1.2	-
06A6-2	3×1.5	-	2.2	2.4	-	1.1	1.2	-
07A5-2	3×1.5	-	3.3	4.3	-	1.1	1.2	-
10A6-2	3×1.5	-	3.3	4.3	-	1.5	1.8	-
16A8-2	3×6	-	5.5	5.8	-	1.8	1.8	-
24A3-2	3×6	-	9.7	11	-	3.3	3.5	-
031A-2	3×10	-	11	12	-	4.4	4.6	-
046A-2	3×16	3×35	14	15	-	7.7	8.2	-
061A-2	3×25	3×35	22	24	-	8.3	8.6	-
075A-2	3×35	3×50	28	29	-	11	11	-
087A-2	3×35	3×70	36	39	-	14	15	-
115A-2	3×50	3×70	48	52	-	19	21	-
145A-2	3×95	3×120	64	70	-	28	30	-
170A-2	3×120	3×150	93	104	-	36	39	-
206A-2	3×150	3×240	158	194	-	40	45	-
274A-2	2×(3×95)	2×(3×120)	198	229	-	57	62	-
U_n = 400 V								
02A4-3	3×1.5	-	0.82	0.82	0.82	3.1	3.4	5.0
03A3-3	3×1.5	-	1.9	1.9	2.0	3.1	3.4	5.0
04A0-3	3×1.5	-	1.9	1.9	2.0	3.1	3.4	5.0
05A6-3	3×1.5	-	3.8	4.0	4.4	3.1	3.4	5.0
07A2-3	3×1.5	-	3.8	4.0	4.4	3.1	3.4	5.0

ACS880-01-...	Cable type		Supply transformer minimum apparent power S_N (kVA)					
	Copper	Alumin-um	Maximum cable length with gG fuses			Maximum cable length with aR fuses		
	mm²	mm²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m
09A4-3	3×1.5	-	5.8	6.2	8.4	3.1	3.4	5.0
12A6-3	3×1.5	-	5.8	6.2	8.4	3.1	3.4	5.0
017A-3	3×6	-	9.6	9.8	10	5.8	5.9	6.2
025A-3	3×6	-	12	12	13	5.8	5.9	6.2
032A-3	3×10	-	17	17	18	8.2	8.3	8.7
038A-3	3×10	-	19	20	21	8.2	8.3	8.7
045A-3	3×16	3×25	24	24	26	13	14	15
061A-3	3×25	3×25	39	39	42	18	19	20
072A-3	3×35	3×35	48	49	52	23	24	25
087A-3	3×35	3×50	48	49	52	34	35	38
105A-3	3×50	3×70	63	65	68	62	67	80
145A-3	3×95	3×95	82	85	88	62	65	70
169A-3	3×120	3×150	160	170	187	87	93	104
206A-3	3×150	3×185	269	298	357	107	116	132
246A-3	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	311	335	393	145	157	180
293A-3	2×(3×95)	2×(3×120)	380	411	478	193	211	248
363A-3	2×(3×120)	2×(3×185)	459	502	591	269	304	378
430A-3	2×(3×150)	2×(3×240)	499	547	641	380	452	634
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
595A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
670A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 500 V								
02A1-5	3×1.5	-	1.0	1.0	1.0	3.9	4.1	5.0
03A0-5	3×1.5	-	2.4	2.4	2.4	3.9	4.1	5.0
03A4-5	3×1.5	-	2.4	2.4	2.4	3.9	4.1	5.0
04A8-5	3×1.5	-	4.8	4.9	5.2	3.9	4.1	5.0
05A2-5	3×1.5	-	4.8	4.9	5.2	3.9	4.1	5.0
07A6-5	3×1.5	-	7.2	7.5	8.9	3.9	4.1	5.0
11A0-5	3×1.5	-	7.2	7.5	8.9	3.9	4.1	5.0

ACS880-01-...	Cable type		Supply transformer minimum apparent power S_N (kVA)					
	Copper	Aluminum	Maximum cable length with gG fuses			Maximum cable length with aR fuses		
	mm²	mm²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m
014A-5	3×6	-	12	12	12	7.2	7.3	7.6
021A-5	3×6	-	15	15	16	7.2	7.3	7.6
027A-5	3×10	-	21	21	22	10	10	11
034A-5	3×10	-	24	24	25	10	10	11
040A-5	3×16	3×35	30	30	31	17	17	18
052A-5	3×25	3×35	48	49	51	18	18	19
065A-5	3×35	3×50	60	61	63	29	29	30
077A-5	3×35	3×70	60	61	63	42	43	46
096A-5	3×50	3×70	78	80	83	60	63	67
124A-5	3×95	3×120	103	105	108	77	80	85
156A-5	3×120	3×150	200	209	224	97	102	109
180A-5	3×150	3×240	335	362	411	133	143	156
240A-5	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	388	410	456	158	165	179
260A-5	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	425	452	512	242	262	307
302A-5	2x(3x95)	2×(3×120)	572	617	711	336	372	450
361A-5	2×(3×120)	2×(3×185)	621	669	763	336	368	427
414A-5	2×(3×150)	2×(3×240)	621	666	747	473	539	674
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
585A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 690 V								
07A4-7	3×1.5	-	9.5	9.5	9.5	3.3	3.3	3.3
09A9-7	3×1.5	-	12	12	12	4.4	4.4	4.4
14A3-7	3×2.5	-	16	16	16	7.8	7.8	7.8
019A-7	3×4	-	23	23	23	9.9	10	10
023A-7	3×6	-	37	37	38	13	13	13
027A-7	3×10	-	37	37	38	13	13	13
035A-7	3×10	3×25	43	43	44	14	14	14
042A-7	3×16	3×25	66	67	68	23	23	24

ACS880-01-...	Cable type		Supply transformer minimum apparent power S_N (kVA)					
	Copper	Aluminum	Maximum cable length with gG fuses			Maximum cable length with aR fuses		
	mm²	mm²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m
049A-7	3×16	3×25	66	67	68	23	23	24
061A-7	3×25	3×35	87	88	90	40	40	41
084A-7	3×35	3×50	141	144	149	58	59	61
098A-7	3×50	3×70	141	143	146	134	138	145
119A-7	3×70	3×95	183	187	192	134	138	145
142A-7	3×95	3×120	267	275	286	184	192	205
174A-7	3×120	3×185	452	476	515	184	192	205
210A-7	3×185	2×(3×95)	584	608	654	266	277	295
271A-7	3×240	2×(3×120)	584	605	640	266	275	289

Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation

Make sure that the short-circuit current of the installation is at least the value given in the fuse table.

The short-circuit current of the installation can be calculated as follows:

$$I_{k2\text{-}ph} = \frac{U}{2 \cdot \sqrt{R_c^2 + (Z_k + X_c)^2}}$$

where

$I_{k2\text{-}ph}$	Short-circuit current in symmetrical two-phase short-circuit
U	Network line-to-line voltage (V)
R_c	Cable resistance (ohm)
Z_k	$Z_k = z_k \cdot U_n^2/S_n$ = transformer impedance (ohm)
z_k	Transformer impedance (%)
U_n	Transformer rated voltage (V)
S_n	Nominal apparent power of the transformer (kVA)
X_c	Cable reactance (ohm)

Calculation example

Drive:

- ACS880-01-145A-3

- Supply voltage = 410 V

Transformer:

- rated power S_n = 600 kVA
- rated voltage (drive supply voltage) U_N = 430 V
- transformer impedance z_k = 7.2%.

Supply cable:

- length = 170 m
- resistance/length = 0.398 ohm/km
- reactance/length = 0.082 ohm/km.

$$Z_k = z_k \cdot \frac{U_N^2}{S_N} = 0.072 \cdot \frac{(430\ \mathrm{V})^2}{600\ \mathrm{kVA}} = 22.19\ \mathrm{mohm}$$

$$R_c = 170\ \mathrm{m} \cdot 0.398\ \frac{\mathrm{ohm}}{\mathrm{km}} = 67.66\ \mathrm{mohm}$$

$$X_c = 170\ \mathrm{m} \cdot 0.082\ \frac{\mathrm{ohm}}{\mathrm{km}} = 13.94\ \mathrm{mohm}$$

$$I_{k2\text{-}ph} = \frac{410\ \mathrm{V}}{2 \cdot \sqrt{(67.66\ \mathrm{mohm})^2 + (22.19\ \mathrm{mohm} + 13.94\ \mathrm{mohm})^2}} = 2.7\ \mathrm{kA}$$

The calculated short-circuit current 2.7 kA is higher than the minimum short-circuit current of the drive gG fuse type OFAF00H160 (1700 A). -> The 500 V gG fuse (ABB Control OFAF00H160) can be used.

Fuses (UL)

The UL Listed fuses in this manual are required for branch circuit protection and required per NEC. The drives are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA symmetrical amperes (rms) at 240 V, 480 V, and 600 V maximum when protected by the fuses given below.

ABB recommends Class T fuses listed below. Also allowed are UL Listed 248-8 Class J fast acting, time delay, and high speed fuses, 248-4 Class CC fast acting fuses and 248-17 Class CF fast acting and time delay fuses of the same nominal voltage and current rating.

Refer to notes below the table.

For the 440 V fuses, refer to the ACS880-01…, ACS880-04…, ACS880-11…, ACS880-31…, ACS880-14… and ACS880-34… +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]).

ACS880-01-…	Input current	UL (one fuse per phase)			
	A	A	V	Bussmann type	UL class
U_n = 230 V					
04A6-2	4.4	15	600	JJS-15	T
06A6-2	6.3	15	600	JJS-15	T
07A5-2	7.1	15	600	JJS-15	T
10A6-2	10.1	20	600	JJS-20	T
16A8-2	16.0	25	600	JJS-25	T
24A3-2	23.1	35	600	JJS-35	T
031A-2	29.3	50	600	JJS-50	T
046A-2	44	80	600	JJS-80	T
061A-2	58	80	600	JJS-80	T
075A-2	71	110	600	JJS-110	T
087A-2	83	110	600	JJS-110	T
115A-2	109	150	600	JJS-150	T
145A-2	138	200	600	JJS-200	T
170A-2	162	250	600	JJS-250	T
206A-2	196	300	600	JJS-300	T
274A-2	260	400	600	JJS-400	T

ACS880-01-...	Input current	UL (one fuse per phase)			
	A	A	V	Bussmann type	UL class
U_n = 400 V					
02A4-3	2.4	15	600	JJS-15	T
03A3-3	3.3	15	600	JJS-15	T
04A0-3	4.0	15	600	JJS-15	T
05A6-3	5.6	15	600	JJS-15	T
07A2-3	8.0	15	600	JJS-15	T
09A4-3	10.0	15	600	JJS-15	T
12A6-3	12.9	20	600	JJS-20	T
017A-3	17	25	600	JJS-25	T
025A-3	25	35	600	JJS-35	T
032A-3	32	40	600	JJS-40	T
038A-3	38	50	600	JJS-50	T
045A-3	45	60	600	JJS-60	T
061A-3	61	80	600	JJS-80	T
072A-3	72	90	600	JJS-90	T
087A-3	87	110	600	JJS-110	T
105A-3	105	150	600	JJS-150	T
145A-3	145	200	600	JJS-200	T
169A-3	169	225	600	JJS-225	T
206A-3	206	300	600	JJS-300	T
246A-3	246	350	600	JJS-350	T
293A-3	293	400	600	JJS-400	T
363A-3	363	500	600	JJS-500	T
430A-3	430	600	600	JJS-600	T
490A-3	450	600	600	JJS-600	T
595A-3	529	800	600	JJS-800	T
670A-3	596	800	600	JJS-800	T
U_n = 480 V					
02A1-5	2.1	15	600	JJS-15	T
03A0-5	3.0	15	600	JJS-15	T

ACS880-01-...	Input current	UL (one fuse per phase)			
	A	A	V	Bussmann type	UL class
03A4-5	3.4	15	600	JJS-15	T
04A8-5	4.8	15	600	JJS-15	T
05A2-5	5.2	15	600	JJS-15	T
07A6-5	7.6	15	600	JJS-15	T
11A0-5	11	20	600	JJS-20	T
014A-5	14	25	600	JJS-25	T
021A-5	21	35	600	JJS-35	T
027A-5	27	40	600	JJS-40	T
034A-5	34	50	600	JJS-50	T
040A-5	40	60	600	JJS-60	T
052A-5	52	80	600	JJS-80	T
065A-5	65	90	600	JJS-90	T
077A-5	77	110	600	JJS-110	T
096A-5	96	150	600	JJS-150	T
124A-5	124	200	600	JJS-200	T
156A-5	156	225	600	JJS-225	T
180A-5	180	300	600	JJS-300	T
240A-5	240	350	600	JJS-350	T
260A-5	260	400	600	JJS-400	T
302A-5	302	400	600	JJS-400	T
361A-5	361	500	600	JJS-500	T
414A-5	414	600	600	JJS-600	T
477A-5	450	600	600	JJS-600	T
585A-5	423	800	600	JJS-800	T
635A-5	477	800	600	JJS-800	T
U_n = 575 V					
07A4-7	7.0	15	600	JJS-15	T
09A9-7	9.4	20	600	JJS-20	T
14A3-7	13.6	30	600	JJS-30	T
019A-7	18	40	600	JJS-40	T

ACS880-01-...	Input current	UL (one fuse per phase)			
	A	A	V	Bussmann type	UL class
023A-7	22	50	600	JJS-50	T
027A-7	27	50	600	JJS-50	T
035A-7	41	60	600	JJS-60	T
042A-7	52	80	600	JJS-80	T
049A-7	52	80	600	JJS-80	T
061A-7	62	110	600	JJS-110	T
084A-7	77	150	600	JJS-150	T
098A-7	99	150	600	JJS-150	T
119A-7	125	200	600	JJS-200	T
142A-7	144	250	600	JJS-250	T
174A-7	180	300	600	JJS-300	T
210A-7	242	400	600	JJS-400	T
271A-7	271	400	600	JJS-400	T

Semiconductor fuses for frame R9 with base part numbers are listed below. Semiconductor fuses with optional indicators can be used and have no impact on the drive UL listing, performance, or rating of the fuse. For 100 kA SCCR panel rating the semiconductor fuses must be in the same enclosure as the drive.

ACS880-01-...	Input current	UL fuse size (A) and voltage (V)		Bussmann semiconductor fuses UL 248-13 Recognized Fuses			
	A	Maximum current (A)	Voltage rating (V)	Type Flush End	Type DIN 43463	Type US Style	Type French Style
U_n = 480 V							
302A-5	302	550	690	170M6409	170M6009	170M6609	170M6309
361A-5	361	630	690	170M6410	170M6010	170M6610	170M6310
414A-5	414	700	690	170M6411	170M6011	170M6611	170M6311
U_n = 575 V							
210A-7	242	500	690	170M6408	170M6008	170M6608	170M6308
271A-7	271	500	690	170M6408	170M6008	170M6608	170M6308

1. Fuses are required as part of the installation, are not included in the base drive configuration, and must be provided by others.
2. Fuses with a higher current rating than specified must not be used.
3. The UL-listed fuses recommended by ABB are the required branch circuit protection per NEC. Circuit breakers listed in section Circuit breakers (UL) are also acceptable as branch circuit protection.
4. The recommended size or smaller UL-listed 248 fast-acting, time-delay, or high-speed fuses must be used to maintain the UL listing of the drive. Additional protection can be used. Refer to local codes and regulations.
5. A fuse of a different class can be used at the high fault rating where the I_{peak} and I^2t of the new fuse are not more than those of the specified fuse.
6. UL-listed 248 fast-acting, time-delay, or high-speed fuses from other manufacturers can be used if they meet the same class and rating requirements specified in the rules above.
7. When you install a drive, always obey ABB installation instructions, NEC requirements, and local codes.
8. Only 480 V R9 drives with serial numbers beginning 1204205581 when built in Finland and beginning 22106xxxxx when built in the U.S. may be protected with fuses other than Class T fuses.
9. Alternative fuses can be used if they meet certain characteristics. For permitted fuses, refer to Branch Circuit Protection for ABB drives manual supplement (3AXD50000645015).

In multicable installations, install only one fuse per phase (not one fuse per conductor). See also section Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection (page 93)

Circuit breakers (IEC)

Note: This section does not apply to the North American market. Refer to section Circuit breakers (UL).

Obey the rules that are listed below the tables.

The protective characteristics of the circuit breakers depend on the type, construction and settings of the breakers. There are also limitations pertaining to the short-circuit capacity of the supply network. Your local ABB representative can help you in selecting the breaker type when the supply network characteristics are known.

WARNING Pay special attention to the installation and placement of the breakers. Obey the manufacturer's instructions. Hot ionized gases can escape from the breaker enclosure in a short-circuit.

You can use the circuit breakers specified by ABB. You can also use other circuit breakers with the drive if they provide the same electrical characteristics. ABB does not assume any liability whatsoever for the correct function and protection of the circuit breakers not specified by ABB. Furthermore, if the specifications given by ABB are not obeyed, the drive can experience problems the warranty does not cover.

ABB miniature and molded case circuit breakers

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB miniature circuit breaker		ABB moulded case circuit breaker (Tmax)			
		Type	kA 1)	Type 2)	kA 1)	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
U_n = 230 V							
04A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
06A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
07A5-2	R1	S 303 P-B 16	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
10A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 16	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
16A8-2	R2	S 303 P-B 20	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.051	0.015
24A3-2	R2	S 303 P-B 32	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.051	0.015
031A-2	R3	S 303 P-B 50	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.069	0.020
046A-2	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.108	0.032
061A-2	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.108	0.032
075A-2	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.137	0.041
087A-2	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.137	0.041
115A-2	R6	-	-	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.220	0.065
145A-2	R6	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.220	0.065
170A-2	R7	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.308	0.091
206A-2	R7	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.308	0.091
274A-2	R8	-	-	XT5 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.377	0.112
U_n = 400 V							
02A4-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A3-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB miniature circuit breaker		ABB moulded case circuit breaker (Tmax)			
		Type	kA 1)	Type 2)	kA 1)	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
04A0-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
05A6-3	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
07A2-3	R1	S 303 P-B 13	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
09A4-3	R1	S 303 P-B 13	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.133	0.014
12A6-3	R1	S 303 P-B 20	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.133	0.014
017A-3	R2	S 303 P-B 25	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.015
025A-3	R2	S 303 P-B 32	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.015
032A-3	R3	S 303 P-B 50	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.454	0.020
038A-3	R3	S 303 P-B 63	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.454	0.020
045A-3	R4	S 803 P-B 63	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
061A-3	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.032
072A-3	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041
087A-3	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041
105A-3	R6	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.265	0.065
145A-3	R6	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.265	0.065
169A-3	R7	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
206A-3	R7	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
246A-3	R8	-	-	XT5H 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.112
293A-3	R8	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.112
363A-3	R9	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
430A-3	R9	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
490A-3	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-
595A-3	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-
670A-3	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 500 V							
02A1-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A0-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A4-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
04A8-5	R1	S 803 S-B 10	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
05A2-5	R1	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
07A6-5	R1	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB miniature circuit breaker		ABB moulded case circuit breaker (Tmax)			
		Type	kA 1)	Type 2)	kA 1)	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
11A0-5	R1	S 803 S-B 20	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
014A-5	R2	S 803 S-B 25	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.454	0.015
021A-5	R2	S 803 S-B 32	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.454	0.015
027A-5	R3	S 803 S-B 50	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.020
034A-5	R3	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.020
040A-5	R4	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
052A-5	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
065A-5	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.041
077A-5	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041
096A-5	R6	-	-	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.265	0.065
124A-5	R6	-	-	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.265	0.065
156A-5	R7	-	-	XT4 V 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
180A-5	R7	-	-	XT4 V 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
240A-5	R8	-	-	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.112
260A-5	R8	-	-	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.112
302A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.150
361A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
414A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
477A-5	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-
585A-5	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_n = 690 V							
07A4-7	R3	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	18	0.454	0.020
09A9-7	R3	S 803 S-B 20	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	18	0.454	0.020
14A3-7	R3	S 803 S-B 25	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	18	0.454	0.020
019A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 32	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	18	0.454	0.020
023A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 50	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.454	0.020
027A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.454	0.020
035A-7	R5	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.496	0.041
042A-7	R5	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	18	0.496	0.041
049A-7	R5	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	18	0.496	0.041

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB miniature circuit breaker		ABB moulded case circuit breaker (Tmax)			
		Type	kA 1)	Type 2)	kA 1)	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
061A-7	R6	S 803 S-B 125	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	18	0.265	0.065
084A-7	R6	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	18	0.265	0.065
098A-7	R7	-	-	XT4 L 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	20	0.310	0.091
119A-7	R7	-	-	XT4 L 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	20	0.310	0.091
142A-7	R8	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 320A	20	0.531	0.112
174A-7	R8	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 320A	20	0.531	0.112
210A-7	R9	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	35	0.531	0.150
271A-7	R9	-	-	XT5 S 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	35	0.531	0.150

1) Maximum allowed rated conditional short-circuit current (IEC 61800-5-1) of the electrical power network

2) The following trip units are also permitted: EKIP DIP (LSI, LSIG, LIG), EKIP Touch (LSI, LSIG), and EKIP Hi-Touch (LSI, LSIG)

1. Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.
2. When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive. For example, for the 400 V R6 and R3 drive, select enclosure with the volume ≥ 0.454+0.065 = 0.519 m^3.
3. If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but you must follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
4. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.
5. The braking capacity can be equal to or more than the value in the table. If the braking capacity is less than the value in the table, make sure that the breaker has a KAIC rating that is high enough to withstand the available short-circuit current.
6. **For 400 V and 500 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R1 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.

7. **For 400 V and 500 V drives:** Enclosures for frame R6 must have a solid top directly above the drive. Fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly above the drive.

8. **For 690 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R3, R5 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.

ABB manual motor starters

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB manual motor starters				
		Type	Limitor	kA [1)]	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
U_n = 230 V						
04A6-2	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	-	0.014
06A6-2	R1	MS132-10	-	30	-	0.014
07A5-2	R1	MS132-10	-	30	-	0.014
10A6-2	R1	MS132-16	-	30	-	0.014
16A8-2	R2	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.015
24A3-2	R2	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.015
031A-2	R3	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.020
046A-2	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	-	0.032
061A-2	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	-	0.032
075A-2	R5	MS165-80	-	30	-	0.041
087A-2	R5	MS165-80	-	30	-	0.041
U_n = 400 V						
02A4-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
03A3-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
04A0-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
05A6-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
07A2-3	R1	MS132-10	-	30	0.046	0.014
09A4-3	R1	MS132-10	-	30	0.046	0.014
12A6-3	R1	MS132-16	-	30	0.046	0.014
017A-3	R2	MS132-25	-	30	0.051	0.015

ACS880-01-...	Frame	ABB manual motor starters				
		Type	Limitor	kA [1)]	Enclosure minimum volume (m^3)	Drive volume (m^3)
025A-3	R2	MS132-25	-	30	0.051	0.015
032A-3	R3	MS132-25	-	30	0.069	0.020
038A-3	R3	MS165-65	-	30	0.069	0.020
045A-3	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	0.108	0.032
061A-3	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	0.108	0.032
072A-3	R5	MS165-80	-	30	0.137	0.041
087A-3	R5	MS165-80	-	30	0.137	0.041

1) Maximum allowed rated conditional short-circuit current (IEC 61800-5-1) of the electrical power network

1. Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.
2. When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive. For example, for the 400 V R5 and R3 drive, select enclosure with the volume ≥0.137+0.020 = 0.157 m^3.
3. If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but you must follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
4. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.

Circuit breakers (UL)

ABB inverse time circuit breakers

The drives are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 65 kA symmetrical amperes (RMS) at 240 V, 480 V, and 600 V maximum when protected by circuit breakers in the tables below.

Additional fuse protection is not required when using the circuit breakers herein. Circuit breakers are not required to be in the same enclosure as the drive.

Rules below must be followed when using these breakers. Follow rules 1…9 for all drives when implementing circuit breakers. Then follow rules 10…18 depending upon the drive voltage rating.

For more information see the manual supplement (3AXD50000645015 [English]).

230 V circuit breakers

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Input current	Circuit breaker maximum current	Circuit breaker voltage	Enclosure minimum volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)
		A	A	V	in^3	in^3	65 kA @ 240 V
U_n = 230 V							
04A6-2	R1	4.4	15	240	‡	681	XT2Nαβ015#********
06A6-2	R1	6.3	15	240	‡	681	XT2Nαβ015#********
07A5-2	R1	7.1	15	240	‡	681	XT2Nαβ015#********
10A6-2	R1	10.1	15	240	‡	681	XT2Nαβ015#********
16A8-2	R2	16.0	40	240	‡	750	XT2Nαβ040#********
24A3-2	R2	23.1	40	240	‡	750	XT2Nαβ040#********
031A-2	R3	29.3	50	240	‡	1011	XT2Nαβ050#********
046A-2	R4	44	100	240	‡	1669	XT2Nαβ100#********
061A-2	R4	58	100	240	‡	1669	XT2Nαβ100#********
075A-2	R5	72	150	240	‡	2030	XT4Nαβ150#********
087A-2	R5	83	150	240	‡	2030	XT4Nαβ150#********
115A-2	R6	109	200	240	‡	2880	XT4Nαβ200#********
145A-2	R6	138	200	240	‡	2880	XT4Nαβ200#********
170A-2	R7	162	300	240	‡	3369	XT5Nαβ30A#********
206A-2	R7	196	300	240	‡	3369	XT5Nαβ30A#********
274A-2	R8	260	400	240	‡	3858	XT5Nαβ40A#********

‡ Enclosure minimum volume is not applicable

Follow rules 1…11 below.

480 V circuit breakers

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Input current	Circuit breaker maximum current	Circuit breaker voltage	Enclosure minimum volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maximum I^2t	Maximum *I* peak
		A	A	V	in³	in³	65 kA @ 480 V	A²s	kA
U_n = 480 V									
02A1-5	R1	2.1	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
03A0-5	R1	3.0	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
03A4-5	R1	3.4	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
04A8-5	R1	4.8	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
05A2-5	R1	5.2	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
07A6-5	R1	7.6	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
11A0-5	R1	11	15	480	8100	681	XT2Hαβ015#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
014A-5	R2	14	30	480	27720	750	XT2Hαβ030#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
021A-5	R2	21	30	480	27720	750	XT2Hαβ030#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
027A-5	R3	27	50	480	27720	1011	XT2Hαβ050#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
034A-5	R3	34	50	480	27720	1011	XT2Hαβ050#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
040A-5	R4	40	70	480	30240	1669	XT2Hαβ070#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
052A-5	R4	52	70	480	30240	1669	XT2Hαβ070#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
065A-5	R5	65	125	480	30240	2030	XT2Hαβ125#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
077A-5	R5	77	125	480	30240	2030	XT2Hαβ125#********	0.51x10⁶	23.2
096A-5	R6	96	225	480	16200	2880	XT4Hαβ225#********	0.98x10⁶	30
124A-5	R6	124	225	480	16200	2880	XT4Hαβ225#********	0.98x10⁶	30
156A-5	R7	156	250	480	18900	3369	XT4Hαβ250#********	0.98x10⁶	30
180A-5	R7	180	250	480	18900	3369	XT4Hαβ250#********	0.98x10⁶	30
240A-5	R8	240	400	480	32400	3858	XT5Hαβ40A#********	4.2x10⁶	47.9
260A-5	R8	260	400	480	32400	3858	XT5Hαβ40A#********	4.2x10⁶	47.9
302A-5	R9	302	600	480	32400	5226	XT5Hαβ60B#********	4.2x10⁶	47.9
361A-5	R9	361	600	480	32400	5226	XT5Hαβ60B#********	4.2x10⁶	47.9
414A-5	R9	414	600	480	32400	5226	XT5Hαβ60B#********	4.2x10⁶	47.9
477A-5	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
585A-5	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	R9e	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Follow rules 1…9 and 12…17 below.

600 V circuit breakers

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Input current	Circuit breaker maximum current	Circuit breaker voltage	Enclosure minimum volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maximum I^2t	Maximum I peak
		A	A	V	in³	in³	65 kA @ 600 V	A²s	kA
U_n = 575 V									
07A4-7	R3	7	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
09A9-7	R3	9.4	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
14A3-7	R3	13.6	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
019A-7	R3	18	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
023A-7	R3	22	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
027A-7	R3	27	35	600	28980	1011	XT4Vαβ035#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
035A-7	R5	41	70	600	28980	2030	XT4Vαβ070#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
042A-7	R5	52	70	600	28980	2030	XT4Vαβ070#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
049A-7	R5	52	70	600	28980	2030	XT4Vαβ070#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
061A-7	R6	62	125	600	24840	2880	XT4Vαβ125#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
084A-7	R6	77	125	600	24840	2880	XT4Vαβ125#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
098A-7	R7	99	200	600	18900	3369	XT4Vαβ200#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
119A-7	R7	125	200	600	18900	3369	XT4Vαβ200#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
142A-7	R8	144	250	600	32400	3858	XT4Vαβ250#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
174A-7	R8	180	250	600	32400	3858	XT4Vαβ250#********	1.2x10⁶	31.5
210A-7	R9	242	400	600	32400	5226	XT5Lαβ40A#********	4.2x10⁶	51.4
271A-7	R9	271	400	600	32400	5226	XT5Lαβ40A#********	4.2x10⁶	51.4

Follow rules 1…9, 12…13 and 18 below.

Notes:

1. Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.
2. When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive.

3. For UL Open Type, UL Type 1 or UL Type 12 drives that have a minimum enclosure volume indicated with ‡ , no minimum enclosure volume is required but the drive must be mounted inside an enclosure.
4. If combining a drive with an enclosure minimum volume specified and others with an enclosure minimum volume indicated with ‡ , start with the largest specified enclosure minimum volume listed and add the drive volumes for the other drives.
5. If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
6. UL Open Type, UL Type 1 and UL Type 12 drives can be used inside of the enclosure. Use drive volume for all three types listed in the table when installing multiple drives in the enclosure.
7. The ABB circuit breaker part number listed in the table is a base part number.
   - Symbol α represents 80% or 100% allowable continuous current. Options allowed are U, Q, C and D.
   - Symbol β represents the number of poles for the breaker. Options allowed are 3 and 4.
   - Symbol # represents trip units. Trip units allowed include A thru C, E thru L, P thru Z. If using Ekip breakers, set the overload current of the circuit breaker equal to or less than the value shown in the “CB Maximum Current” column in the tables above.
   - The digits indicated with an “*” represent accessories for the breakers and have no impact on the drive UL listing or performance or rating of the breaker.
   - For the ABB circuit breaker configurator refer to: https://lowvoltage-configurator.tnb.com/configurator/#/config/tmax_xt.
8. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.
9. Do not use a circuit breaker with a lower KAIC rating even if the available short-circuit current is less than 65 kA.
10. **For 230 V drives:** 230 V drives were tested with ABB inverse time circuit breakers rated at 65 kA and 240 V. Other manufacturers' inverse time circuit breakers can be used if they are UL 489 listed, they are 240 V or higher, they have a 65 kA or higher interrupting rating and they have the same or lower nominal current rating than the ABB specified circuit breaker.
11. **For 230 V drives:** Current limiting inverse time circuit breakers must not be used.

12. **For 480 V and 600 V drives:** When designing UL508A panels, Article SB 4.2.3 Exception No. 3 allows the use of other manufacturers' current limiting inverse time circuit breakers which have same voltage, current and interrupting rating, if I_{peak} and I^2t are the same or less than the ABB specified circuit breaker.
13. **For 480 V and 600 V drives:** Do not use non-current limiting inverse time circuit breakers.
14. **For 480 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R1 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.
15. **For 480 V drives:** Enclosures for frame R6 must have a solid top directly above the drive. Fans, filters our louvers cannot be mounted directly above the drive.
16. **For 480 V drives:** Only R8 frame drives with serial numbers beginning 1204107353 when built in Finland and 2205002140 when built in the U.S. may be protected with circuit breakers listed in the tables above.
17. **For 480 V drives:** Only R9 frame drives with serial numbers beginning 1204205581 when built in Finland and beginning 22106xxxxx when built in the U.S. may be protected with circuit breakers listed in the tables above.
18. **For 600 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R3, R5 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.
19. You can use alternative circuit breakers if they meet certain characteristics. For acceptable breakers, refer to Branch Circuit Protection for ABB drives manual supplement (3AXD50000645015 [English]).

Dimensions, weights and free space requirements

Frame	IP21				
	H1	**H2**	**W**	**D**	**Weight**
	mm	**mm**	**mm**	**mm**	**kg**
R1	409	376	155	226	7.0
R2	409	376	155	249	8.4
R3	475	436	173	261	10.8
R4	580	563	203	274	18.6
R5	732	653	203	274	22.8
R6	727	593	252	357	42.2
R7	880	645	284	365	53.0

Frame	IP21				
	H1	H2	W	D	Weight
	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg
R8	965	724	300	386	68.0
R9	955	723	380	413	95.0 [1)]
R9e	1130	-	444 [2)]	516	188.0

1) 98.0 kg for 453A-4, 490A-3 and 477A-5
2) 420 mm without lifting eyes

Frame	UL type 1				
	H1	H2	W	D	Weight
	in	in	in	in	lb
R1	16.11	14.80	6.10	8.89	15
R2	16.11	14.80	6.10	9.80	19
R3	18.71	17.17	6.81	10.28	24
R4	22.85	22.17	7.99	10.79	41
R5	28.80	25.70	7.99	10.77	50
R6	28.60	22.35	9.92	14.10	93
R7	34.66	25.39	11.18	14.35	117
R8	38.01	28.50	11.81	15.21	150
R9	37.59	28.46	14.96	16.27	209 [1)]
R9e	44.49	-	17.47 [2)]	20.31	414

1) 216 lb for 453A-4, 490A-3 and 477A-5.
2) 16.54 in without lifting eyes

Frame	IP55						
	H1	H2	H3	W	W2	D	Weight
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg
R1	450	-	450	162	162	292	8.1
R2	450	-	450	161	161	315	9.5
R3	525	-	525	180	180	327	12.0
R4	580	-	735	203	236	344	19.1
R5	732	-	886	203	236	344	23.4

Frame	IP55						
	H1	H2	H3	W	W2	D	Weight
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg
R6	727	-	884	252	291	421	42.9
R7	880	-	1038	284	324	423	54.0
R8	966	-	1123	300	350	452	74.0
R9	955	-	1187	380	430	477	102.0
R9 [1)]	955	-	1187	380	430	517	108.0
R9e	1130	-	1325	444 [2)]	-	540	191.0

1) drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5
2) 420 mm without lifting eyes

Frame	UL Type 12						
	H1	H2	H3	W	W2	D	Weight
	in	in	in	in	in	in	lb
R1	17.72	-	17.72	6.38	6.38	11.50	18
R2	17.72	-	17.72	6.34	6.34	12.40	21
R3	20.70	-	20.70	7.09	7.09	12.87	26
R4	22.85	-	28.94	7.99	9.29	13.53	42
R5	28.80	-	34.88	7.99	9.29	13.53	52
R6	28.60	-	34.80	9.92	11.46	16.59	95
R7	34.66	-	40.87	11.18	12.76	16.65	119
R8	38.01	-	44.21	11.81	13.78	17.78	163
R9	37.59	-	46.73	14.96	16.93	18.78	225
R9 [1)]	37.59	-	46.73	14.96	16.93	20.35	238
R9e	44.49	-	52.17	17.47 [2)]	18.12	21.26	427

1) drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5
2) 16.54 in without lifting eyes

H1	Height with cable entry box
H2	Height without cable entry box (option +P940)
H3	Height with hood
W	Width with cable entry box

W2 Width with hood

D Depth with cable entry box

For more information on dimensions, refer to chapter Technical data (page 233).

For dimensions and weights of option +P940 and +P944, refer to ACS880…+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

For dimensions of option +C135, refer to ACS880-01…+C135 drives with flange mounting kit supplement (3AXD50000349814 [English]). For the additional weight of the flange mounting kit, refer to the table below.

Frame	Weight of flange mounting kit (option +C135)	
	kg	lb
R1	2.9	6
R2	3.1	7
R3	4.5	10
R4	4.7	10
R5	4.7	10
R6	4.5	10
R7	5	11
R8	6	13
R9	7	15
R9e	8.3	22

Package dimensions

Frame	Package		
	Length	Width	Height
	mm	mm	mm
R1 (IP21)	574	256	281
R1 (IP55)	574	256	364
R2 (IP21)	574	256	304
R2 (IP55)	574	256	386
R3 (IP21)	624	256	316
R3 (IP55)	624	256	399
R4 (IP21)	691	290	329

Frame	Package		
	Length	Width	Height
	mm	mm	mm
R4 (IP55)	691	290	415
R5 (IP21)	896	293	329
R5 (IP55)	896	293	415
R6	870	325	580
R7	992	400	568
R8	1145	485	655
R9	1145	485	655
R9e	679	600	1238

Free space requirements

200 mm (7.87 in) free space is required at top of the drive.

300 mm (11.81 in) free space (when measured from the drive base without the cable entry box) is required at bottom of the drive.

Losses, cooling data and noise

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow		Typical power loss 1)	Noise
		m^3/h	ft^3/min	W	dB(A)
U_n = 230 V					
04A6-2	R1	44	26	61	50
06A6-2	R1	44	26	85	50
07A5-2	R1	44	26	96	50
10A6-2	R1	44	26	149	50
16A8-2	R2	88	52	210	59
24A3-2	R2	88	52	368	59
031A-2	R3	134	79	354	60
046A-2	R4	134	79	541	64
061A-2	R4	280	165	804	64
075A-2	R5	280	165	925	64
087A-2	R5	280	165	1142	64

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow		Typical power loss 1)	Noise
		m³/h	ft³/min	W	dB(A)
115A-2	R6	435	256	1362	68
145A-2	R6	435	256	1935	68
170A-2	R7	450	265	1968	67
206A-2	R7	450	265	2651	67
274A-2	R8	550	324	3448	68
U_n = 400 V					
02A4-3	R1	44	26	43	50
03A3-3	R1	44	26	52	50
04A0-3	R1	44	26	59	50
05A6-3	R1	44	26	78	50
07A2-3	R1	44	26	112	50
09A4-3	R1	44	26	146	50
12A6-3	R1	44	26	217	50
017A-3	R2	88	52	235	59
025A-3	R2	88	52	412	59
032A-3	R3	134	79	400	60
038A-3	R3	134	79	515	60
045A-3	R4	134	79	526	64
061A-3	R4	280	165	818	64
072A-3	R5	280	165	841	64
087A-3	R5	280	165	1129	64
105A-3	R6	435	256	1215	68
145A-3	R6	435	256	1962	68
169A-3	R7	450	265	2042	67
206A-3	R7	450	265	2816	67
246A-3	R8	550	324	3026	68
293A-3	R8	550	324	3630	68
363A-3	R9	1150	677	4688	70
430A-3	R9	1150	677	5797	70
490A-3	R9	1150	677	5831	70

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow		Typical power loss 1)	Noise
		m³/h	ft³/min	W	dB(A)
595A-3	R9e	1207	710	5828	75
670A-3	R9e	1207	710	6801	75
U_n = 500 V					
02A1-5	R1	44	26	42	50
03A0-5	R1	44	26	50	50
03A4-5	R1	44	26	55	50
04A8-5	R1	44	26	71	50
05A2-5	R1	44	26	76	50
07A6-5	R1	44	26	110	50
11A0-5	R1	44	26	180	50
014A-5	R2	88	52	191	59
021A-5	R2	88	52	330	59
027A-5	R3	134	79	326	60
034A-5	R3	134	79	454	60
040A-5	R4	134	79	424	64
052A-5	R4	280	165	600	64
065A-5	R5	280	165	715	64
077A-5	R5	280	165	916	64
096A-5	R6	435	256	1157	68
124A-5	R6	435	256	1673	68
156A-5	R7	450	265	1840	67
180A-5	R7	450	265	2281	67
240A-5	R8	550	324	2912	68
260A-5	R8	550	324	3325	68
302A-5	R9	1150	677	3663	70
361A-5	R9	1150	677	4781	70
414A-5	R9	1150	677	5672	70
477A-5	R9	1150	677	5598	70
585A-5	R9e	1207	710	5648	75
635A-5	R9e	1207	710	6364	75

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow		Typical power loss [1]	Noise
		m^3/h	ft^3/min	W	dB(A)
U_n = 690 V					
07A4-7	R3	134	79	101	60
09A9-7	R3	134	79	128	60
14A3-7	R3	134	79	189	60
019A-7	R3	134	79	271	60
023A-7	R3	134	79	338	60
027A-7	R3	134	79	426	60
035A-7	R5	280	165	416	64
042A-7	R5	280	165	524	64
049A-7	R5	280	165	650	64
061A-7	R6	435	256	852	68
084A-7	R6	435	256	1303	68
098A-7	R7	450	265	1416	67
119A-7	R7	450	265	1881	67
142A-7	R8	550	324	1970	68
174A-7	R8	550	324	2670	68
210A-7	R9	1150	677	2903	70
271A-7	R9	1150	677	4182	70

[1] Typical drive losses when it operates at 90% of the motor nominal frequency and 100% of the motor nominal current.

Cooling air flow and heat dissipation for flange mounting (option +C135)

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow (option +C135)		Heat dissipation (option +C135)	
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m^3/h	m^3/h	W	W
U_n = 230 V					
04A6-2	R1	44	9	36	25
06A6-2	R1	44	9	59	26

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow (option +C135)		Heat dissipation (option +C135)	
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
07A5-2	R1	44	9	70	26
10A6-2	R1	44	9	123	27
16A8-2	R2	88	16	170	39
24A3-2	R2	88	16	324	44
031A-2	R3	134	22	298	56
046A-2	R4	134	32	449	93
061A-2	R4	280	32	690	114
075A-2	R5	280	42	804	121
087A-2	R5	280	42	1002	140
115A-2	R6	435	52	1214	147
145A-2	R6	435	52	1767	168
170A-2	R7	450	75	1790	179
206A-2	R7	450	75	2443	208
274A-2	R8	550	120	3173	274
U_n = 400 V					
02A4-3	R1	44	9	18	25
03A3-3	R1	44	9	27	25
04A0-3	R1	44	9	34	25
05A6-3	R1	44	9	52	26
07A2-3	R1	44	9	86	26
09A4-3	R1	44	9	120	27
12A6-3	R1	44	9	189	28
017A-3	R2	88	16	196	40
025A-3	R2	88	16	367	45
032A-3	R3	134	22	343	57
038A-3	R3	134	22	451	64
045A-3	R4	134	32	436	90
061A-3	R4	280	32	704	114

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow (option +C135)		Heat dissipation (option +C135)	
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m^3/h	m^3/h	W	W
072A-3	R5	280	42	726	115
087A-3	R5	280	42	988	141
105A-3	R6	435	52	1075	140
145A-3	R6	435	52	1798	164
169A-3	R7	450	75	1853	189
206A-3	R7	450	75	2593	223
246A-3	R8	550	120	2766	261
293A-3	R8	550	120	3317	313
363A-3	R9	1150	170	4286	401
430A-3	R9	1150	170	5332	465
490A-3	R9	1150	170	5190	713
595A-3	R9e	840	367	11831	769
670A-3	R9e	840	367	13419	781
U_n = 500 V					
02A1-5	R1	44	9	17	25
03A0-5	R1	44	9	25	25
03A4-5	R1	44	9	29	25
04A8-5	R1	44	9	45	26
05A2-5	R1	44	9	51	26
07A6-5	R1	44	9	84	26
11A0-5	R1	44	9	153	27
014A-5	R2	88	16	152	38
021A-5	R2	88	16	288	42
027A-5	R3	134	22	273	53
034A-5	R3	134	22	394	60
040A-5	R4	134	32	340	84
052A-5	R4	280	32	501	99
065A-5	R5	280	42	609	106

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow (option +C135)		Heat dissipation (option +C135)	
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
077A-5	R5	280	42	792	124
096A-5	R6	435	52	1019	137
124A-5	R6	435	52	1521	153
156A-5	R7	450	75	1662	178
180A-5	R7	450	75	2083	198
240A-5	R8	550	120	2659	253
260A-5	R8	550	120	3050	274
302A-5	R9	1150	170	3311	352
361A-5	R9	1150	170	4379	403
414A-5	R9	1150	170	5217	455
477A-5	R9	1150	170	5256	778
585A-5	R9e	840	367	11731	869
635A-5	R9e	840	367	13305	895
U_n = 690 V					
07A4-7	R3	134	22	60	41
09A9-7	R3	134	22	87	42
14A3-7	R3	134	22	146	43
019A-7	R3	134	22	226	45
023A-7	R3	134	22	290	47
027A-7	R3	134	22	376	50
035A-7	R5	280	42	337	78
042A-7	R5	280	42	440	84
049A-7	R5	280	42	560	90
061A-7	R6	435	52	729	122
084A-7	R6	435	52	1173	130
098A-7	R7	450	75	1276	140
119A-7	R7	450	75	1730	151
142A-7	R8	550	120	1797	173

ACS880-01-...	Frame	Air flow (option +C135)		Heat dissipation (option +C135)	
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
174A-7	R8	550	120	2476	194
210A-7	R9	1150	170	2612	291
271A-7	R9	1150	170	3853	329

Connector and entry data for the power cables

IEC

Input, motor, resistor and DC cable terminal screw sizes, accepted wire sizes (per phase) and tightening torques (*T*) are given below. *l* denotes stripping length inside the connector.

Frame	Cable entries		L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W				Grounding terminals	
	pcs	Ø *	Wire size	*T* (wire screw)		*l*	Max. wire size	*T*
		mm	mm²	M...	N·m	mm	mm²	N·m
R1	2	17	0.75…6	-	0.6	8	25	1.8
R2	2	17	0.75…6	-	0.6	8	25	1.8
R3	2	21	0.5…16	-	1.7	10	25	1.8
R4	2	24	0.5…35	-	3.3	18	25	2.9
R5	2	35	6…70	M8	15	18	35	2.9
R6	2	45	25…150	M10	30	30	185	9.8
R7	2	54	95…240 (25…150**)	M10	40 (30**)	30	185	9.8
R8	4	45	2 × (50…150)	M10	40	30	2×185	9.8
R9	4	54	2 × (95…240)	M12	70	30	2×185	9.8
R9e	3	54	3 × (120…240)	M10	30-50 1)	30	3×120	16

1) Refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer.

Frame	Cable entries		R-, R+/UDC+ and UDC- terminals			
	pcs	Ø *	Wire size	*T* (wire screw)		*l*
		mm	mm²	M…	N·m	mm
R1	1	17	0.75…6	-	0.6	8
R2	1	17	0.75…6	-	0.6	8
R3	1	17	0.5…16	-	1.7	10
R4	1	24	0.5…35	-	3.3	18
R5	1	35	6…70	M8	15	18
R6	1	35	25…95	M8	20	30
R7	1	43	25…150	M10	30	30
R8	2	45	2 × (50…150)	M10	40	30
R9	2	54	2 × (95…240)	M12	70	30
R9e	2	45	3 × (120…240)	M10	30–50 1)	30

1) Refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer.

* maximum cable diameter accepted. For the entry plate hole diameters, refer to Dimension drawings.

** 525…690 V drives

Note:

- The minimum specified wire size does not necessarily have sufficient current carrying capacity at maximum load.
- The terminals do not accept a conductor that is one size larger than the maximum specified wire size.
- For frames R1…R7: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 1. For frames R8 and R9: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 2.
- When you use a cable size smaller than what is accepted by the terminal, remove the terminal and use suitable cable lugs for connecting the cable directly under the head of the bolt.

UL

Input, motor, resistor and DC cable terminal screw sizes, accepted wire sizes (per phase) and tightening torques (*T*) in US units are given below. *l* denotes stripping length inside the connector

Frame	Cable entries		L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W				Grounding terminals	
	pcs	Ø *	Wire size	*T* (Wire screw)		*l*	Max. wire size	*T*
		in	kcmil/AWG	M…	lbf·ft	in	AWG	lbf·ft
R1	2	0.67	14…10	-	0.44	0.31	4	1.3
R2	2	0.67	14…10	-	0.44	0.31	4	1.3
R3	2	0.83	20…6	-	1.25	0.39	4	1.3
R4	2	0.94	20…2	-	2.4	0.70	4	2.1
R5	2	1.37	6…1/0	M8	11.0	0.70	2	2.1
R6	2	1.77	4…300 MCM	M10	22.1	1.18	350 MCM	7.2
R7	2	2.13	3/0…400 MCM (4…300 MCM**)	M10	29.5 (22.1**)	1.18	350 MCM	7.2
R8	4	1.77	2 × (1/0…300 MCM)	M10	29.5	1.18	2 × 350 MCM	7.2
R9	4	2.13	2 × (3/0…500 MCM)	M12	51.6	1.18	2 × 350 MCM	7.2
R9e	3	2.13	3 × (300…500 MCM)	M10	22.1-36.9 [1)]	1.18	3 × 300 MCM	11.8

1) Refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer.

Frame	Cable entries		R-, R+/UDC+ and UDC- terminals			
	pcs	Ø *	Wire size	*T* (wire screw)		*l*
		in	kcmil/AWG	M…	lbf·ft	in
R1	1	0.67	14…10	-	0.44	0.31
R2	1	0.67	14…10	-	0.44	0.31
R3	1	0.67	20…6	-	1.25	0.39
R4	1	0.94	20…2	-	2.4	0.70
R5	1	1.37	6…1/0	M8	11.0	1.18
R6	1	1.38	4…3/0	M8	14.8	1.18
R7	1	1.69	4…300 MCM	M10	22,1	1.18
R8	2	1.77	2 × (1/0…300 MCM)	M10	29.5	1.18
R9	2	2.13	2 × (3/0…500 MCM)	M12	51.6	1.18
R9e	2	2.13	3 × (300…500 MCM)	M10	22.1-36.9 [1)]	1.18

1) Refer to the instructions of the cable lug manufacturer.

* maximum cable diameter accepted. Cable connector inside diameter: 3/4” (frames R1 and R2), 1” (R3). For the entry plate hole diameters, refer to Dimension drawings.

** 525…690 V drives

Note:

- The minimum specified wire size does not necessarily have sufficient current carrying capacity at maximum load.
- For IEC installations using mm^2 cable, the terminals do not accept a conductor that is one size larger than the recommended wire size. For NEC installations using AWG cable, this applies only to the R2 frame drive.
- For frames R1…R7: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 1. For frames R8 and R9: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 2.

Connector data for the control cables

Refer to chapter Control unit.

Typical power cables

The table below gives typical copper and aluminum cable types with concentric copper shield for the drives with nominal current. For terminal and entry data for power cables, refer to Connector and entry data for the power cables (page 301).

Note: Aluminum cables are not allowed in NEC installations.

Drive type ACS880-01-…	Frame size	IEC 1)		UL (NEC) 2)
		Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type
		mm^2	mm^2	AWG/kcmil
U_n = 230 V				
04A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14
06A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14
07A5-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14
10A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14
16A8-2	R2	3×6	-	10
24A3-2	R2	3×6	-	8
031A-2	R3	3×10	-	8
046A-2	R4	3×16	-	6
061A-2	R4	3×25	-	4

Drive type ACS880-01-...	Frame size	IEC 1)		UL (NEC) 2)
		Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type
		mm²	mm²	AWG/kcmil
075A-2	R5	3×35	3×50	3
087A-2	R5	3×35	3×70	2
115A-2	R6	3×50	3×70	1/0
145A-2	R6	3×95	3×120	3/0
170A-2	R7	3×120	3×150	4/0
206A-2	R7	3×150	3x240	300 MCM
274A-2	R8	2 × (3x95) 3)	2 × (3×120)	2 × 2/0
U_n = 400 V				
02A4-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
03A3-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
04A0-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
05A6-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
07A2-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
09A4-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
12A6-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14
017A-3	R2	3x6	-	10
025A-3	R2	3x6	-	10
032A-3	R3	3x10	-	8
038A-3	R3	3x10	-	8
045A-3	R4	3x16	-	6
061A-3	R4	3x25	-	4
072A-3	R5	3x35	3x50	3
087A-3	R5	3x35	3x70	3
105A-3	R6	3x50	3x70	1
145A-3	R6	3x95	3x120	2/0
169A-3	R7	3x120	3x150	3/0
206A-3	R7	3x150	3x240	250 MCM
246A-3	R8	2 × (3x70) 3)	2 × (3x95)	300 MCM
293A-3	R8	2 × (3x95) 3)	2 × (3x120)	2 × 3/0

Drive type ACS880-01-...	Frame size	IEC 1)		UL (NEC) 2)
		Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type
		mm^2	mm^2	AWG/kcmil
363A-3	R9	2 × (3x120)	2 × (3x185)	2 × 4/0
430A-3	R9	2 × (3x150)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 250 MCM
490A-3	R9	2 × (3x240)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 500 MCM
595A-3	R9e	3 × (3×120)	3 × (3×185)	3 x 300 MCM
670A-3	R9e	3 × (3×150)	3 × (3×240)	3 x 350 MCM
U_n = 500 V				
02A1-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
03A0-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
03A4-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
04A8-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
05A2-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
07A6-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
11A0-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
014A-5	R2	3x6	-	10
021A-5	R2	3x6	-	10
027A-5	R3	3x10	-	8
034A-5	R3	3x10	-	8
040A-5	R4	3x16	-	6
052A-5	R4	3x25	-	4
065A-5	R5	3x35	3x35	4
077A-5	R5	3x35	3x50	3
096A-5	R6	3x50	3x70	1/0
124A-5	R6	3x95	3x95	2/0
156A-5	R7	3x120	3x150	3/0
180A-5	R7	3x150	3x185	4/0
240A-5	R8	2 × (3x70) 3)	2 × (3x95)	2 × 1/0 or 350 MCM
260A-5	R8	2 × (3x70) 3)	2 × (3x95)	2 × 2/0
302A-5	R9	2 × (3x95)	2 × (3x120)	2 × 3/0
361A-5	R9	2 × (3x120)	2 × (3x185)	2 × 4/0

Drive type ACS880-01-...	Frame size	IEC 1)		UL (NEC) 2)
		Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type
		mm²	mm²	AWG/kcmil
414A-5	R9	2 × (3x150)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 300 MCM
477A-5	R9	2 × (3×240)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 500 MCM
585A-5	R9e	3 × (3×120)	3 × (3×185)	3 x 300 MCM
635A-5	R9e	3 × (3×150)	3 × (3×240)	3 x 350 MCM
U_n = 690 V				
07A4-7	R3	3x1.5	-	14
09A9-7	R3	3x1.5	-	14
14A3-7	R3	3x2.5	-	12
019A-7	R3	3x4	-	10
023A-7	R3	3x6	-	10
027A-7	R3	3x10	-	8
035A-7	R5	3x10	3x25	6
042A-7	R5	3x16	3x25	6
049A-7	R5	3x16	3x25	6
061A-7	R6	3x25	3x35	4
084A-7	R6	3x35	3x50	3
098A-7	R7	3x50	3x70	1/0
119A-7	R7	3x70	3x95	2/0
142A-7	R8	3x95 3)	3x120	3/0
174A-7	R8	3x120 3)	3x150	4/0
210A-7	R9	3x185	2 × (3x95)	350 MCM
271A-7	R9	3x240	2 × (3x120)	500 MCM

1) The cable selection is based on max. 9 cables laid on a cable ladder side by side, three ladder type trays one on top of the other, ambient temperature 30 °C (86 °F) PVC insulation, surface temperature 70 °C (158 °F) (EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-52). For other conditions, select the cables according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the load current of the drive.

2) The cable selection is based on NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires, 75 °C (167 °F) wire insulation at 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature. Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable or earth (directly buried). For other conditions, dimension the cables according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the load current of the drive.

3) The biggest cable size accepted by the connection terminals of frame R8 is 2 × (3×150) or 2 × 4/0. In IEC installations, the biggest possible cable size is 3x240 or 400 MCM if the terminal type is changed and the cable entry box is not used.

Refer to Connector and entry data for the power cables (page 301) for the accepted cable sizes of the drive.

Temperature: For IEC, select a cable rated for at least 70 °C maximum permissible temperature of conductor in continuous use. For North America, power cables must be rated for 75 °C (167 °F) or higher.

Voltage: 600 V AC cable is accepted for up to 500 V AC. 750 V AC cable is accepted for up to 600 V AC. 1000 V AC cable is accepted for up to 690 V AC.

Electrical power network specification

Voltage (U_1)	ACS880-01-xxxx-2 drives: 208 … 240 V AC 3-phase +10%…-15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3~230 V AC. ACS880-01-xxxx-3 drives: 380 … 415 V AC 3-phase +10%…-15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3~400 V AC. ACS880-01-xxxx-5 drives: 380 … 500 V AC 3-phase +10%…-15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3~400/480/500 V AC. ACS880-01-xxxx-7 drives: 525 … 690 V AC 3-phase +10%…-15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3~525/600/690 V AC.
Network type	TN (grounded) and IT (ungrounded) systems. However, 690 V drives must not be installed on corner-grounded or midpoint-grounded delta systems.
Rated conditional short-circuit current *I*cc (IEC 61439-1)	Maximum allowable prospective short-circuit current is 65 kA when protected by fuses given in the fuse tables.
Short-circuit current protection rating (UL 61800-5-1, CSA C22.2 No.274-17)	US and Canada: The drive is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA symmetrical amperes rms at 600 V maximum when protected by fuses given in the fuse table.
Frequency (f_1)	50/60 Hz, variation ± 5%, maximum rate of change 17%/s
Imbalance	Max. ± 3% of nominal phase to phase input voltage
Fundamental power factor (cos phi$_1$)	0.98 (at nominal load)

Motor connection data

Motor types	Asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors and ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors)

Voltage (U_2)	0 to U_1, 3-phase symmetrical. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical output voltage level as 3 0… U_1, U_{max} at the field weakening point.
Frequency (f_2)	0…598 Hz For drives with du/dt filter: 0…120 Hz For drives with sine filter: 0…120 Hz
Current	Refer to Electrical ratings (page 234).
Maximum recommended motor cable length	Frames R1…R3: 150 m (492 ft) Frames R4 to R9 and R9e: 300 m (984 ft) With motor cables longer than 150 m (492 ft) or switching frequencies higher than default, the EMC Directive requirements may not be fulfilled. **Note:** Longer motor cables cause a motor voltage decrease which limits the available motor power. The decrease depends on the motor cable length and characteristics. A sine filter (optional) at the drive output also causes voltage decrease. Contact ABB for more information.

Efficiency

Approximately 98% at nominal power level.

The efficiency is not calculated according to the ecodesign standard IEC 61800-9-2.

Energy efficiency data (ecodesign)

Energy efficiency data according to IEC 61800-9-2 is available from the ecodesign tool (https://ecodesign.drivesmotors.abb.com). The drive complies with the IE efficiency class IE2.

Protection classes

Degree of protection (IEC/EN 60529)	IP21, IP55. Option +P940 and +P944: IP20
Enclosure type (UL 50/50E)	UL Type 1, UL Type 12. Option +P940: UL Open Type. For indoor use only.
Overvoltage category (IEC 60664-1)	III
Protective class (IEC/EN 61800-5-1)	I

Ambient conditions

Environmental limits for the drive, including installed options, are given below. Use the drive in a heated, indoor, controlled environment.

	Operation installed for stationary use	**Storage** in the package	**Transportation** in the package
Installation site altitude	0 to 4000 m (13123 ft) above sea level 1) Above 1000 m (3281 ft) 2): refer to section Deratings (page 243).	-	-
Air temperature	-15 to +55 °C (5 to 131 °F) 3). No frost allowed. Refer to section Deratings (page 243).	-40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)	-40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)
Relative humidity	5 to 95%	Max. 95%	Max. 95%
	No condensation allowed. Maximum allowed relative humidity is 60% 4) in the presence of corrosive gases.		
Contamination	IEC 60721-3-3:2019, ISO 9223 ANSI-ISA 71.04	IEC 60721-3-1:1997	IEC 60721-3-2:1997

Chemical gases	**IP00, IP20 and IP21 drives:** IEC Class C3 ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class G2	Class 1C2	Class 2C2
	IP55 drives: IEC Class C4 ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class G3/GX up to 2300 Å/30d corrosivity		
	Drives with +P968 corrosion resistance variant: IEC Class C5/CX ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class GX up to 8000 Å/30d corrosivity	Class 1S3	Class 2S2
	Conformal coated circuit boards as standard on all drives		
Solid particles	Class 3S2. No conductive dust allowed.	Class 1S3 if the package is Class 2S2, otherwise Class 1S2	Class 2S2
Pollution degree IEC/EN 60664-1	2		
Atmospheric pressure	70 to 106 kPa 0.7 to 1.05 atmospheres	70 to 106 kPa 0.7 to 1.05 atmospheres	60 to 106 kPa 0.6 to 1.05 atmospheres
Vibration EN 60068-2-6:2008	Max. 1 mm (0.04 in) (5 to 13.2 Hz), max. 7 m/s^2 (23 ft/s^2) (13.2 to 100 Hz) sinusoidal	Max. 1 mm (0.04 in) (5 to 13.2 Hz), max. 7 m/s^2 (23 ft/s^2) (13.2 to 100 Hz) sinusoidal	Max. 3.5 mm (0.14 in) (2 to 9 Hz), max. 15 m/s^2 (49 ft/s^2) (9 to 200 Hz) sinusoidal
Vibration (ISTA)	-	R1…R5 (ISTA 1A): Displacement, 25 mm peak to peak, 14200 vibratory impacts R6…R9 (ISTA 3E): Random, overall Grms level of 0.54	

<table>
<tr>
<td>Shock/Drop (ISTA)</td>
<td>Not allowed</td>
<td>R1…R5 (ISTA 1A):
Drop, 6 faces, 3 edges and 1 corner
<table>
<tr><th>Weight range</th><th>mm</th><th>in</th></tr>
<tr><td>0…10 kg (0…22 lb)</td><td>760</td><td>29.9</td></tr>
<tr><td>10…19 kg (22…42 lb)</td><td>610</td><td>24.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>19…28 kg (42…62 lb)</td><td>460</td><td>18.1</td></tr>
<tr><td>28…41 kg (62…90 lb)</td><td>340</td><td>13.4</td></tr>
</table>
R6…R9 (ISTA 3E):
Shock, incline impact: 1.2 m/s (3.94 ft/s)
Shock, rotational edge drop: 230 mm (7.9 in)</td>
<td>With packing max. 100 m/s^2 (330 ft/s^2), 11 ms</td>
</tr>
</table>

1) For neutral-grounded TN and TT systems and non-corner grounded IT systems.

2) For corner-grounded TN, TT and IT systems.

3) IP55 drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998) have different air temperature limits. Refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

4) Contact ABB for higher humidity levels than 60% in the presence of corrosive gases.

Storage conditions

Store the drive in humidity-controlled enclosed environments. Keep the drive in its package.

Colors

Drive enclosure: NCS 1502-Y (RAL 9002 / PMS 1C Cool Grey) and RAL 9017.

Materials

Drive

Refer to Recycling instructions and environmental information for ACS880-01 drives (3AUA0000149383 [English]).

Package materials for small wall-mounted drives and converter modules

- Cardboard

- Molded pulp
- EPP (foam)
- PP (strapping)
- PE (plastic bag).

Package materials for large wall-mounted drives and converter modules

- Cardboard heavy duty quality with wet strength glue
- Plywood
- Wood
- PP (strapping)
- PE (VCI foil)
- Metal (fixing clamps, screws).

Package materials for options, accessories and spare parts

- Cardboard
- Kraft paper
- PP (straps)
- PE (film, bubble wrap)
- Plywood, wood (only for heavy components)

The materials vary by item type, size, and shape. The typical package is a cardboard box with paper filling or bubble wrap. ESD-safe packaging is used for printed circuit boards and similar items.

Materials of manuals

Printed product manuals are made of recyclable paper.

Disposal

The main parts of the product can be recycled to preserve natural resources and energy. Product parts and materials should be dismantled and separated.

In general, all metals, such as steel, aluminum, copper, and its alloys, and precious metals can be recycled. Plastics, rubber, cardboard, and other packaging materials can be used in energy recovery.

Printed circuit boards and DC capacitors require selective treatment according to IEC 62635 guidelines.

To aid recycling, most plastic parts are marked with an appropriate identification code. Components that contain Substances of Very High Concern (SVHCs) are listed in the European Chemicals Agency SCIP database. SCIP is the database for information on Substances of Concern in articles as such or in complex objects (products) established under the Waste Framework Directive (2008/98/EC). For more information, contact your local ABB distributor or consult the European Chemicals Agency SCIP database to determine which SVHCs are used in the product and where the components are located.

Contact your local ABB distributor for more information on environmental aspects. End-of-life treatment must obey international and national regulations.

For more information on ABB end-of-life services, refer to new.abb.com/service/end-of-life-services.

Applicable standards

The drive complies with the following standards. The compliance with the European Low Voltage Directive is verified according to standard EN 61800-5-1.	
IEC/EN 61800-3:2004 + A1:2012	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 3: EMC requirements and specific test methods
EN 61800-5-1:2007 + A1:2017 + A11:2021 IEC 61800-5-1:2007 + Amd1:2016	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 5-1: Safety requirements – Electrical, thermal and energy
IEC 61800-5-2:2016 EN 61800-5-2:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 5-2: Safety requirements – Functional
IEC 61800-9-2:2023	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 9-2: Ecodesign for power drive systems, motor starters, power electronics and their driven applications – Energy efficiency indicators for power drive systems and motor starters
IEC 61508-1:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems - Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61508-2:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems - Part 2: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems
EN 62061:2005 +AC:2010 +A1:2013 + A2:2015	Safety of machinery. Functional safety of safety-related electrical, electronic and programmable electronic control systems
EN/ISO 13849-1:2015	Safety of machinery — Safety-related parts of control systems — Part 1: General principles for design
EN/ISO 13849-2:2012	Safety of machinery — Safety-related parts of control systems — Part 2: Validation

IEC 60146-1-1:2009 EN 60146-1-1:2010	Semiconductor converters – General requirements and line commutated converters – Part 1-1: Specification of basic requirements
EN 60204-1:2006 + A1 2009 + AC:2010	Safety of machinery. Electrical equipment of machines. Part 1: General requirements. Provisions for compliance: The final assembler of the machine is responsible for installing: • emergency-stop device • supply disconnecting device
EN 60529:1991 + A2:2013	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
IEC 60664-1:2007	Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems. Part 1: Principles, requirements and tests
EN 50581:2012	Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances
IEC/EN 63000:2018	Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances
UL 61800-5-1: First Edition	Standard for Safety, Adjustable Speed Electrical Power Drive Systems – Part 5-1: Safety Requirements – Electrical, Thermal and Energy
CSA C22.2 No. 274-17	Adjustable speed drives
CSA C22.2 No. 22-10	General Requirements - Canadian Electrical Code, Part II

Markings

These markings are attached to the drive:

	CE mark The product complies with the applicable European Union legislation. For fulfilling the EMC requirements, refer to the additional information concerning the drive EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3).

	TÜV Safety Approved mark (functional safety) The product contains Safe torque off and possibly other (optional) safety functions that are certified by TÜV according to the relevant functional safety standards. Applicable to drives and inverters; not applicable to supply, brake, or DC/DC converter units or modules.

	UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) mark The product complies with the applicable United Kingdom legislation (Statutory Instruments). Marking is required for products being placed on the market in Great Britain (England, Wales, and Scotland).

	UL Listed mark for USA and Canada The product was tested and evaluated against the relevant North American standards by the Underwriters Laboratories. The marking is valid for rated voltages of up to 600 V.
	CSA certification mark for USA and Canada Product has been tested and evaluated against the relevant North American standards by the CSA Group. Valid with rated voltages up to 600 V.
	RCM mark The product complies with the regulations in Australia and New Zealand specific to EMC, telecommunications, and electrical safety. To comply with the EMC requirements, refer to the additional information on drive EMC compliance (IEC/EN¯61800-3).
	EAC (Eurasian Conformity) mark The product complies with the technical regulations of the Eurasian Customs Union. The EAC mark is required in Russia, Belarus, and Kazakhstan.
	KC mark The product complies with the Korean Registration of Broadcasting and Communications Equipment Clause 3, Article 58-2 of Radio Waves Act.
	Electronic Information Products (EIP) symbol including an Environment Friendly Use Period (EFUP). The product complies with the People’s Republic of China Electronic Industry Standard (SJ/T 11364-2014) about hazardous substances. The EFUP is 20 years. China RoHS II Declaration of Conformity is available from https://library.abb.com.
	WEEE mark At the end of its life, the product should enter the recycling system at an appropriate collection point and not be placed in the normal waste stream.

EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3)

Definitions

EMC stands for Electromagnetic Compatibility. It is the ability of electrical/electronic equipment to operate without problems within an electromagnetic environment. Likewise, the equipment must not disturb or interfere with any other product or system within its locality.

The first environment includes establishments connected to a low-voltage network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

The second environment includes establishments connected to a network that do not supply domestic premises.

Drive of Category C1: Drive with a rated voltage of less than 1000 V that is intended for use in the first environment.

Drive of Category C2: Drive with a rated voltage of less than 1000 V that is intended to be installed and started up only by a professional when used in the first environment.

Note: A professional is a person or organization with the necessary skills to install or start power drive systems, and includes their EMC aspects.

Drive of Category C3: Drive with a rated voltage of less than 1000 V that is intended for use in the second environment and not intended for use in the first environment.

Drive of Category C4: Drive with a rated voltage equal to or more than 1000 V, or a rated current equal to or more than 400 A, or intended for use in complex systems in the second environment.

Category C2

The emission limits are complied with the following provisions:

1. The drive is equipped with EMC filter +E202.
2. The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
3. The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
4. For the maximum motor cable length, see section Motor connection data.

WARNING The drive may cause radio interference if used in residential or domestic environment. The user is required to take measures to prevent interference, in association to the requirements for the CE compliance listed above, if necessary.

Note: Note: Do not install a drive with the EMC filter +E202 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.

Note: Do not install a drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.
If you install the drive to any other system than symmetrically grounded TN-S system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or the ground-to-phase varistor. See ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).

Category C3

The drive complies with the standard with the following provisions:

- The drive is equipped with EMC filter +E200 or +E201.

  Note: With filter +E201, 230 V, 400 V and 500 V frames R1...R5 and 690 V frames R3, R5 and R6 comply with category C4 only.

- The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
- The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
- For the maximum motor cable length, see section Motor connection data.

WARNING Drive of category C3 is not intended to be used on a low-voltage public network which supplies domestic premises. Radio frequency interference is expected if the drive is used on such a network.

Note: Do not install a drive with the EMC filter +E200 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.

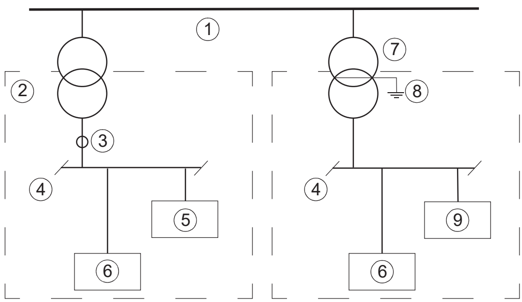
Note: Do not install a drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.
If you install the drive to any other system than symmetrically grounded TN-S system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or the ground-to-phase varistor. Refer to ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).

Category C4

The drive complies with the C4 category with these provisions:

1. It is made sure that no excessive emission is propagated to neighboring low-voltage networks. In some cases, the natural suppression in transformers

and cables is sufficient. If in doubt, a supply transformer with static screening between the primary and secondary windings can be used.



1	Medium voltage network	6	Equipment
2	Neighboring network	7	Supply transformer
3	Point of measurement	8	Static screen
4	Low voltage	9	Drive
5	Equipment (victim)	-	-

2. An EMC plan for preventing disturbances is drawn up for the installation. A template is available in Technical guide No. 3 EMC compliant installation and configuration for a power drive system (3AFE61348280 [English]).

3. The motor and control cables are selected, and routed according to the electrical planning guidelines of the drive. The EMC recommendations are obeyed.

4. The drive is installed according to its installation instructions. The EMC recommendations are obeyed.

NOTICE To prevent radio-frequency interference, do not use a drive of category C4 on a low-voltage public network that supplies domestic premises.

UL checklist

WARNING Operation of this drive requires detailed installation and operation instructions provided in the hardware and software manuals. The manuals are provided in electronic format, in the drive package or on the Internet. Keep the manuals with the drive at all times. Hard copies of the manuals can be ordered through the manufacturer.

- Make sure that the drive type designation label includes the applicable marking.

- **DANGER** Risk of electric shock. After you disconnect the input power, always wait for 5 minutes to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge before you start work on the drive, motor, or motor cable.

- Use the drive in a heated, indoor, controlled environment. Install the drive in clean air according to the enclosure classification. The cooling air must be clean, free from corrosive materials, and electrically conductive dust. The UL Type 12 enclosure provides protection from airborne dust, light water sprays, and splashing water from all directions.
- The maximum surrounding air temperature is 40 °C at the rated output current. The output current is derated for 40…55 °C.
- The drive is suitable for use in a circuit that can deliver no more than 100 kA rms symmetrical amperes, at 600 V maximum when it is protected by the UL fuses given in the technical data.
- The drive is suitable for use in a circuit that can deliver no more than 65 kA rms symmetrical amperes, at 600 V maximum when it is protected by the UL circuit breakers given in the technical data.
- The cables located within the motor circuit must be rated for at least 75 °C.
- The input cable must be protected with fuses or circuit breakers. These protective devices provide branch circuit protection that complies with the national regulations (National Electrical Code (NEC) or Canadian Electrical Code). Obey all applicable local or provincial codes.

  Suitable UL fuses are listed in Fuses (UL) (page 275) and circuit breakers in Circuit breakers (UL) (page 285).

  WARNING An open branch-circuit protective device can be an indication that a fault current was interrupted. To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, examine all current-carrying parts and other components of the device and replace them if they are damaged.

- The integral solid-state short-circuit protection of the drive does not provide branch circuit protection. Branch circuit protection must be provided as specified in the National Electrical Code and any additional local codes.
- The drive provides motor overload protection. The protection is not enabled when the drive leaves the ABB factory. To enable the protection, refer to the firmware manual.
- The drive overvoltage category according to IEC 60664-1 is III.
- To maintain the environmental integrity of the enclosure, replace the cable grommets with field-installed industrial conduit hubs or closure plates required by the enclosure type (or better).

Approvals

The drive is marine type approved. For more information, refer to ACS880-01…, ACS880-04…, ACS880-11…, ACS880-31…, ACS880-14… and ACS880-34… +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]).

Design lifetime expectancy

The design lifetime expectancy of the drive and its overall components exceeds ten (10) years in normal operating environments. In some cases, the drive can last 20 years or more. To achieve a long lifetime for the product the manufacturer’s instructions for sizing the drive, installation, operational conditions and preventive maintenance schedule shall be followed.

Disclaimers

Generic disclaimer

The manufacturer shall have no obligation with respect to any product which (i) has been improperly repaired or altered; (ii) has been subjected to misuse, negligence or accident; (iii) has been used in a manner contrary to the manufacturer’s instructions; or (iv) has failed as a result of ordinary wear and tear.

Cyber security disclaimer

This product is designed to be connected to and to communicate information and data via a network interface. It is the Customer's sole responsibility to provide and continuously ensure a secure connection between the product and the Customer network or any other network (as the case may be). The Customer shall establish and maintain any appropriate measures (such as but not limited to the installation of firewalls, application of authentication measures, encryption of data, installation of anti-virus programs, etc.) to protect the product, the network, its system and the interface against any kind of security breaches, unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information.

ABB and its affiliates are not liable for damages and/or losses related to such security breaches, any unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information.

Declarations of conformity

Link to Declaration of conformity according to EU Machinery Directive 2006/42/EU (3AXD10000099646)

Link to Declaration of conformity according to UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 (3AXD10001329538)

14

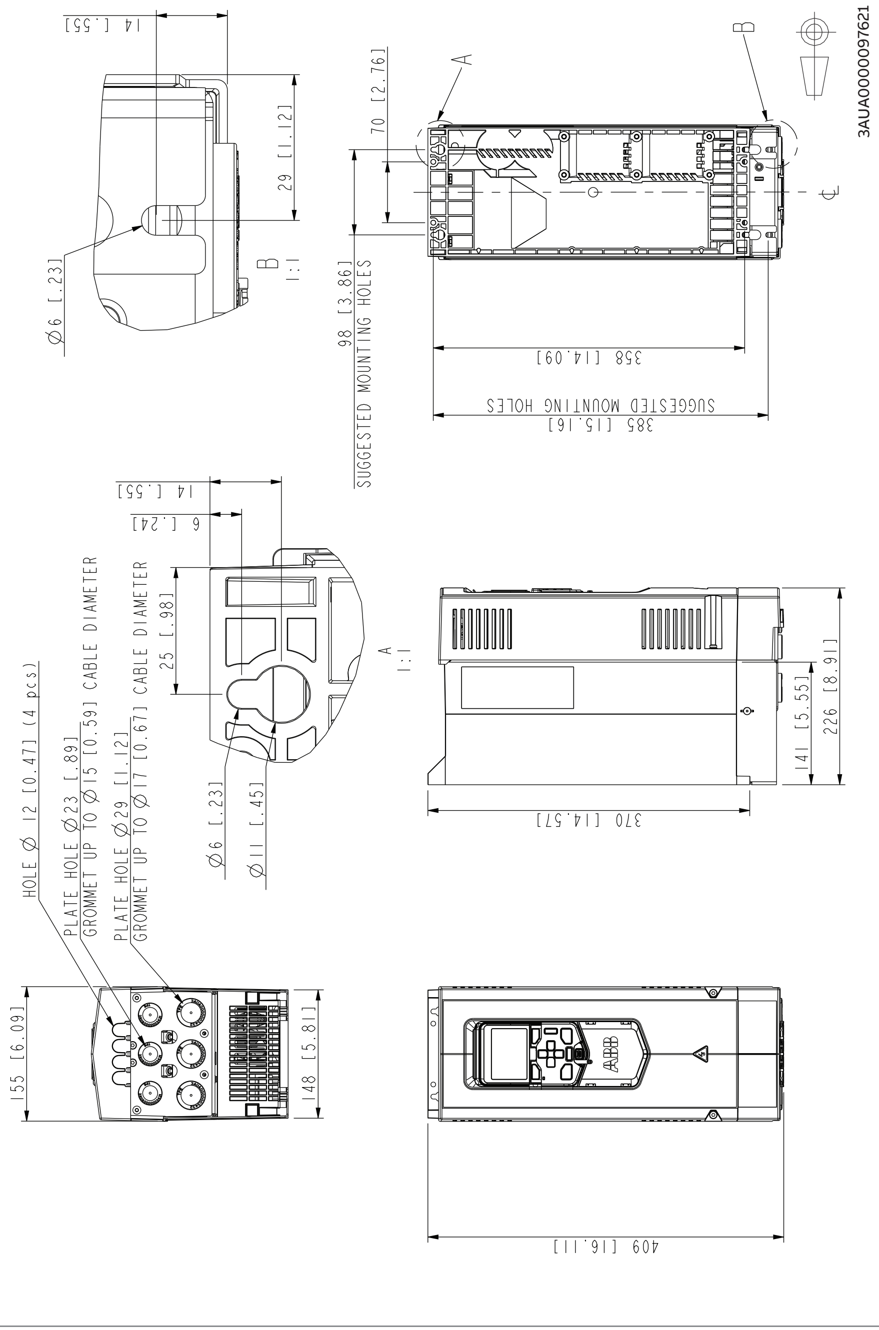
Dimension drawings

Contents of this chapter

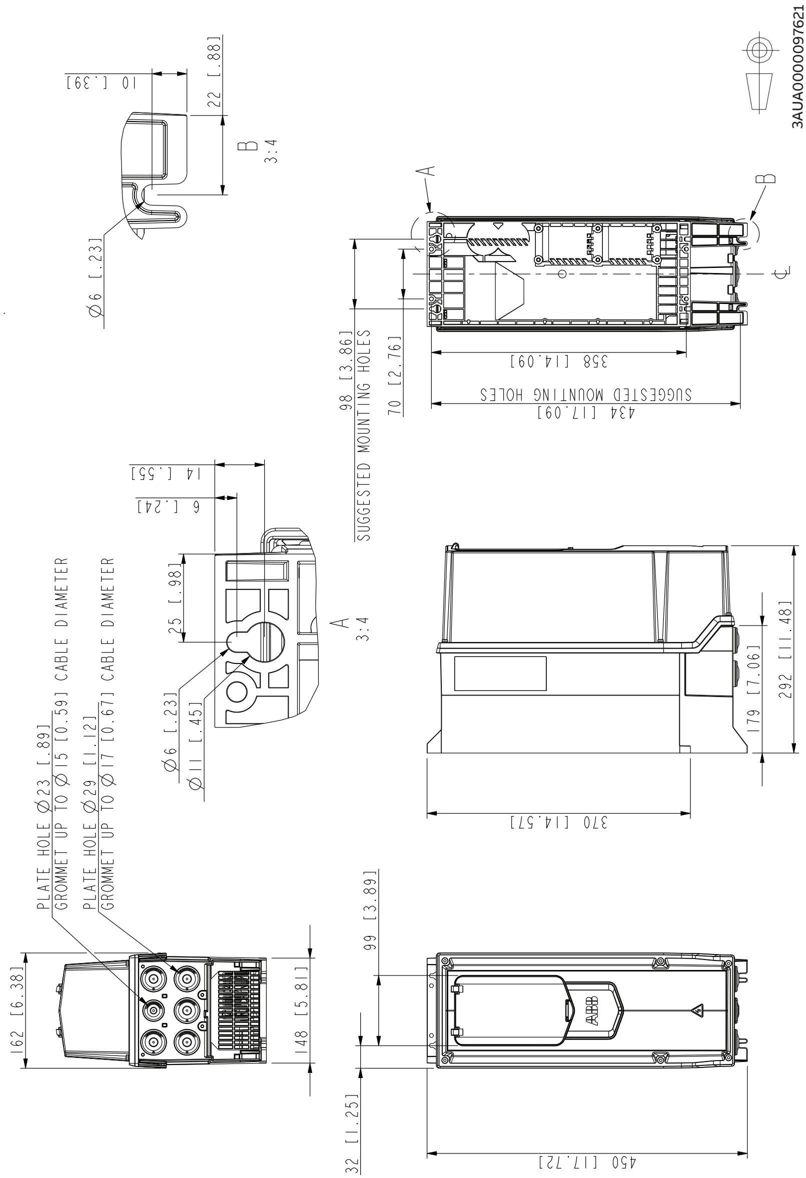
This chapter contains dimension drawings of the standard drive (IP21, UL Type 1) and drive with option +B056 (IP55, UL Type 12).

For dimension drawings with options +P940 and +P944 (IP20, UL Open Type), see ACS880…+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

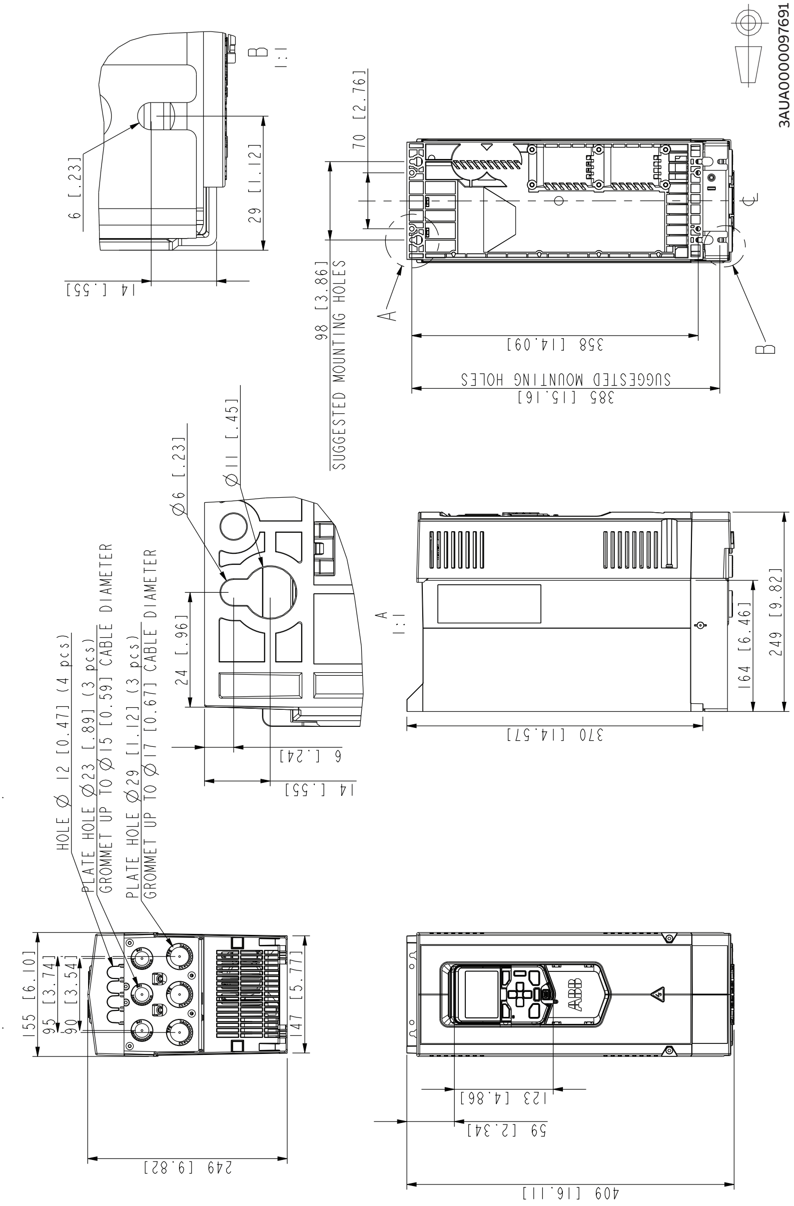
Frame R1, IP21 (UL Type 1)



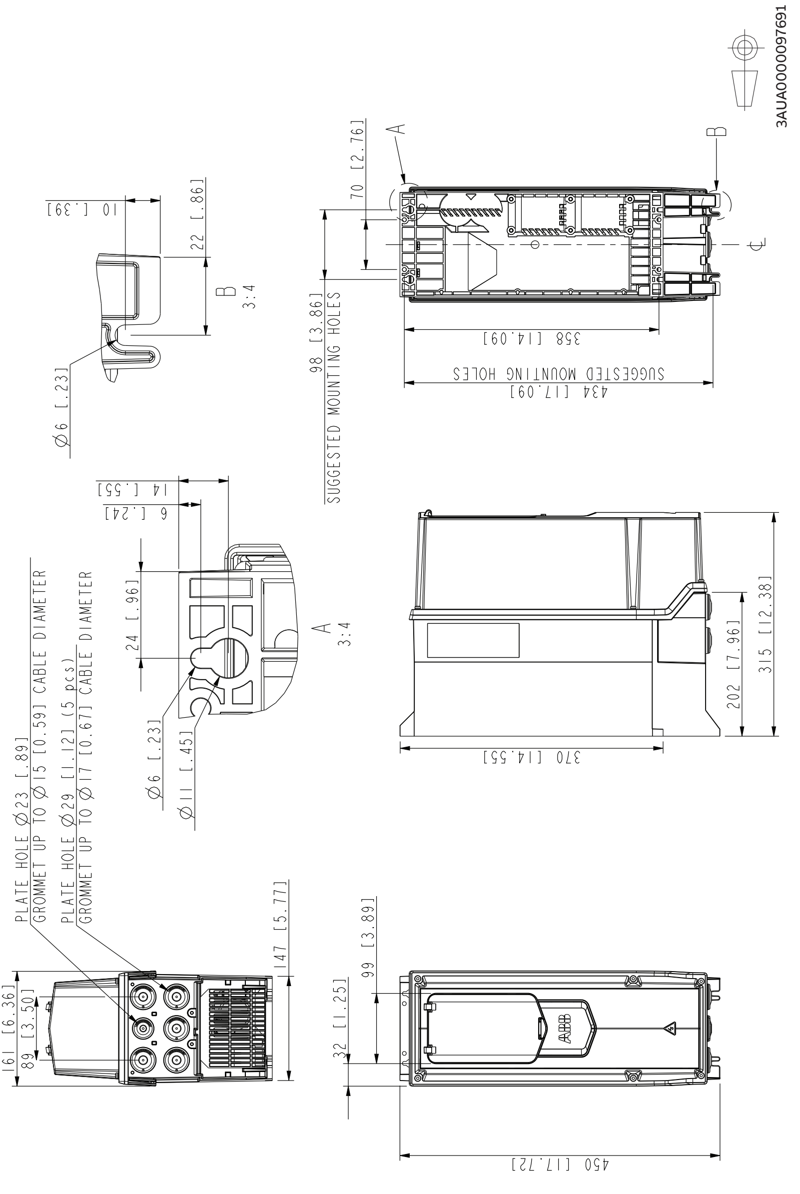
Frame R1, IP55 (UL Type 12)



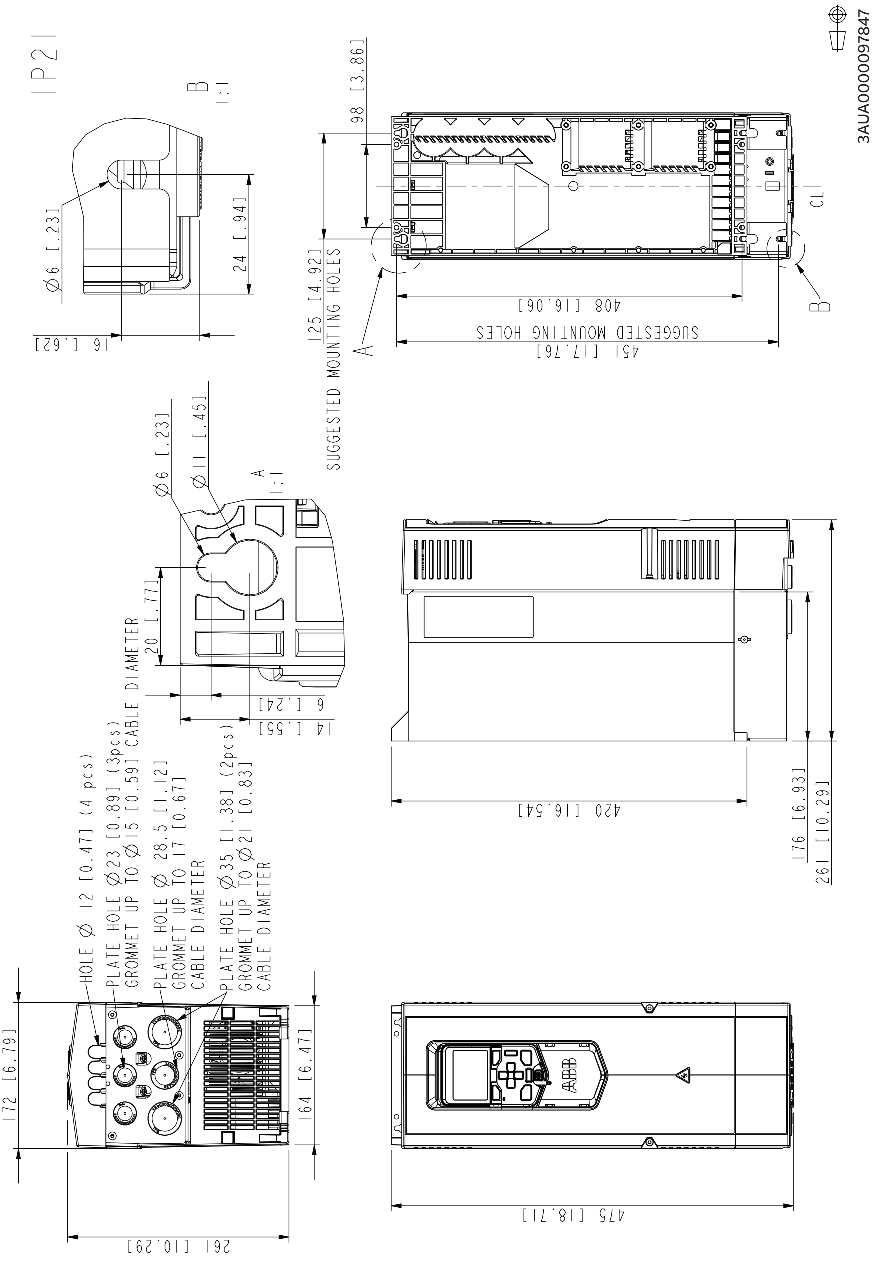
Frame R2, IP21 (UL Type 1)



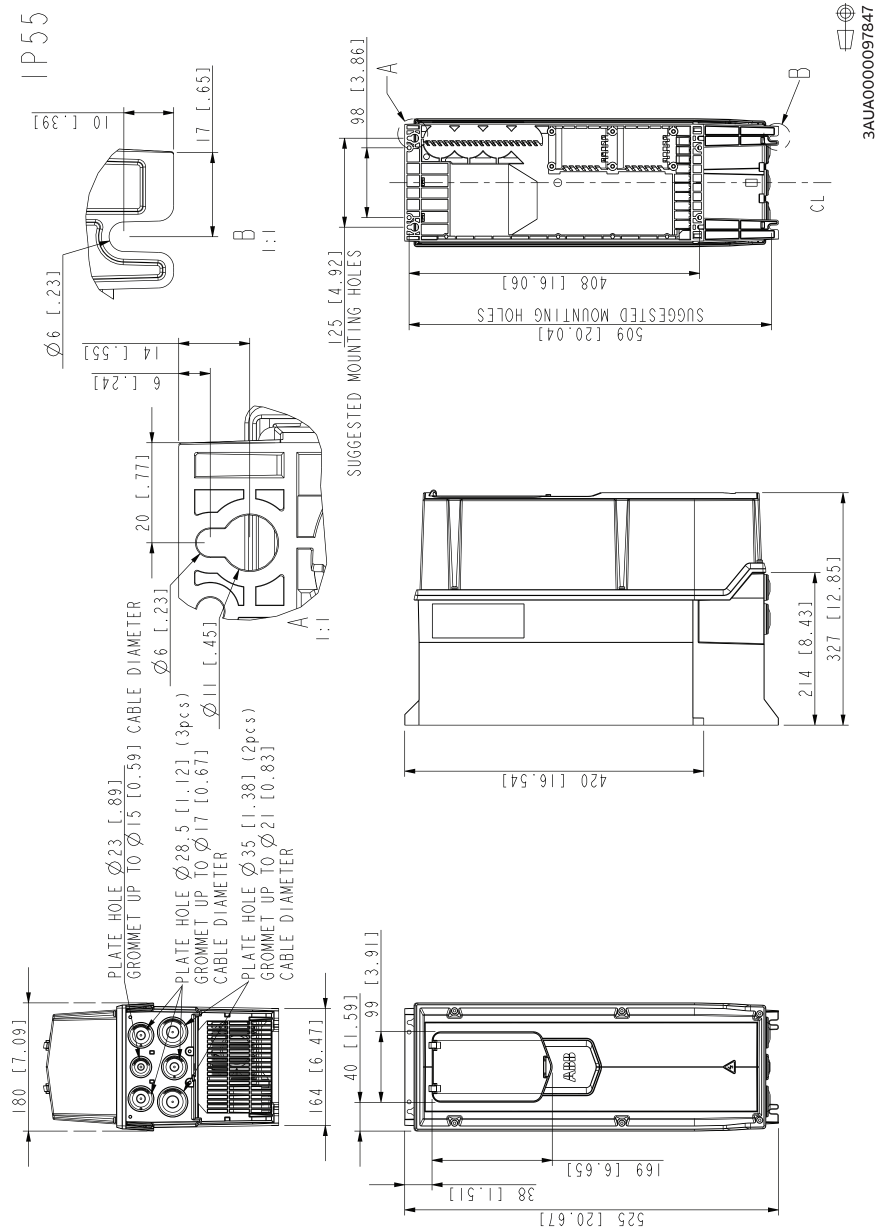
Frame R2, IP55 (UL Type 12)



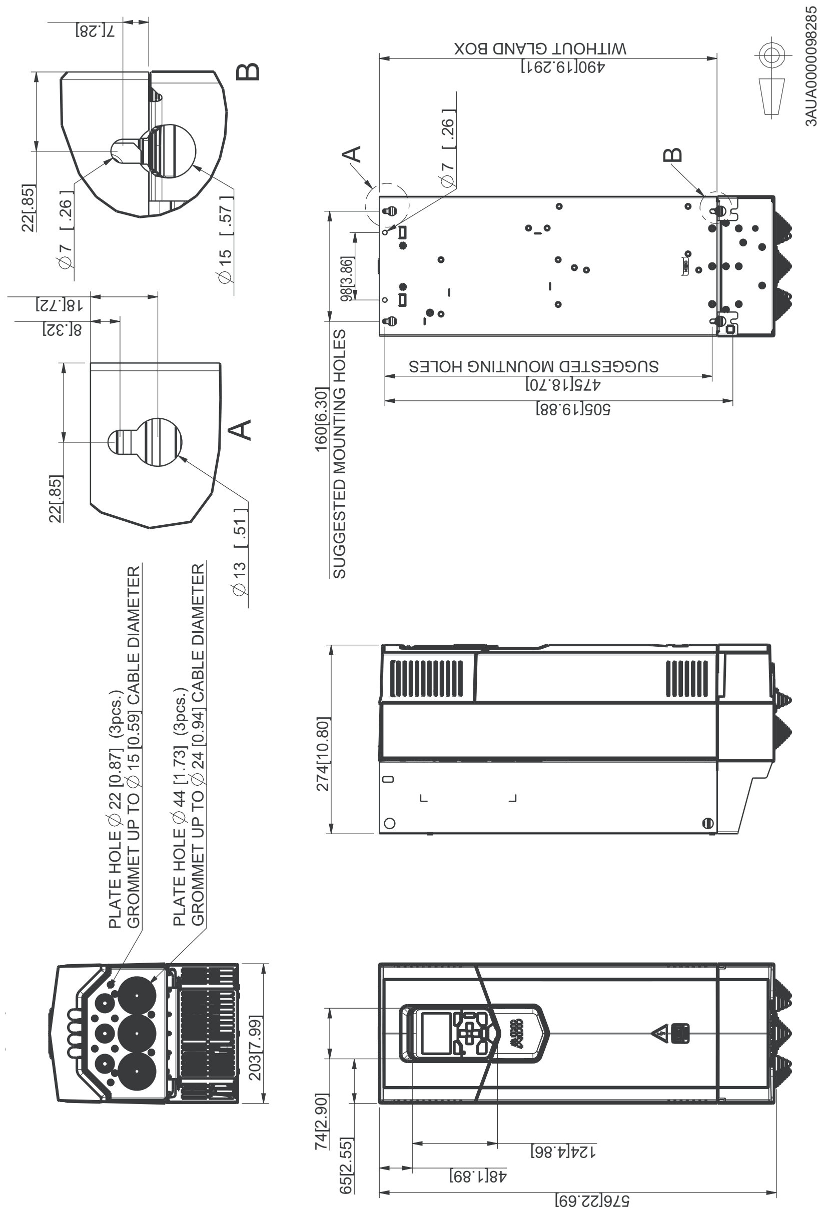
Frame R3, IP21 (UL Type 1)



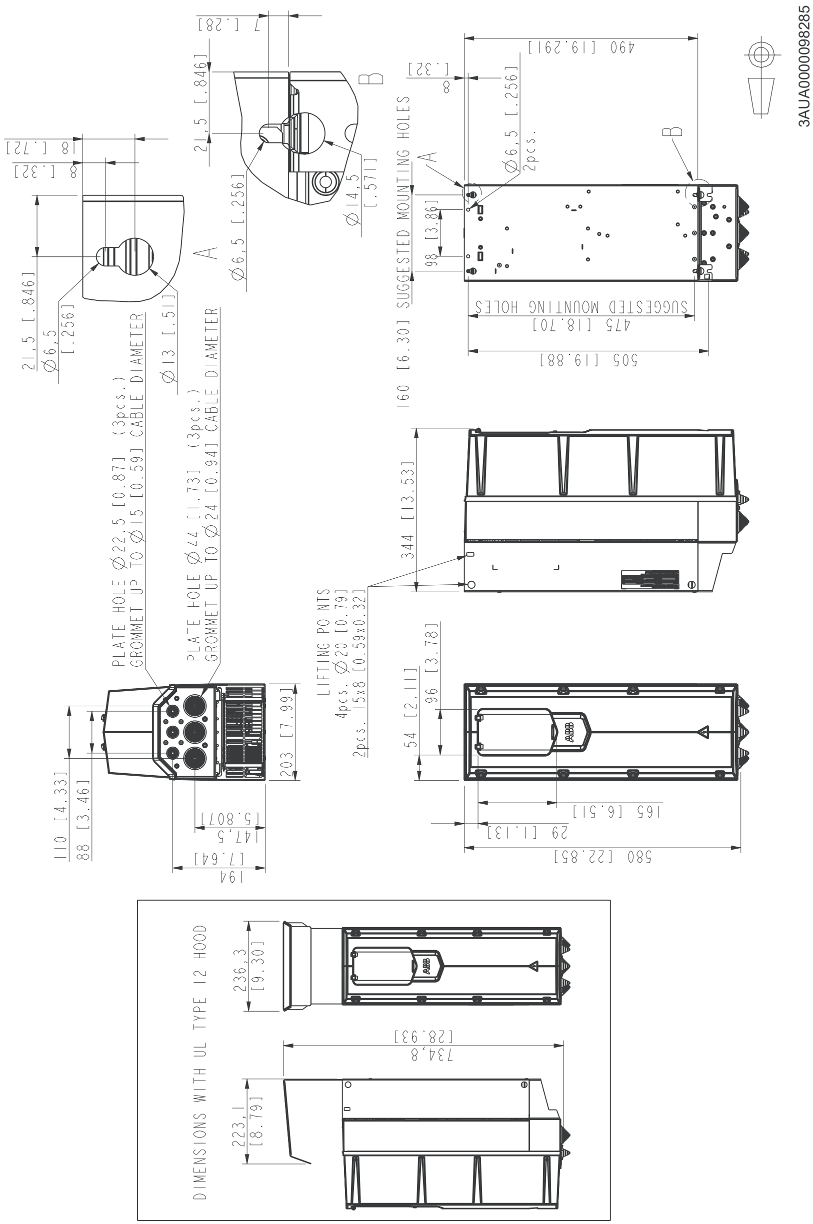
Frame R3, IP55 (UL Type 12)



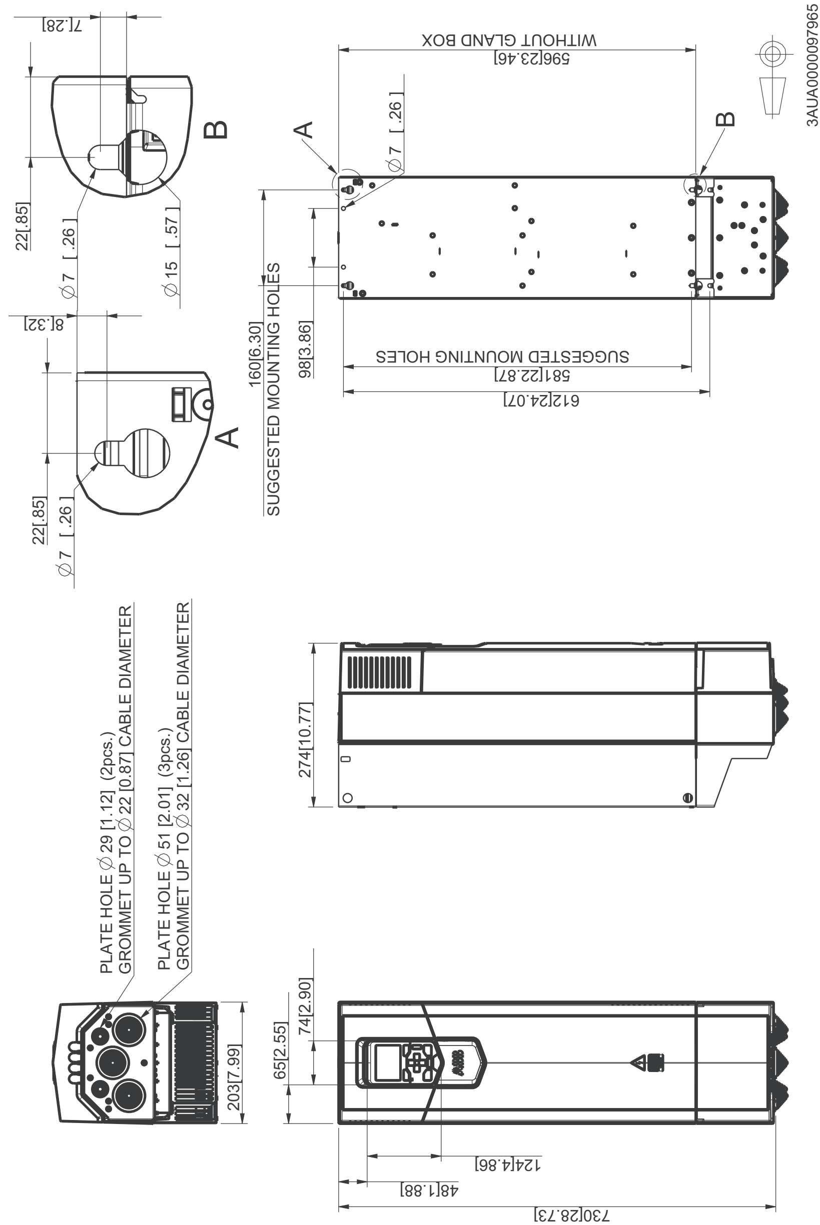
Frame R4, IP21 (UL Type 1)



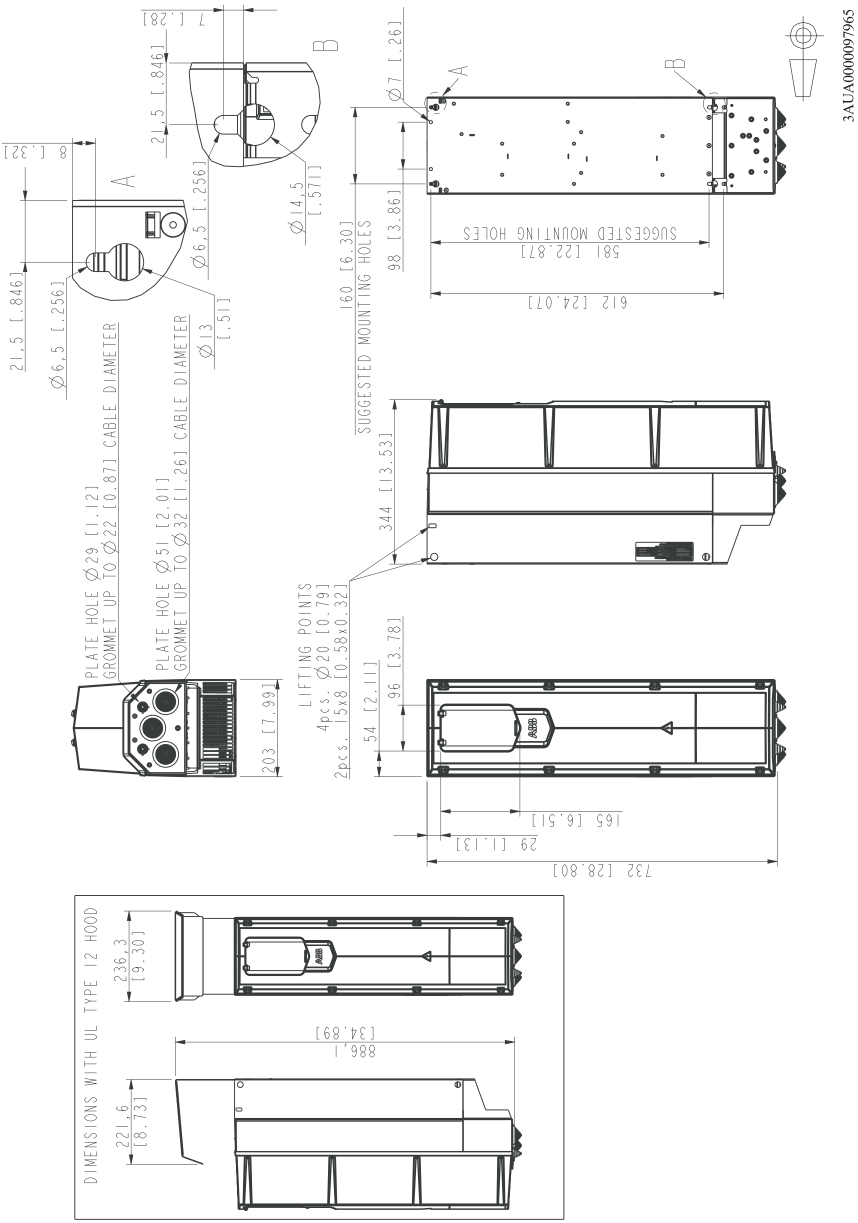
Frame R4, IP55 (UL Type 12)



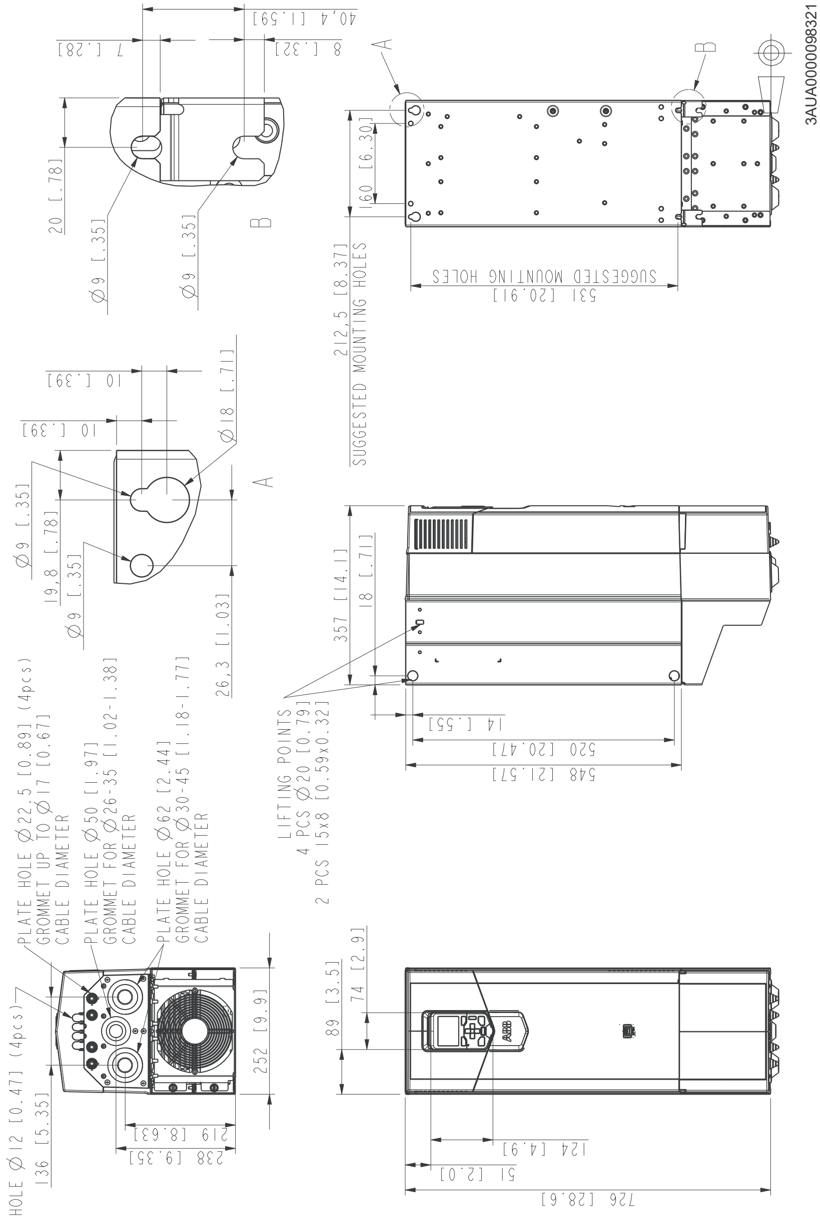
Frame R5, IP21 (UL Type 1)



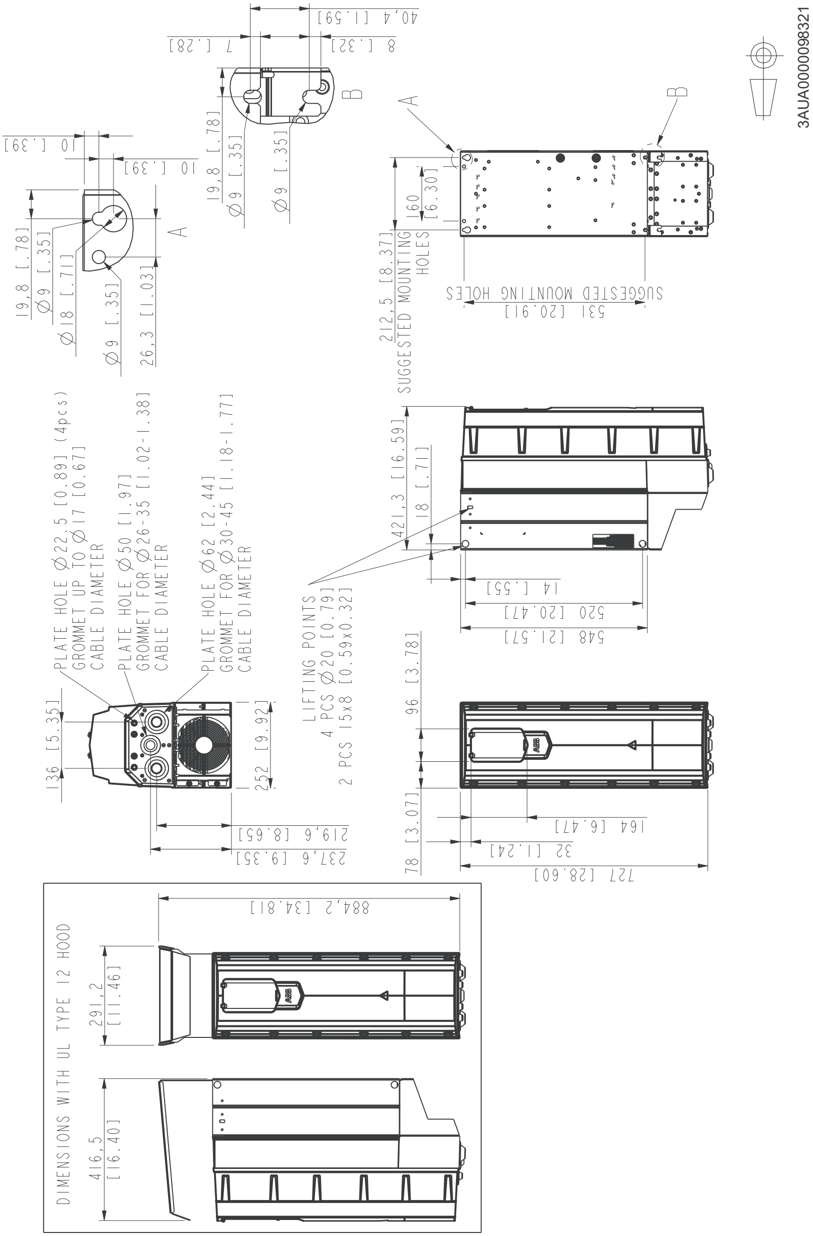
Frame R5, IP55 (UL Type 12)



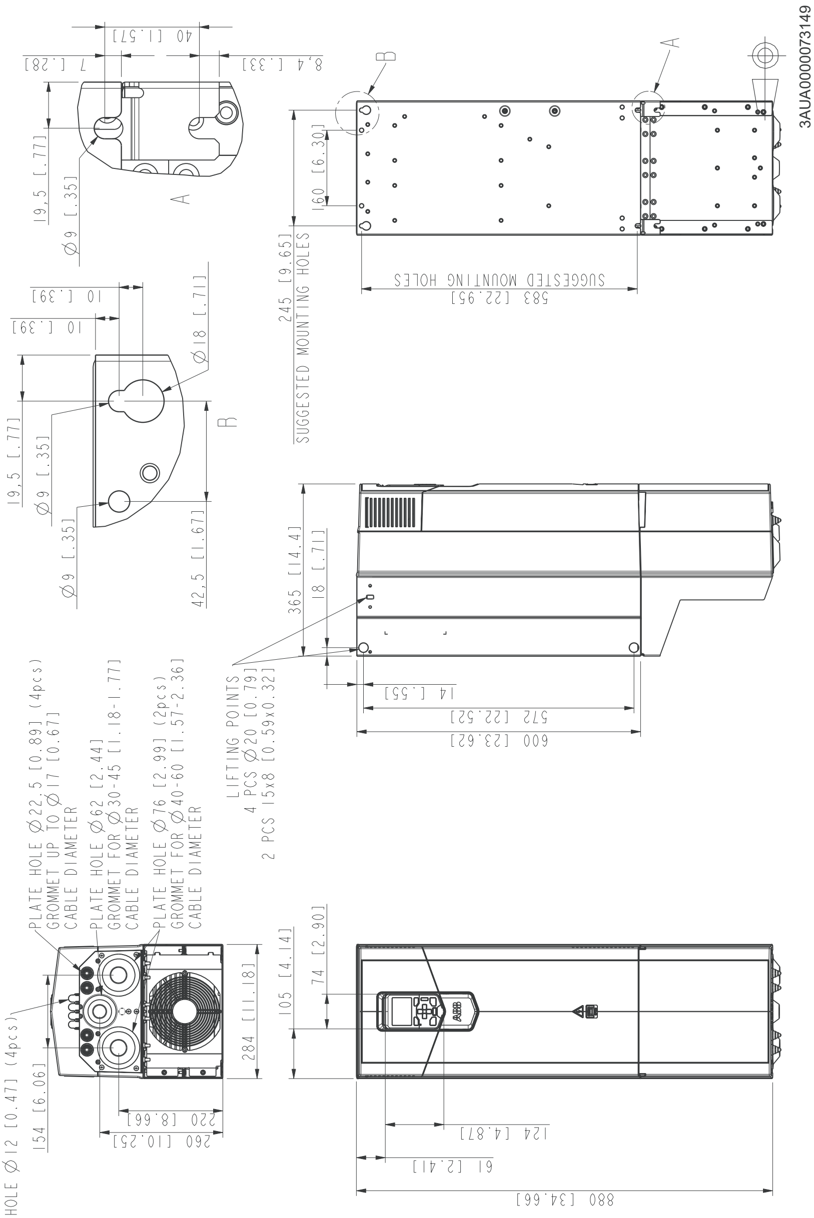
Frame R6, IP21 (UL Type 1)



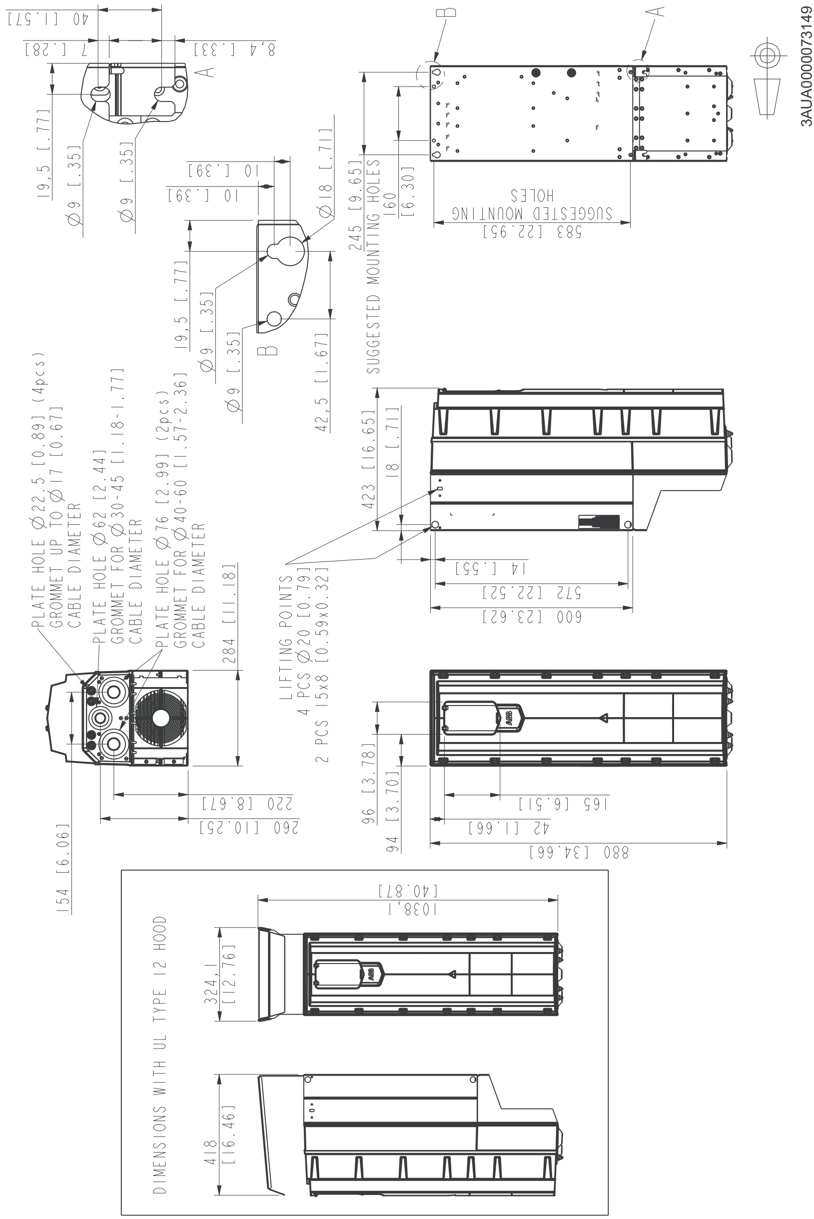
Frame R6, IP55 (UL Type 12)



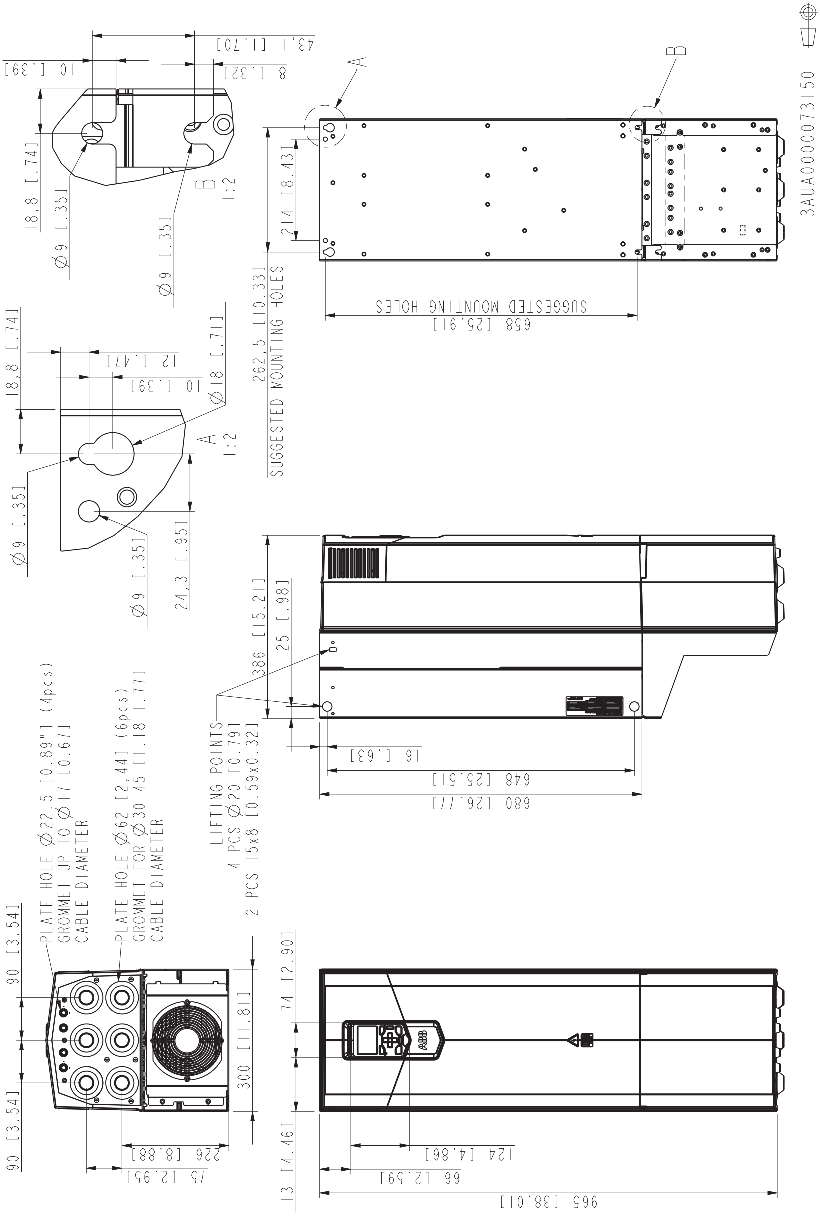
Frame R7, IP21 (UL Type 1)



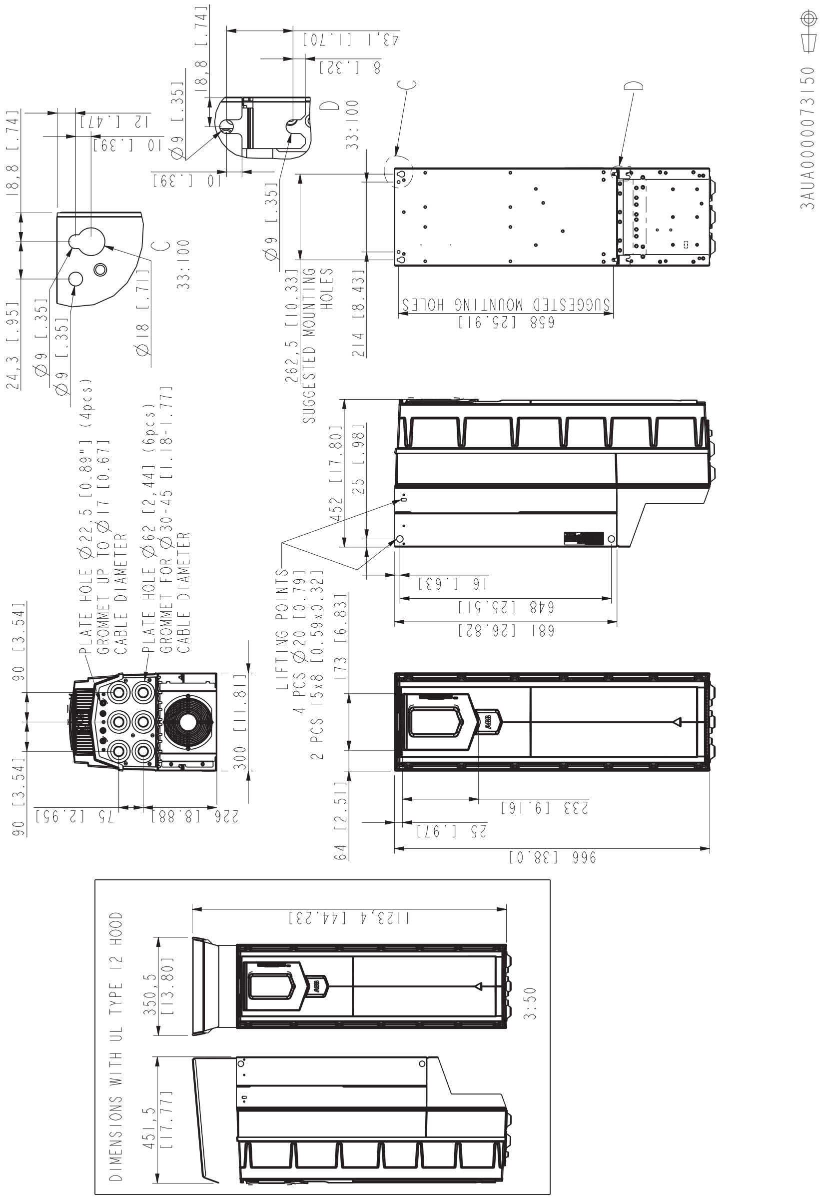
Frame R7, IP55 (UL Type 12)



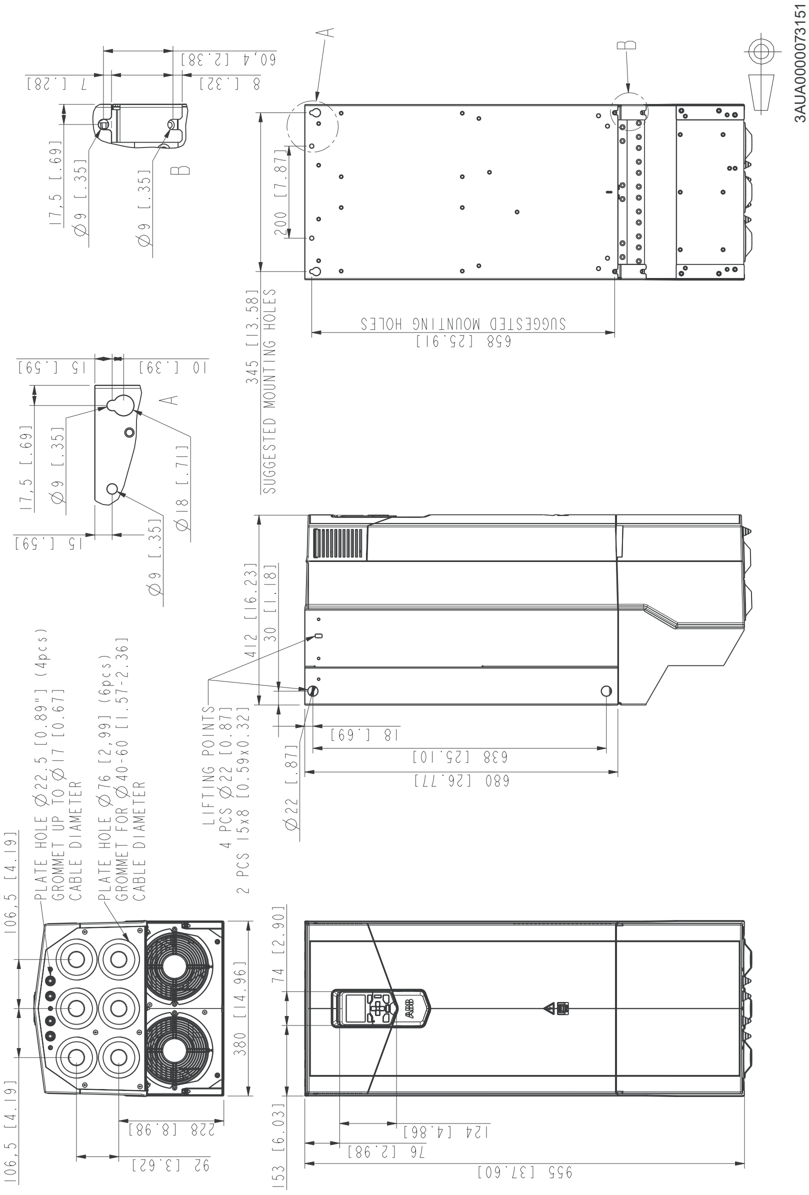
Frame R8, IP21 (UL Type 1)



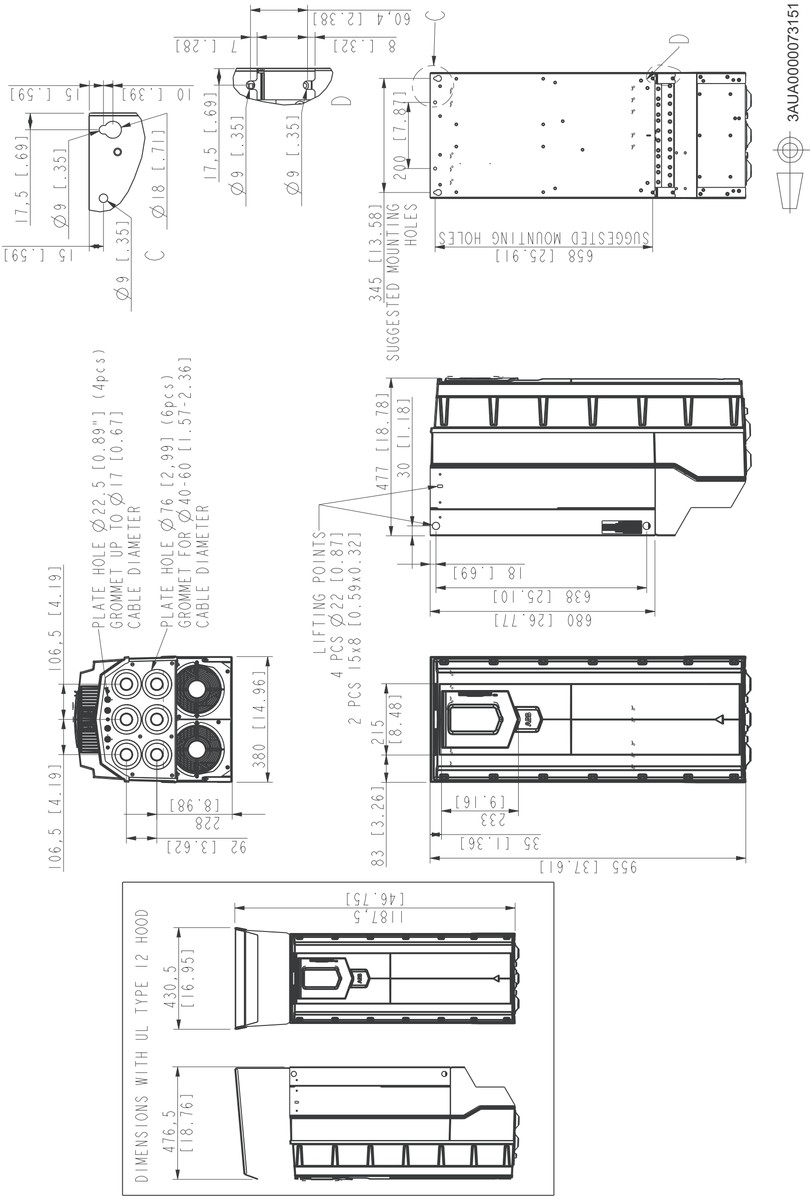
Frame R8, IP55 (UL Type 12)



Frame R9, IP21 (UL Type 1)

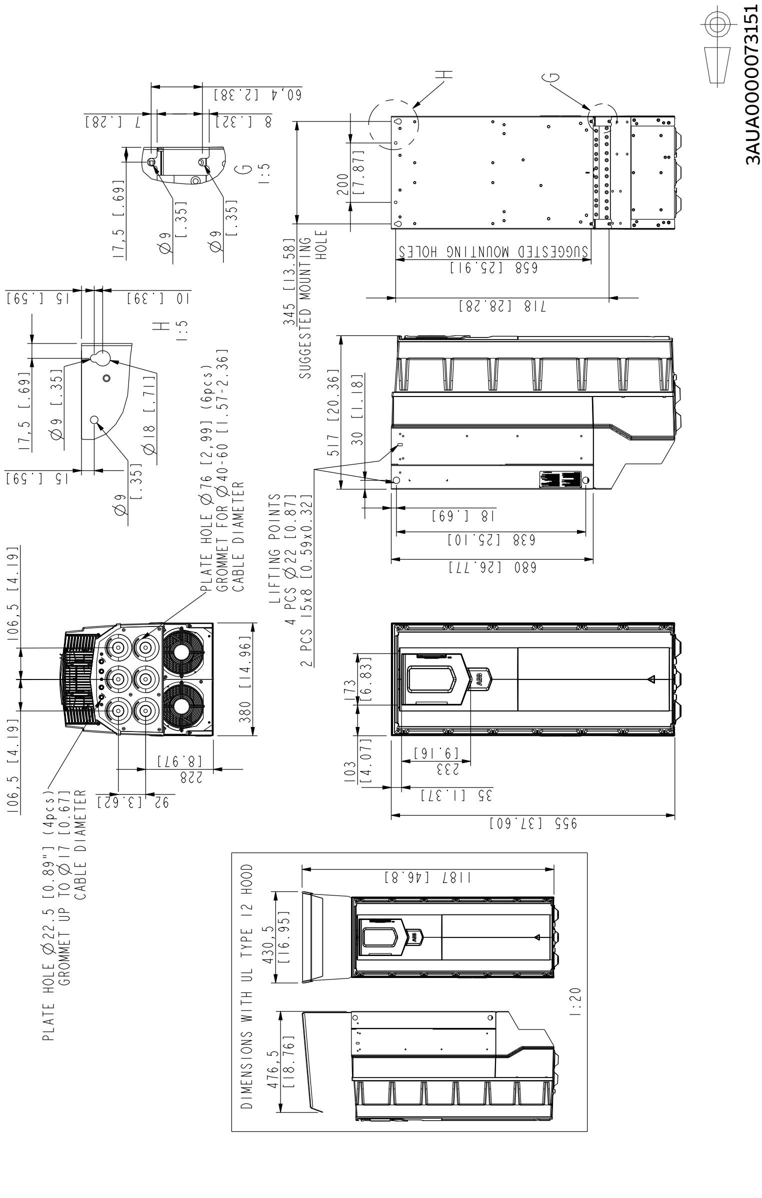


Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)

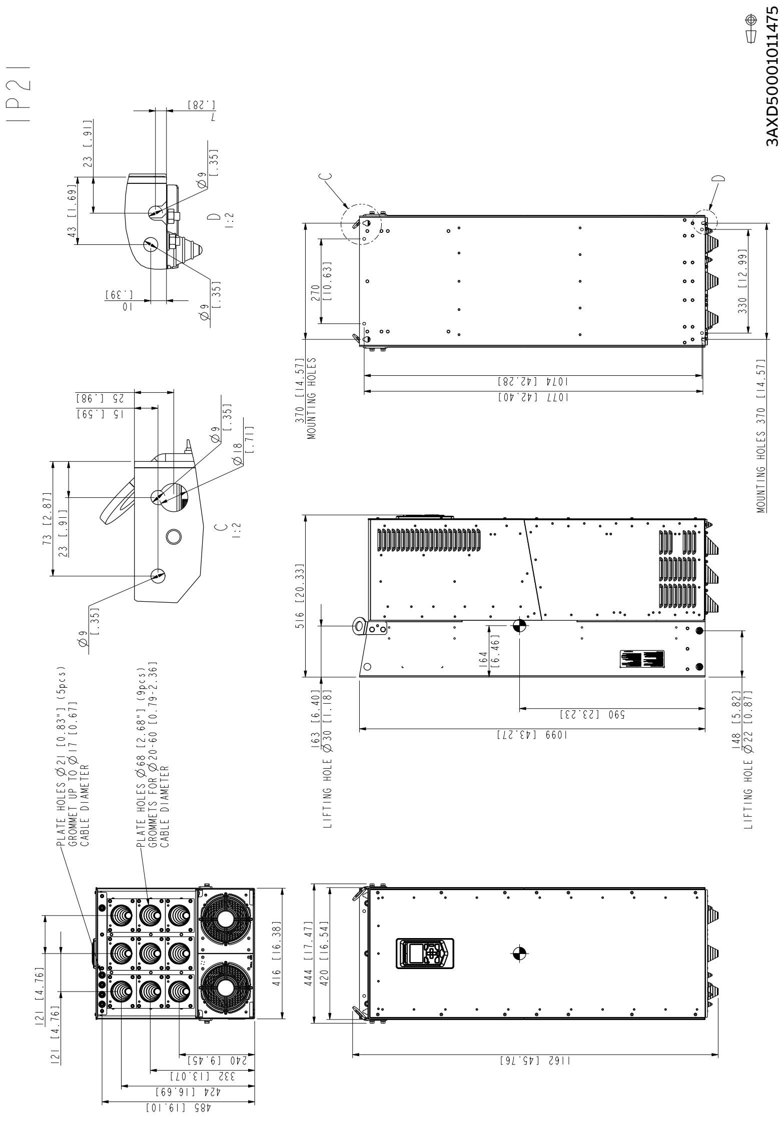


Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)*

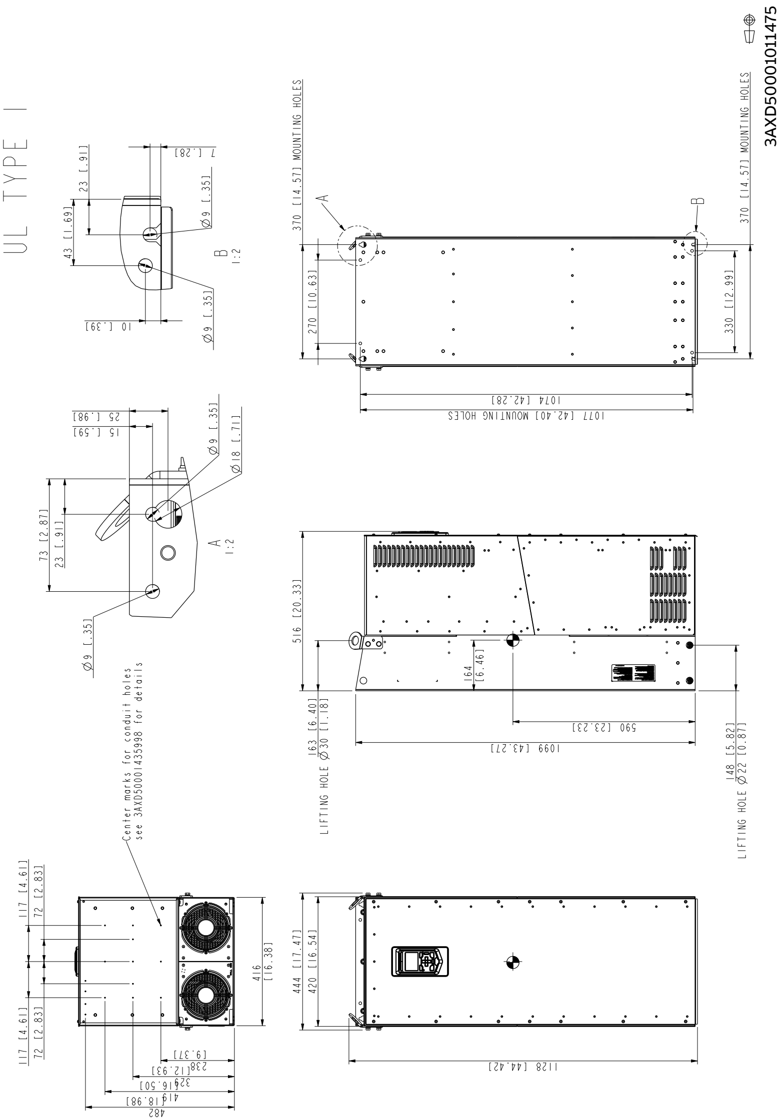
*drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5



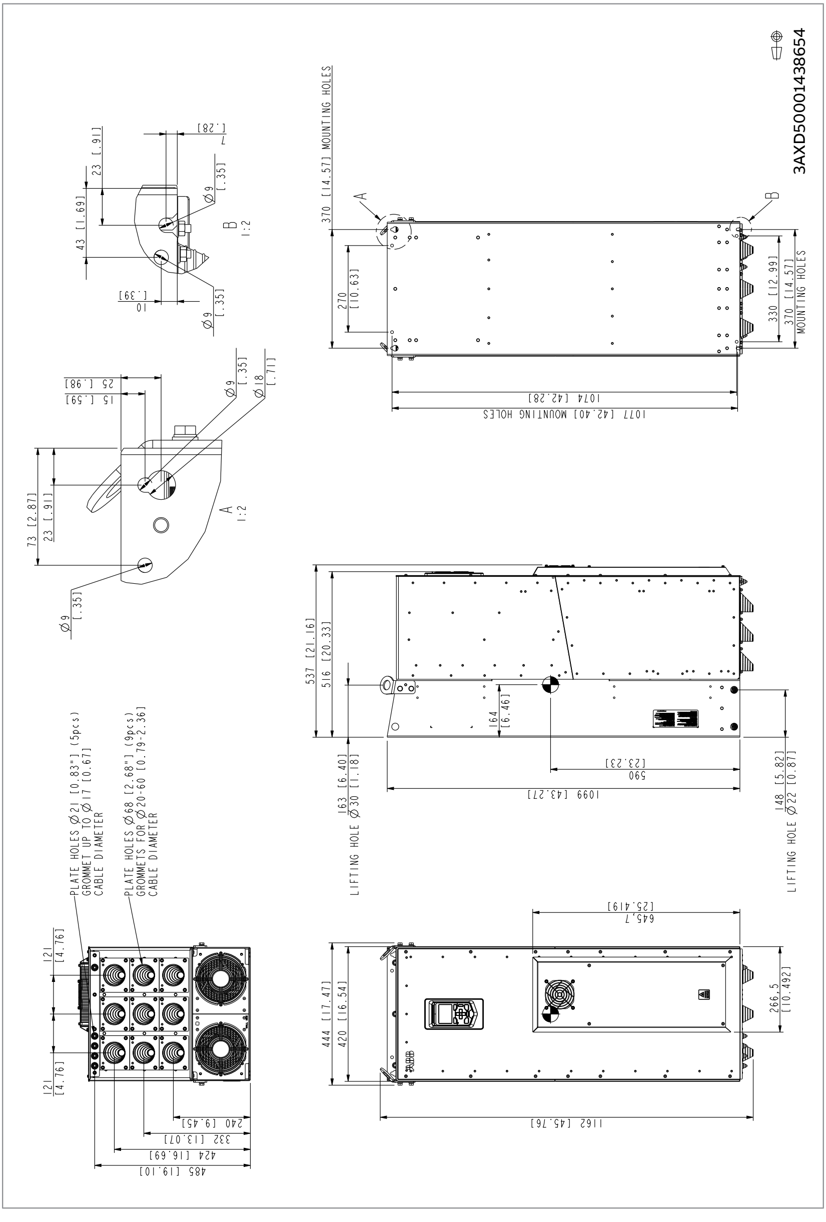
Frame R9e, IP21



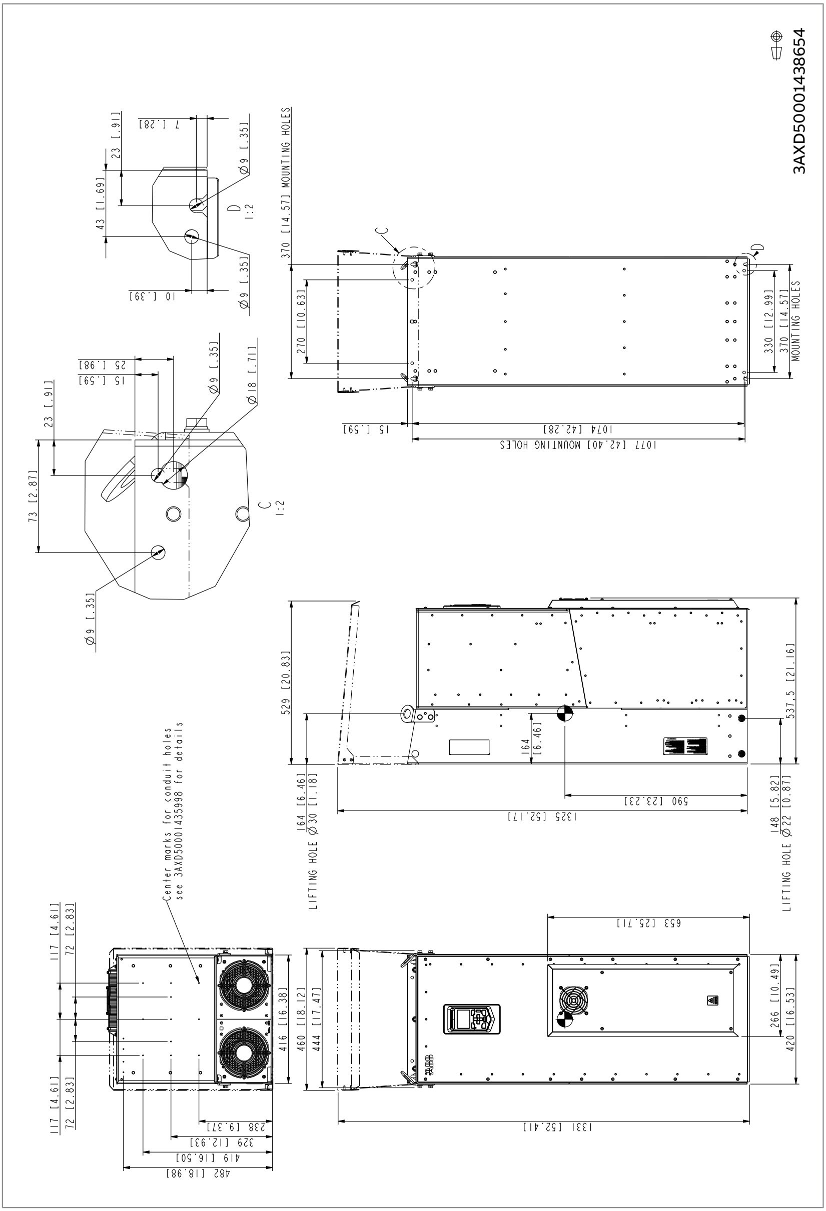
Frame R9e, UL Type 1



Frame R9e, IP55



Frame R9e, UL Type 12



15

Resistor braking

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains information and instructions on resistor braking, brake choppers and brake resistors.

Operation principle and hardware description

Frames R1 to R4 have a built-in brake chopper as standard. Frames R5 and up can be equipped with optional built-in brake chopper (+D150). Brake resistors are available as add-on kits.

The brake chopper handles the extra energy generated by the motor during a quick deceleration. The extra energy increases the DC link voltage of the drive. The chopper connects the brake resistor to the DC link whenever the voltage is more than the operation limit of the chopper. The energy consumed by the resistor losses lowers the voltage until it is less than the limit at which the chopper stops.

Planning the braking system

Selecting the brake circuit components

1. Calculate the maximum power generated by the motor during braking (P_{max}).
2. Select a suitable drive, brake chopper and brake resistor combination for the application from the rating table in this chapter. The braking power of the chopper must be greater or equal than the maximum power generated by the motor during the braking.
3. Check the resistor selection. The energy generated by the motor during a 400-second period must not exceed the resistor heat dissipation capacity E_R.

Note: If the E_R value is not sufficient, it is possible to use a four-resistor assembly in which two standard resistors are connected in parallel, two in series. The E_R value of the four-resistor assembly is four times the value specified for the standard resistor.

Selecting a custom resistor

If you use a resistor other than the default resistor,

1. make sure that the resistance of the custom resistor is greater or equal than the resistance of the default resistor in the rating table:

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">$R \geq R_{min}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>Resistance of the custom resistor

WARNING Never use a brake resistor with a resistance smaller than R_{min}. The drive and the chopper are not able to handle the overcurrent caused by the low resistance.</td></tr>
<tr><td>R_{min}</td><td>Resistance of the default resistor</td></tr>
</table>

2. make sure that the load capacity of the custom resistor is greater than the instantaneous maximum power consumption of the resistor when it is connected to the drive DC link voltage by the chopper:

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">$P_r > (U_{DC}^2)/R$</td></tr>
<tr><td>P_r</td><td>Load capacity of the custom resistor</td></tr>
<tr><td>U_{DC}</td><td>Drive DC link voltage during braking
<table>
<tr><td>Supply voltage range (V AC)</td><td>208…240</td><td>380…415</td><td>440…480</td><td>500</td><td>525…600</td><td>660…690</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drive DC link voltage during braking (V DC) when internal brake chopper at 100% pulse width</td><td>403</td><td>697</td><td>806</td><td>806</td><td>1008</td><td>1159</td></tr>
</table>
See ACS880 primary control program Firmware manual (3AUA0000085967 [English]) for more information.</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>Resistance of the custom resistor</td></tr>
</table>

Selecting and routing the brake resistor cables

Use the same cable type for the resistor cabling as for the drive input cabling to ensure that the input fuses also protect the resistor cable. Alternatively, a two conductor shielded cable with the same cross-sectional area can be used.

Minimizing electromagnetic interference

Follow these rules in order to minimize electromagnetic interference caused by the rapid current changes in the resistor cables:

- Shield the braking power line completely, either by using shielded cable or a metallic enclosure. Unshielded single-core cable can only be used if it is routed inside a cabinet that efficiently suppresses the radiated emissions.
- Install the cables away from other cable routes.
- Avoid long parallel runs with other cables. The minimum parallel cabling separation distance should be 0.3 meters.
- Cross the other cables at right angles.
- Keep the cable as short as possible in order to minimize the radiated emissions and stress on chopper IGBTs. The longer the cable the higher the radiated emissions, inductive load and voltage peaks over the IGBT semiconductors of the brake chopper.

Maximum cable length

The maximum length of the resistor cable(s) is 10 m (33 ft).

EMC compliance of the complete installation

ABB has not verified that the EMC requirements are fulfilled with external user-defined brake resistors and cabling. The EMC compliance of the complete installation must be considered by the customer.

Placing the brake resistors

Install the resistors outside the drive in a place where they will cool.

Arrange the cooling of the resistor in a way that:

- no danger of overheating is caused to the resistor or nearby materials
- the temperature of the room the resistor is located in does not exceed the allowed maximum.

Supply the resistor with cooling air/water according to the resistor manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING The materials near the brake resistor must be non-flammable. The surface temperature of the resistor is high. Air flowing from the resistor is of hundreds of degrees Celsius. If the exhaust vents are connected to a ventilation system, ensure that the material withstands high temperatures. Protect the resistor against contact.

Protecting the system against thermal overload

The brake chopper protects itself and the resistor cables against thermal overload when the cables are dimensioned according to the nominal current of the drive. The drive control program includes a resistor and resistor cable thermal protection function which can be tuned by the user. See the firmware manual.

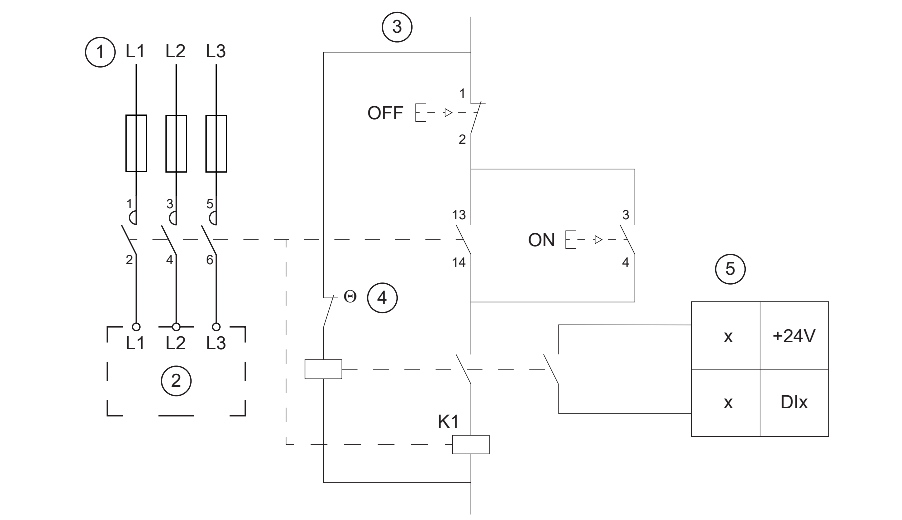
Protecting the system in fault situations

Frames R1 to R4

The drive has a brake thermal model that protects the brake resistor against overload. ABB recommends that you enable the thermal model at start up.

ABB recommends that you use a main contactor with the drive for safety reasons even when you have enabled the resistor thermal model. Connect the contactor so that it opens if the resistor overheats. This is essential for safety, since the drive will not otherwise be able to interrupt the main supply if the chopper conducts in a fault situation. The figure shows an example connection diagram. ABB recommends that you use resistors equipped with a thermal switch (1) in the resistor assembly. The switch indicates overtemperature.

ABB recommends that you connect the thermal switch to a digital input of the drive, and configure the input to cause a fault trip at resistor overtemperature indication.



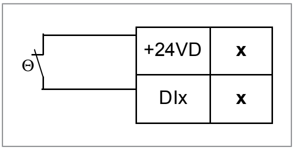
1	Drive input power connection with a main contactor
2	Drive
3	Main contactor control circuit
4	Brake resistor thermal switch
5	Digital input. Monitors the brake resistor thermal switch.

Frames R5 to R9

A main contactor is not required for protecting against resistor overheating when the resistor is dimensioned according to the instructions and the internal brake chopper is in use. The drive will disable power flow through the input bridge if the chopper remains conductive in a fault situation but the charging resistor may fail.

Note: If an external brake chopper (outside the drive module) is used, a main contactor is always required.

A thermal switch (standard in ABB resistors) is required for safety reasons. The thermal switch cable must be shielded and may not be longer than the resistor cable. Wire the switch to a digital input on the drive control unit as shown in the figure below.



Protecting the resistor cable against short-circuits

The input fuses will also protect the resistor cable when it is identical with the input cable.

Mechanical installation

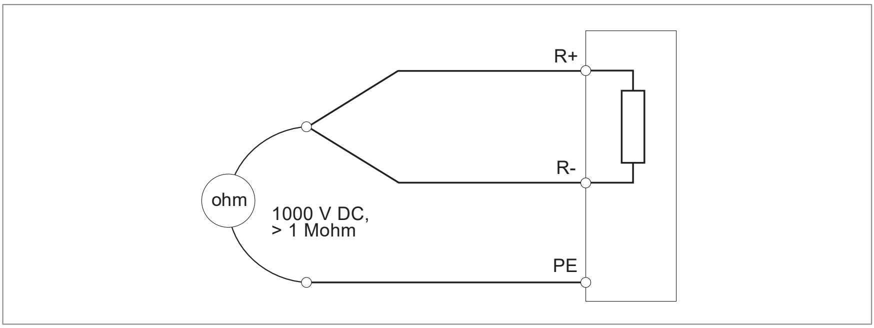
Brake resistors must be installed outside the drive. Obey the resistor manufacturer’s instructions.

Electrical installation

Measuring the insulation resistance of the brake resistor circuit

WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Stop the drive and do the steps in Electrical safety precautions (page 20) before you start the work.
2. Make sure that the resistor cable is connected to the resistor and disconnected from the drive output terminals.
3. At the drive end, connect the R+ and R- conductors of the resistor cable together. Measure the insulation resistance between the conductors and the PE conductor with a measuring voltage of 1000 V DC. The insulation resistance must be more than 1 Mohm.



Connection diagram

See section Connection diagram (page 110).

Connection procedure

- Connect the resistor cables to the R+ and R- terminals in the same way as the other power cables. If a shielded three-conductor cable is used, cut the third conductor, insulate it, and ground the twisted shield of the cable (protective earth conductor of the resistor assembly) at both ends.
- Connect the thermal switch of the brake resistor as described above in section Frames R1 to R4 (page 350) or Frames R5 to R9 (page 351).

Start-up

CAUTION Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation. New brake resistors can have a protective grease coating. When the resistor warms up for the first time, the grease burns off and can produce some smoke.

Set the following parameters (ACS880 primary control program):

- Set parameter 30.30 Overvoltage control to disable.
- Set parameter 31.01 External event 1 source to point to the digital input where the thermal switch of the brake resistor is wired.
- Set parameter 31.02 External event 1 type to Fault.
- Set parameter 43.06 Brake chopper function to Enable. If you select Enabled with thermal model, set also the brake resistor overload protection parameters 43.08 and 43.09 according to the application.
- For frames R5 to R9: Set parameter 43.07 Brake chopper run enable to Other [bit] and select from parameter 10.01 DI status the digital input where the thermal switch of the brake resistor is wired.
- Check the resistance value of parameter 43.10 Brake resistance.

With these parameter settings, the drive stops by coasting on brake resistor overtemperature.

NOTICE If you disable the brake chopper by parameter, also disconnect the brake resistor cable from the drive. Otherwise, there is a risk of resistor overheating and damage.

For settings of other control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Technical data

Ratings

ACS880-01-...	Internal brake chopper		Example brake resistor(s)			
	P_{brcont}	R_{min}	Type	R	E_R	P_{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
U_n = 230 V						
04A6-2	0.75	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
06A6-2	1.1	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
07A5-2	1.5	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
10A6-2	2.2	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
16A8-2	4.0	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
24A3-2	5.5	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
031A-2	7.5	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
046A-2	11	12	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
061A-2	11	12	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
075A-2	18.5	6	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
087A-2	22	6	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
115A-2	30	3.5	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
145A-2	37	3.5	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
170A-2	45	2.4	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
206A-2	55	2.4	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
274A-2	75	1.8	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
U_n = 400 V						
02A4-3	0.75	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
03A3-3	1.1	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
04A0-3	1.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
05A6-3	2.2	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
07A2-3	3.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
09A4-3	4.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
12A6-3	5.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
017A-3	7.5	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1

ACS880-01-...	Internal brake chopper		Example brake resistor(s)			
	P_{brcont}	R_{min}	Type	R	E_R	P_{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
025A-3	11	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
032A-3	15	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
038A-3	18.5	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
045A-3	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
061A-3	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
072A-3	37	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
087A-3	45	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
105A-3	55	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
145A-3	75	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
169A-3	90	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
206A-3	110	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
246A-3	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
293A-3	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
363A-3	160	2.0	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
430A-3	160	2.0	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
490A-3	200	1.5	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
595A-3	160	1.0	2×SAFUR180F460*	1.2	12000	30
670A-3	160	1.0	2×SAFUR180F460*	1.2	12000	30
U_n = 500 V						
02A1-5	0.75	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
03A0-5	1.1	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
03A4-5	1.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
04A8-5	2.2	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
05A2-5	3.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
07A6-5	4.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
11A0-5	5.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
014A-5	7.5	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
021A-5	11	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
027A-5	15	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2

ACS880-01-...	Internal brake chopper		Example brake resistor(s)			
	P_{brcont}	R_{min}	Type	R	E_R	P_{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
034A-5	18.5	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
040A-5	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
052A-5	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
065A-5	37	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
077A-5	45	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
096A-5	55	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
124A-5	75	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
156A-5	90	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
180A-5	110	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
240A-5	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
260A-5	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
302A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
361A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
414A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
477A-5	200	1.5	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
585A-5	200	1.0	2×SAFUR180F460*	1.2	12000	30
635A-5	200	1.0	2×SAFUR180F460*	1.2	12000	30
U_n = 690 V						
07A4-7	5.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
09A9-7	7.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
14A3-7	11.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
019A-7	15.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
023A-7	18.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
027A-7	22.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1
035A-7	33	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
042A-7	45	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
049A-7	45	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
061A-7	55	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
084A-7	65	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2

ACS880-01-...	Internal brake chopper		Example brake resistor(s)			
	P_{brcont}	R_{min}	Type	R	E_R	P_{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
098A-7	90	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
119A-7	110	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
142A-7	132	6	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
174A-7	160	6	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6
210A-7	200	4	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
271A-7	200	4	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9

*Must be connected in parallel.

Note: The insulation resistance of SACE and SAFUR resistors is 2 kV/min. The insulation resistance of JBR resistors is 3.5 kV/min.

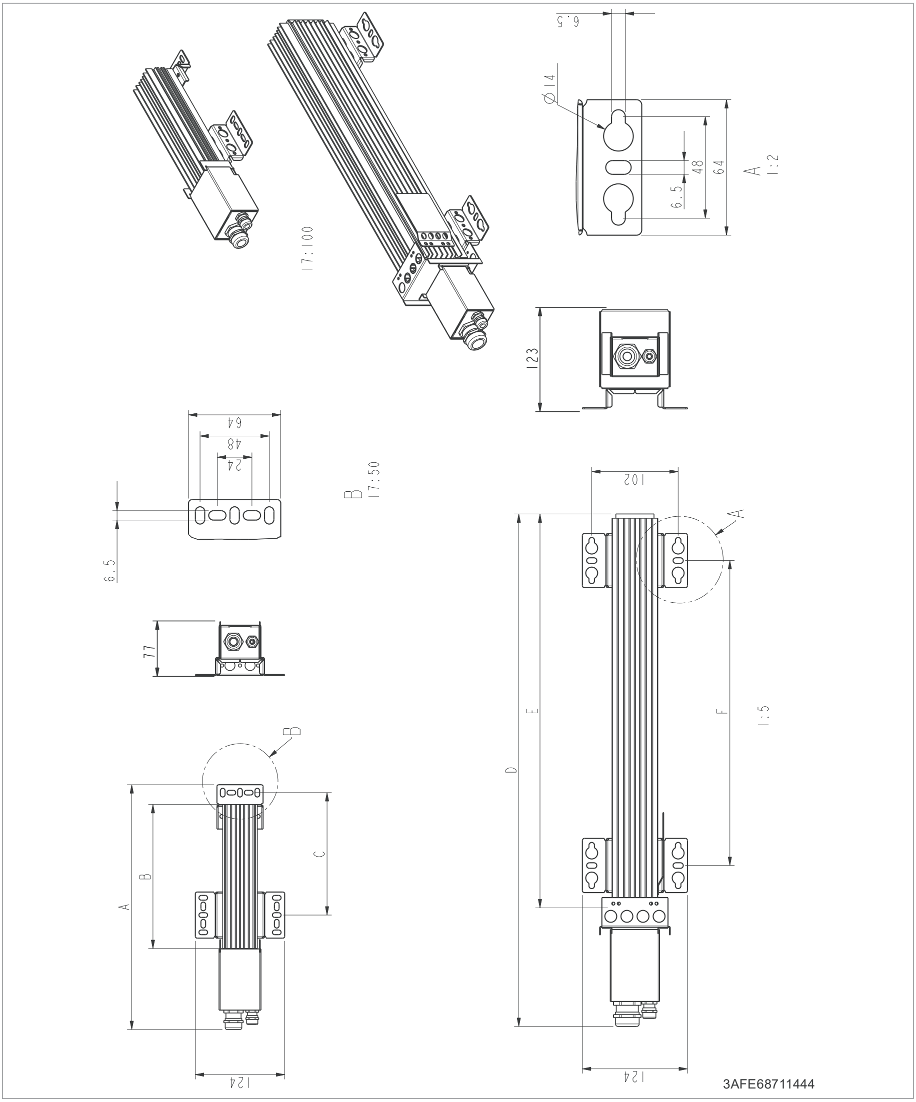
P_{brcont}	Maximum continuous braking power. The braking is considered continuous if the braking time exceeds 30 seconds.
R_{min}	Minimum allowed resistance value of the brake resistor
R	Resistance value for the listed resistor assembly
E_R	Short energy pulse that the resistor assembly withstands every 400 seconds
P_{Rcont}	Continuous power (heat) dissipation of the resistor when placed correctly

Degree of protection and thermal constant of the resistor

Resistor type	Degree of protection	Thermal constant (s)
JBR-03	IP20	
SACE	IP21	200
SAFUR	IP00	555

Dimensions and weights of external resistors

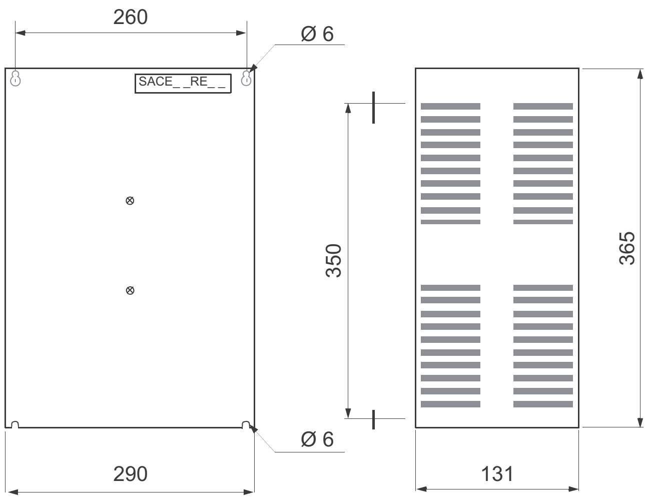
JBR-03



JBR-03 brake resistor	
Dimension A	340 mm (13.39 in)

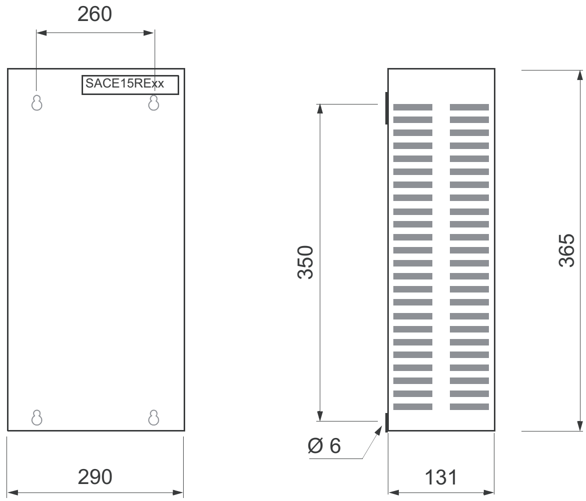
JBR-03 brake resistor	
Dimension B	200 mm (7.87 in)
Dimension C	170 mm (6.69 in)
Weight	0.8 kg (1.8 lb)
Maximum wire size of main terminals	10 mm² (AWG6)
Tightening torque of main terminals	1.5 … 1.8 N·m (13 … 16 lbf·in)
Wire size of thermal switch terminals	4 mm² (AWG12)
Tightening torque of thermal switch terminals	0.6 … 0.8 N·m (5.3 … 7.1 lbf·in)

SACE08RE44



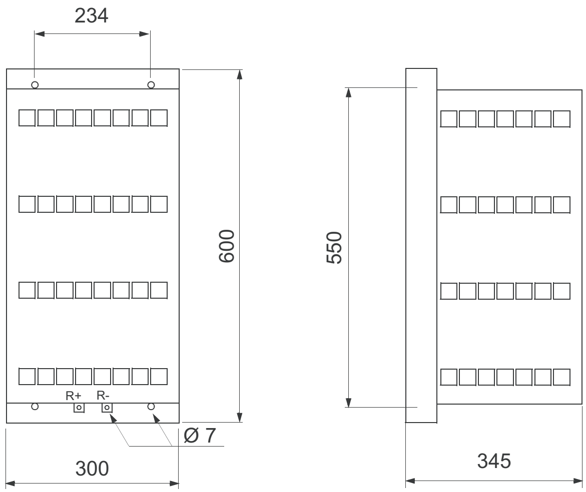
Weight: 6 kg (13 lb)

SACE15RE13 and SACE15RE22



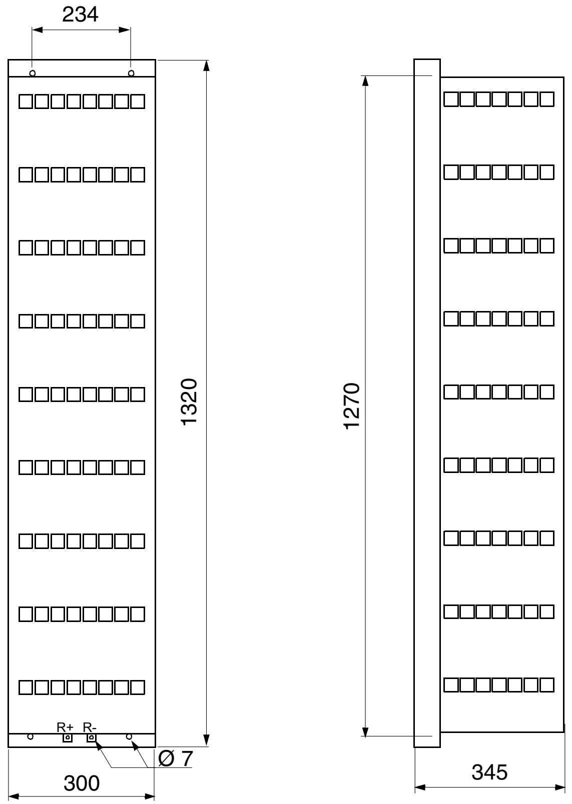
Weight: 6 kg (13 lb)

SAFUR80F500 and SAFUR90F575



Brake resistor type	Weight
SAFUR80F500	14 kg (31 lb)
SAFUR90F500	12 kg (26 lb)

SAFUR125F500 and SAFUR200F500



Brake resistor type	Weight
SAFUR125F500	25 kg (55 lb)
SAFUR200F500	30 kg (66 lb)

16

The Safe torque off function

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the Safe torque off (STO) function of the drive and gives instructions for its use.

Description

WARNING In case of parallel-connected drives or dual-winding motors, the STO must be activated on each drive to remove the torque from the motor.

The Safe torque off function can be used, for example, as the final actuator device of safety circuits (such as an emergency stop circuit) that stop the drive in case of danger. Another typical application is a prevention of unexpected start-up function that enables short-time maintenance operations like cleaning or work on non-electrical parts of the machinery without switching off the power supply to the drive.

When activated, the Safe torque off function disables the control voltage for the power semiconductors of the drive output stage, thus preventing the drive from generating the torque required to rotate the motor. If the motor is running when Safe torque off is activated, it coasts to a stop.

The Safe torque off function has a redundant architecture, that is, both channels must be used in the safety function implementation. The safety data given in this manual is calculated for redundant use, and does not apply if both channels are not used.

The Safe torque off function complies with these standards:

Standard	Name
IEC 60204-1:2021 EN 60204-1:2018	Safety of machinery – Electrical equipment of machines – Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61000-6-7:2014	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-7: Generic standards – Immunity requirements for equipment intended to perform functions in a safety-related system (functional safety) in industrial locations
IEC 61326-3-1:2017	Electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use – EMC requirements – Part 3-1: Immunity requirements for safety-related systems and for equipment intended to perform safety-related functions (functional safety) – General industrial applications
IEC 61508-1:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems – Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61508-2:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems – Part 2: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems
IEC 61511-1:2017	Functional safety – Safety instrumented systems for the process industry sector
IEC 61800-5-2:2016 EN 61800-5-2:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 5-2: Safety requirements – Functional
EN IEC 62061:2021	Safety of machinery – Functional safety of safety-related control systems
EN ISO 13849-1:2015	Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 1: General principles for design
EN ISO 13849-2:2012	Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 2: Validation

The function also corresponds to Prevention of unexpected start-up as specified by EN ISO 14118:2018 (ISO 14118:2017), and Uncontrolled stop (stop category 0) as specified in EN/IEC 60204-1.

Compliance with the European Machinery Directive and the UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations

Refer to the technical data.

Wiring

The connection diagrams in this section are applicable to drives with ZCU control unit. For the connection diagrams of the UCU-20 control unit (option +V998), refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

For the electrical specifications of the STO connection, refer the technical data of the control unit.

Activation switch

In the wiring diagrams, the activation switch has the designation [K]. This represents a component such as a manually operated switch, an emergency stop push button switch, or the contacts of a safety relay or safety PLC.

- In case a manually operated activation switch is used, the switch must be of a type that can be locked out to the open position.
- The contacts of the switch or relay must open/close within 200 ms of each other.
- Drives with ZCU control unit: An FSO, FSPS, FSCS, or FPTC module can also be used. For more information, see the module documentation.
- Drives with UCU-20 control unit: An FSPS module can also be used. For more information, see the module documentation.

Cable types and lengths

- ABB recommends double-shielded twisted-pair cable.
- Maximum cable lengths:
  - 300 m (1000 ft) between activation switch [K] and drive control unit
  - 60 m (200 ft) between multiple drives
  - 60 m (200 ft) between external power supply and first control unit

Note: A short-circuit in the wiring between the switch and an STO terminal causes a dangerous fault. Therefore, it is recommended to use a safety relay (including wiring diagnostics) or a wiring method (shield grounding, channel separation) which reduces or eliminates the risk caused by the short-circuit.

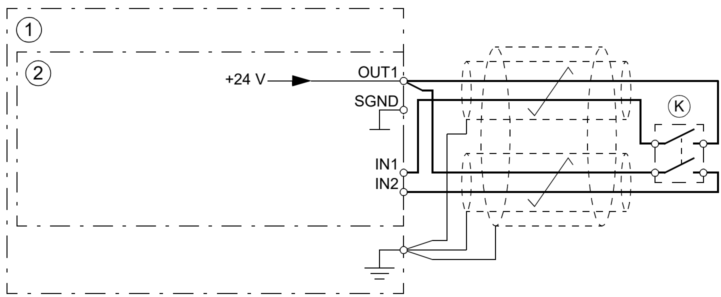
Note: The voltage at the STO input terminals of the control unit must be at least 17 V DC for ZCU-12 control unit and 15 V DC for UCU-20 control unit to be interpreted as “1”.
The pulse tolerance of the input channels is 1 ms.

Grounding of protective shields

- Ground the shield in the cabling between the activation switch and the control unit at the control unit only.
- Ground the shield in the cabling between two control units at one control unit only.

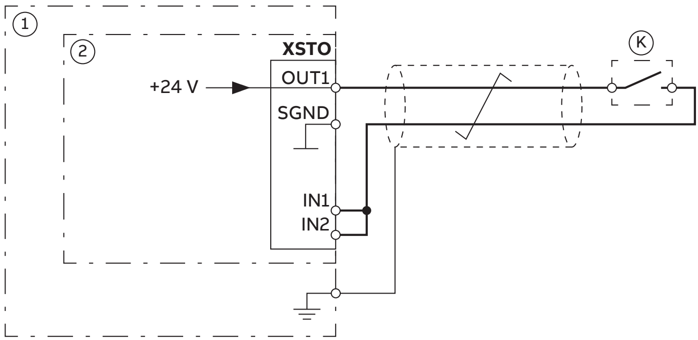
Single drive (internal power supply)

Dual-channel connection



1	Drive
2	Control unit
K	Activation switch

Single-channel connection



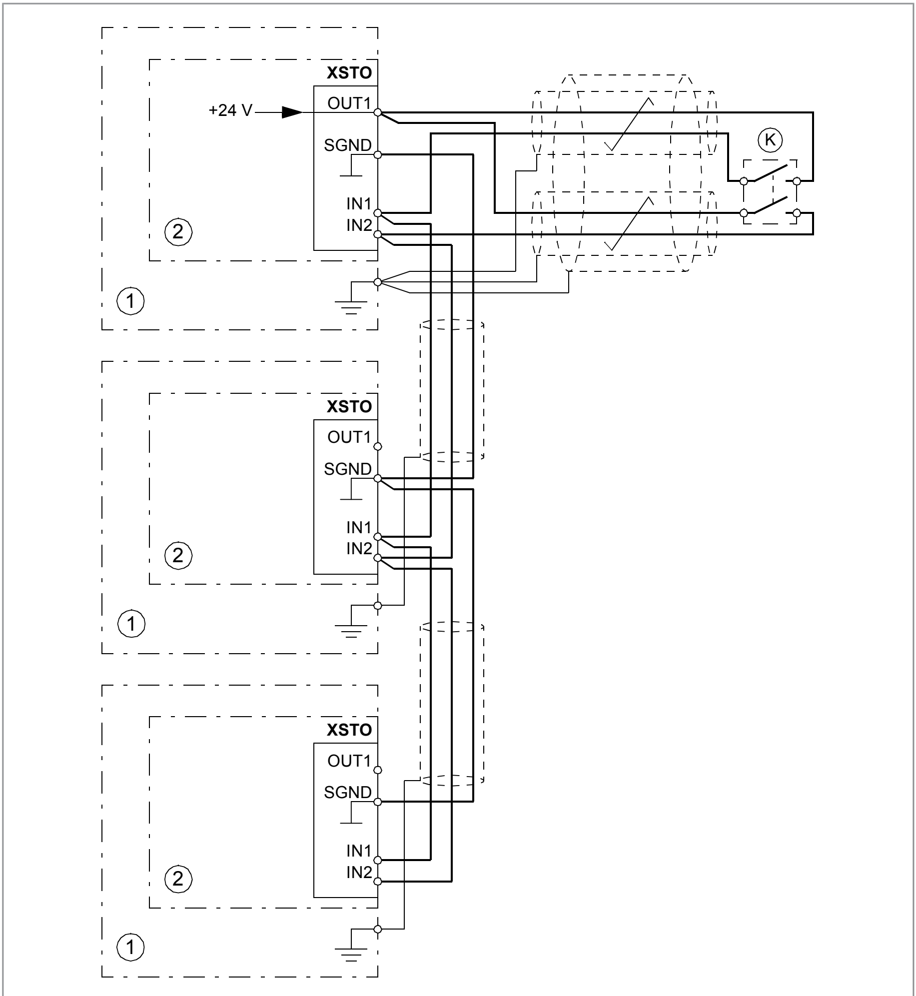
Note:

- Both STO inputs (IN1, IN2) must be connected to the activation switch. Otherwise, no SIL/PL classification is given.
- Pay special attention to avoiding any potential failure modes for the wiring. For example, use shielded cable. For measures for fault exclusion of wiring, see eg. EN ISO 13849-2:2012, table D.4.

1	Drive
2	Control unit
K	Activation switch **Note:** A single-channel activation switch can limit the SIL/PL capability of the safety function to a lower level than the SIL/PL capability of the STO function of the drive.

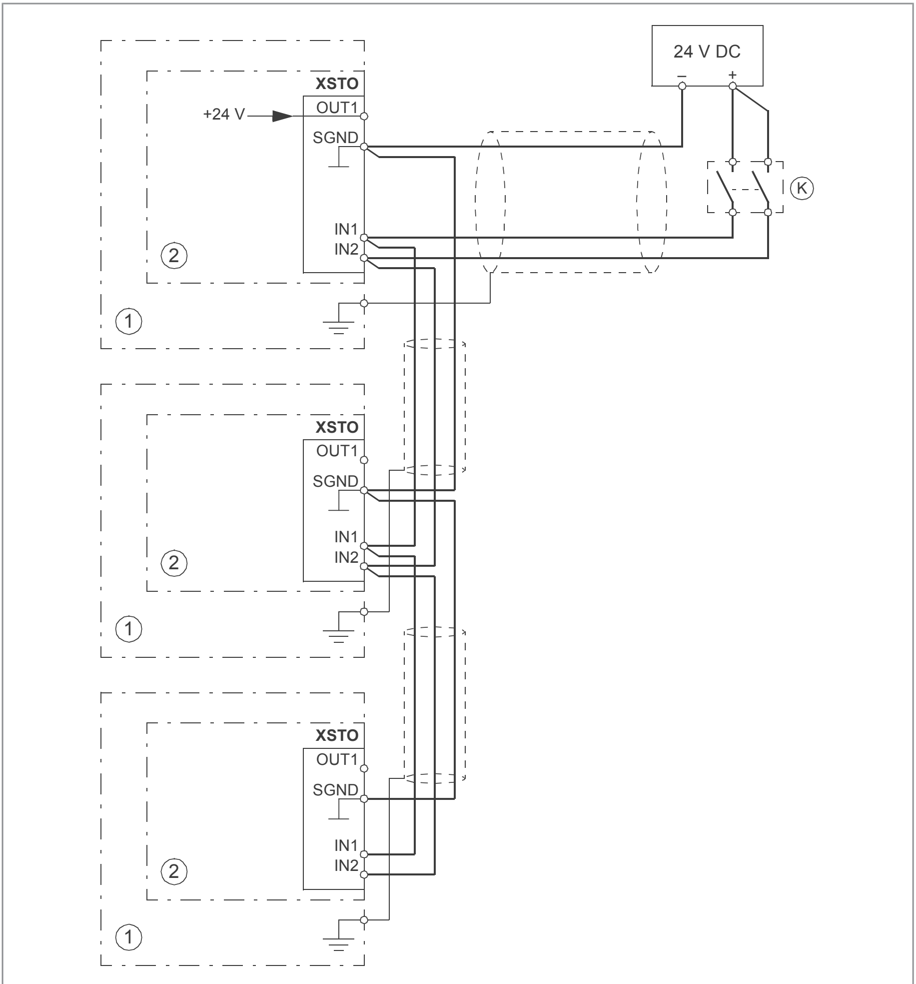
Multiple drives

Internal power supply



1	Drive
2	Control unit
K	Activation switch

External power supply



1	Drive
2	Control unit
K	Activation switch

Operation principle

1. The Safe torque off activates (the activation switch is opened, or safety PLC logic output value is 0, or safety relay contacts open).
2. The STO inputs of the drive control unit de-energize.
3. The control unit cuts off the control voltage from the output IGBTs.
4. The control program generates an indication as defined by parameter 31.22 (refer to the firmware manual of the drive).

   The parameter selects which indications are given when one or both STO signals are switched off or lost. The indications also depend on whether the drive is running or stopped when this occurs.

   Note: This parameter does not affect the operation of the STO function itself. The STO function will operate regardless of the setting of this parameter: a running drive will stop upon removal of one or both STO signals, and will not start until both STO signals are restored and all faults reset.

   Note: The loss of only one STO signal always generates a fault as it is interpreted as a malfunction of STO hardware or wiring.
5. The motor coasts to a stop (if running). The drive cannot restart while the activation switch or safety relay contacts are open. After the contacts close, a reset may be needed (depending on the setting of parameter 31.22). A new start command is required to start the drive.

Start-up including validation test

To ensure the safe operation of a safety function, validation is required. The final assembler of the machine must validate the function by performing a validation test. The test must be performed

1. at initial start-up of the safety function
2. after any changes related to the safety function (circuit boards, wiring, components, settings, replacement of inverter module, etc.)
3. after any maintenance work related to the safety function
4. after a drive firmware update
5. at the proof test of the safety function.

Competence

The validation test of the safety function must be carried out by a competent person with adequate expertise and knowledge of the safety function as well as functional safety, as required by IEC 61508-1 clause 6. The test procedures and report must be documented and signed by this person.

Validation test reports

Signed validation test reports must be stored in the logbook of the machine. The report shall include documentation of start-up activities and test results, references to failure reports and resolution of failures. Any new validation tests performed due to changes or maintenance shall be logged into the logbook.

Validation test procedure

After wiring the Safe torque off function, validate its operation as follows.

Note: If the drive is equipped with safety option +Q972, +Q973 or +Q982, also do the procedure shown in the FSO module documentation.
If an FSCS-21 or FSPS-21 module is installed, refer to its documentation.

Action	☑
WARNING Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	☐
Make sure that the motor can be run and stopped freely during start-up.	☐
Stop the drive (if running), switch the input power off and isolate the drive from the power line using a disconnector.	☐
Check the STO circuit connections against the wiring diagram.	☐

Action	☑
Close the disconnector and switch the power on.	☐
Test the operation of the STO function when the motor is stopped. • Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: • Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (refer to the firmware manual). • Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. • Close the STO circuit. • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Test the operation of the STO function when the motor is running. • Start the drive and make sure the motor is running. • Open the STO circuit. The motor should stop. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'running' state in parameter 31.22 (refer to the firmware manual). • Reset any active faults and try to start the drive. • Make sure that the motor stays at a standstill and the drive operates as described above in testing the operation when the motor is stopped. • Close the STO circuit. • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running. • Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (refer to the firmware manual). • Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. • Open the STO circuit (both channels). • Give a reset command. • Close the STO circuit (both channels). • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. • Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (refer to the firmware manual). • Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. • Open the STO circuit (both channels). • Give a reset command. • Close the STO circuit (both channels). • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Document and sign the validation test report which verifies that the safety function is safe and accepted for operation.	☐

Use

1. Open the activation switch, or activate the safety functionality that is wired to the STO connection.
2. The STO inputs on the drive control unit de-energize, and the control unit cuts off the control voltage from the output IGBTs.
3. The control program generates an indication as defined by parameter 31.22 (refer to the firmware manual of the drive).
4. The motor coasts to a stop (if running). The drive will not restart while the activation switch or safety relay contacts are open.
5. Deactivate the STO by closing the activation switch, or resetting the safety functionality that is wired to the STO connection.
6. Reset any faults before restarting.

WARNING The Safe torque off function does not disconnect the voltage of the main and auxiliary circuits from the drive. Therefore maintenance work on electrical parts of the drive or the motor can only be carried out after isolating the drive from the supply and all other voltage sources.

WARNING The drive cannot detect or memorize any changes in the STO circuitry when the drive control unit is not powered or when the main power to the drive is off. If both STO circuits are closed and a level-type start signal is active when the power is restored, it is possible that the drive starts without a fresh start command. Take this into account in the risk assessment of the system.

WARNING Permanent magnet or synchronous reluctance [SynRM] motors only:

In case of a multiple IGBT power semiconductor failure, the drive can produce an alignment torque which maximally rotates the motor shaft by 180/*p* degrees (with permanent magnet motors) or 180/2*p* degrees (with synchronous reluctance [SynRM] motors) regardless of the activation of the Safe torque off function. *p* denotes the number of pole pairs.

Notes:

- If a running drive is stopped by using the Safe torque off function, the drive will cut off the motor supply voltage and the motor will coast to a stop. If this causes danger or is not otherwise acceptable, stop the drive and machinery using the appropriate stop mode before activating the Safe torque off function.
- The Safe torque off function overrides all other functions of the drive.

- The Safe torque off function is ineffective against deliberate sabotage or misuse.
- The Safe torque off function has been designed to reduce the recognized hazardous conditions. In spite of this, it is not always possible to eliminate all potential hazards. The assembler of the machine must inform the final user about the residual risks.

Maintenance

After the operation of the circuit is validated at start-up, the STO function shall be maintained by periodic proof testing. In high demand mode of operation, the maximum proof test interval is 20 years. In low demand mode of operation, the maximum proof test interval is 10 years: Refer to Safety data (page 379).

There are two alternative procedures for proof testing:

1. Perfect proof testing. It is assumed that all dangerous failures of the STO circuit are detected during the test. PFD_{avg} values for STO with the perfect proof testing procedure are given in the safety data section.
2. Simplified proof testing. This procedure is faster and simpler than perfect proof testing. Not all dangerous failures of the STO circuit are detected during the test. The PFD_{avg} value for STO with the simplified proof testing procedure is given in the safety data section.

Note: The proof testing procedures are only valid for proof testing (periodic test, item 5 under section Start-up including validation test) but not for re-validation after changes made in the circuit. Re-validation (items 1…4 under Start-up including validation test) must be done according to the initial validation procedure.

Note: Refer also to the Recommendation of Use CNB/M/11.050 (published by the European co-ordination of Notified Bodies) concerning dual-channel safety-related systems with electromechanical outputs:

- When the safety integrity requirement for the safety function is SIL 3 or PL e (cat. 3 or 4), the proof test for the function must be performed at least every month.
- When the safety integrity requirement for the safety function is SIL 2 (HFT = 1) or PL d (cat. 3), the proof test for the function must be performed at least every 12 months.

The STO function of the drive does not contain any electromechanical components.

In addition to proof testing, it is a good practice to check the operation of the function when other maintenance procedures are carried out on the machinery.

Include the Safe torque off operation test described above in the routine maintenance program of the machinery that the drive runs.

If any wiring or component change is needed after start-up, or the parameters are restored, do the test given in Validation test procedure (page 371).

Use only spare parts approved by ABB.

Record all maintenance and proof test activities in the machine logbook.

Competence

The maintenance and proof test activities of the safety function must be carried out by a competent person with adequate expertise and knowledge of the safety function as well as functional safety, as required by IEC 61508-1 clause 6.

Perfect proof test procedure

Action	☑
WARNING Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	☐
Test the operation of the STO function. If the motor is running, it will stop during the test. • Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: • Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). • Close the STO circuit. • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running. • Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (see the firmware manual). • Open the STO circuit (both channels). • Give a reset command. • Close the STO circuit (both channels). • Reset any active faults. • Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (see the firmware manual). • Open the STO circuit (both channels). • Give a reset command. • Close the STO circuit (both channels). • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Document and sign the test report to verify that the safety function has been tested according to the procedure.	☐

Simplified proof test procedure

Action	☑
WARNING Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	☐
Test the operation of the STO function. If the motor is running, it will stop during the test. • Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: • Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). • Close the STO circuit. • Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	☐
Document and sign the test report to verify that the safety function has been tested according to the procedure.	☐

Fault tracing

The indications given during the normal operation of the Safe torque off function are selected by drive control program parameter 31.22.

The diagnostics of the Safe torque off function cross-compare the status of the two STO channels. In case the channels are not in the same state, a fault reaction function is performed and the drive trips on an FA81 or FA82 fault. An attempt to use the STO in a non-redundant manner, for example activating only one channel, will trigger the same reaction.

If UCU-20 STO input is internally powered and STO is active even if the STO input circuit is closed, make sure that switch S1 position is set to closed (ON). If UCU-20 STO is internally powered and S1 is set to open (1), STO function is always active and STO indication according to drive control program parameter 31.22 is given. For more information, refer to Wiring (page 365).

Refer to the firmware manual of the drive control program for the indications generated by the drive, and for details on directing fault and warning indications to an output on the control unit for external diagnostics.

Any failures of the Safe torque off function must be reported to ABB.

Safety data

The safety data for the Safe torque off function is given below.

Note: The safety data is calculated for redundant use, and applies only if both STO channels are used.

Frame size	SIL	SC	PL	PFH (T_1 = 20 a) (1/h)	PFD_{avg}			$MTTF_D$ (a)	DC (%)	SFF (%)	Cat.	HFT	CCF	T_M (a)	PFH_{diag} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_s} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_d} (1/h)
					Perfect proof test		Simplified proof test										
					T_1 = 5 a	T_1 = 10 a	T_1 = 5 or 10 a										
U_n = 230 V																	
R1	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10530	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R2	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10529	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R3	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10489	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R4	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10442	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R5	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10240	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R6	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R7	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R8	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08

Frame size	SIL	SC	PL	PFH (T_1 = 20 a) (1/h)	PFD_{avg} Perfect proof test T_1 = 5 a	PFD_{avg} Perfect proof test T_1 = 10 a	PFD_{avg} Simplified proof test T_1 = 5 or 10 a	$MTTF_D$ (a)	DC (%)	SFF (%)	Cat.	HFT	CCF	T_M (a)	PFH_{diag} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_s} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_d} (1/h)
U_n = 400 V, U_n = 500 V																	
R1	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10530	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R2	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10529	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R3	3	3	e	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10489	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R4	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10442	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R5	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10240	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R6	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R7	3	3	e	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R8	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.67E-05	1.34E-04	2.67E-04	4310	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.53E-07	1.10E-08
R9	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.67E-05	1.34E-04	2.67E-04	4310	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.53E-07	1.10E-08
R9e	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.67E-05	1.34E-04	2.67E-04	4310	≥90	>90	3	1	80	20	6.10E-09	1.53E-07	1.10E-08

Frame size	SIL	SC	PL	PFH (T_1 = 20 a) (1/h)	PFD_{avg}			$MTTF_D$ (a)	DC (%)	SFF (%)	Cat.	HFT	CCF	T_M (a)	PFH_{diag} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_s} (1/h)	λ_{Diag_d} (1/h)
					Perfect proof test		Simplified proof test										
					T_1 = 5 a	T_1 = 10 a	T_1 = 5 or 10 a										
U_n = 690 V																	
R3	3	3	e	3.24E-09	6.69E-05	1.34E-04	2.68E-04	6221	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.67E-07	1.20E-08
R5	3	3	e	3.23E-09	6.68E-05	1.34E-04	2.67E-04	5879	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.89E-07	1.20E-08
R6	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	2.66E-04	4310	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
R7	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	2.66E-04	4310	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
R8	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	2.66E-04	4310	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
R9	3	3	e	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	2.66E-04	4310	≥90	≥90	3	1	80	20	6.20E-09	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
3AXD10001609373 C, 3AXD10001609374 E, 3AXD10001609375 D																	

- Drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998): The values for DC, PFH_{diag}, λ_{Diag_s} and λ_{Diag_d} in the table are according to ISO 13849-1. These values are not claimed according to IEC 61508. For drives with other control units, the values for DC, PFH_{diag}, λ_{Diag_s} and λ_{Diag_d} are according to ISO 13849-1 and IEC 61508.
- The STO is a type A safety component as defined in IEC 61508-2.
- Relevant failure modes:
  - The STO trips spuriously (safe failure)
  - The STO does not activate when requested
  - A fault exclusion on the failure mode “short circuit on printed circuit board” has been made (EN 13849-2, table D.5). The analysis is based on an assumption that one failure occurs at one time. No accumulated failures have been analyzed.
- STO response times:
  - STO reaction time (shortest detectable break): 1 ms
  - STO response time:
    - with ZCU-12: 2 ms (typical), 10 ms (maximum)
    - with UCU-20: 2 ms (typical), 25 ms (maximum)
  - Fault detection time: Channels in different states for longer than 200 ms
  - Fault reaction time: Fault detection time + 10 ms.
- Indication delays:
  - STO fault indication (parameter 31.22) delay: < 500 ms
  - STO warning indication (parameter 31.22) delay: < 1000 ms.

Terms and abbreviations

Term or abbreviation	Reference	Description
Cat.	EN ISO 13849-1	Classification of the safety-related parts of a control system in respect of their resistance to faults and their subsequent behavior in the fault condition, and which is achieved by the structural arrangement of the parts, fault detection and/or by their reliability. The categories are: B, 1, 2, 3 and 4.
CCF	EN ISO 13849-1	Common cause failure (%)
DC	EN ISO 13849-1	Diagnostic coverage (%)
HFT	IEC 61508	Hardware fault tolerance
$MTTF_D$	EN ISO 13849-1	Mean time to dangerous failure: (Total number of life units) / (Number of dangerous, undetected failures) during a particular measurement interval under stated conditions

Term or abbreviation	**Reference**	**Description**
PFD_{avg}	IEC 61508	Average probability of dangerous failure on demand, that is, mean unavailability of a safety-related system to perform the specified safety function when a demand occurs
PFH	IEC 61508	Average frequency of dangerous failures per hour, that is, average frequency of a dangerous failure of a safety related system to perform the specified safety function over a given period of time
PFH_{diag}	IEC/EN 62061	Average frequency of dangerous failures per hour for the diagnostic function of STO
PL	EN ISO 13849-1	Performance level. Levels a…e correspond to SIL
Proof test	IEC 61508, IEC 62061	Periodic test performed to detect failures in a safety-related system so that, if necessary, a repair can restore the system to an "as new" condition or as close as practical to this condition
SC	IEC 61508	Systematic capability (1…3)
SFF	IEC 61508	Safe failure fraction (%)
SIL	IEC 61508	Safety integrity level (1…3)
STO	IEC/EN 61800-5-2	Safe torque off
T_1	IEC 61508-6	Proof test interval. T_1 is a parameter used to define the probabilistic failure rate (PFH or PFD) for the safety function or subsystem. Performing a proof test at a maximum interval of T_1 is required to keep the SIL capability valid. The same interval must be followed to keep the PL capability (EN ISO 13849) valid. Refer also section Maintenance.
T_M	EN ISO 13849-1	Mission time: the period of time covering the intended use of the safety function/device. After the mission time elapses, the safety device must be replaced. Note that any T_M values given cannot be regarded as a guarantee or warranty.
λ_{Diag_d}	IEC 61508-6	Dangerous failure rate (per hour) of the diagnostics function of STO
λ_{Diag_s}	IEC 61508-6	Safe failure rate (per hour) of the diagnostics function of STO

TÜV certificate

The TÜV certificate is available on the Internet.

17

Filters

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes how to select external filters for the drive.

When is a common mode filter or d*u*/d*t* filter needed?

Refer to Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive (page 72).

Common mode filters

Common mode filter kits are available from ABB. The kits include three wound cores.

Name	Code
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 frame R6 (option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015178
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 frame R7, and for ACS880-11, ACS880-31 frame R8 (option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015179
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 drives (frame R8, option +E208) installation guide	3AXD50000015180
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 drives (frame R9, option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015201

Name	Code
Input side common mode filter kit for ACS880-01-490A-3, -477A-5 and -453A-4 (option +E202) and for ACS580-01, ACH580-01 and ACQ580-01 -490A-4 and -477A-4 installation instructions	3AXD50001192297

du/dt filters

du/dt filter types

ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type	ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type	ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type
U_N = 400 V		U_N = 500 V		U_N = 690 V	
02A4-3	NOCH0016-6X	02A1-5	NOCH0016-6X	07A4-7	NOCH0016-6X
03A3-3	NOCH0016-6X	03A0-5	NOCH0016-6X	09A9-7	NOCH0016-6X
04A0-3	NOCH0016-6X	03A4-5	NOCH0016-6X	14A3-7	NOCH0016-6X
05A6-3	NOCH0016-6X	04A8-5	NOCH0016-6X	019A-7	NOCH0030-6X
07A2-3	NOCH0016-6X	05A2-5	NOCH0016-6X	023A-7	NOCH0030-6X
09A4-3	NOCH0016-6X	07A6-5	NOCH0016-6X	027A-7	NOCH0030-6X
12A6-3	NOCH0016-6X	11A0-5	NOCH0016-6X	07A3-7	NOCH0016-6X
017A-3	NOCH0030-6X	014A-5	NOCH0030-6X	09A8-7	NOCH0016-6X
025A-3	NOCH0030-6X	021A-5	NOCH0030-6X	14A2-7	NOCH0016-6X
032A-3	NOCH0070-6X	027A-5	NOCH0070-6X	018A-7	NOCH0030-6X
038A-3	NOCH0070-6X	034A-5	NOCH0070-6X	022A-7	NOCH0030-6X
045A-3	NOCH0070-6X	040A-5	NOCH0070-6X	026A-7	NOCH0030-6X
061A-3	NOCH0070-6X	052A-5	NOCH0070-6X	035A-7	NOCH0070-6X
072A-3	NOCH0120-6X	065A-5	NOCH0120-6X	042A-7	NOCH0070-6X
087A-3	NOCH0120-6X	077A-5	NOCH0120-6X	049A-7	NOCH0070-6X
105A-3	NOCH0120-6X	096A-5	NOCH0120-6X	061A-7	NOCH0120-6X
145A-3	FOCH0260-7X	124A-5	FOCH0260-7X	084A-7	NOCH0120-6X
169A-3	FOCH0260-7X	156A-5	FOCH0260-7X	098A-7	NOCH0120-6X
206A-3	FOCH0260-7X	180A-5	FOCH0260-7X	119A-7	FOCH0260-7X
246A-3	FOCH0260-7X	240A-5	FOCH0260-7X	142A-7	FOCH0260-7X
293A-3	FOCH0260-7X	260A-5	FOCH0260-7X	174A-7	FOCH0260-7X
363A-3	FOCH0320-5X	302A-5	FOCH0320-5X	210A-7	FOCH0260-7X
430A-3	FOCH0320-5X	361A-5	FOCH0320-5X	271A-7	FOCH0260-7X

ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type	ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type	ACS880-01-...	du/dt filter type
490A-3	FOCH-0610-7x	414A-5	FOCH0320-5X		
595A-3	FOCH-0610-7x	477A-5	FOCH-0610-7x		
670A-3	FOCH-0610-7x	585A-5	FOCH-0610-7x		
		635A-5	FOCH-0610-7x		

Description, installation and technical data of the du/dt filters

Refer to:

- FOCH du/dt filters hardware manual (3AFE68577519 [English])
- AOCH and NOCH du/dt filters hardware manual (3AFE58933368 [English]).

Sine filters

Selecting a sine filter for a drive

Check housing of sine filters from the manufacturer's internet pages. Go to https://en.tdk.eu

ACS880-01-...	Sine filter type	$I_{cont. max}$	$P_{cont. max}$	Heat dissipation			Noise
				Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	W	W	dB (A)
U_N = 400 V							
02A4-3	B84143V0004R229*	2.3	1.7	30	60	90	72
03A3-3	B84143V0004R229*	3.1	2.3	40	60	100	72
04A0-3	B84143V0004R229*	3.8	2.9	52	60	112	72
05A6-3	B84143V0006R229*	5.3	4.0	73	100	173	72
07A2-3	B84143V0011R229*	7.2	5.4	94	90	184	72
09A4-3	B84143V0011R229*	9.2	6.9	122	90	212	72
12A6-3	B84143V0016R229*	12.1	9.1	172	80	252	72
017A-3	B84143V0025R229*	16	12.1	232	140	372	75
025A-3	B84143V0025R229*	24	17.7	337	140	477	75
032A-3	B84143V0033R229*	31	23.4	457	160	617	75
038A-3	B84143V0050R229*	37	27.5	562	220	782	78
045A-3	B84143V0050R229*	43	32.4	667	220	887	78
* minimum switching frequency 4.5 kHz							
** minimum switching frequency 3.6 kHz							

ACS880-01-...	Sine filter type	$I_{cont. max}$	$P_{cont. max}$	Heat dissipation			Noise
				Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	W	W	dB (A)
061A-3	B84143V0066R229*	58	43.7	907	250	1157	78
072A-3	B84143V0075R229*	64	48.2	1117	310	1427	79
087A-3	B84143V0095R229*	77	58.0	1120	400	1520	79
105A-3	B84143V0130S230**	91	68.6	1295	600	1895	80
145A-3	B84143V0162S229**	126	94.6	1440	550	1990	80
169A-3	B84143V0162S229**	153	115.0	1940	550	2490	80
206A-3	B84143V0230S229**	187	140.6	2310	900	3210	80
246A-3	B84143V0230S229**	209	157.6	3300	900	4200	80
293A-3	B84143V0390S229**	249	187.8	3900	1570	5470	80
363A-3	B84143V0390S229**	297	223.6	4800	1570	6370	80
430A-3	B84143V0390S229**	352	265.2	6000	1570	7570	80
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
595A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
670A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_N = 500 V							
02A1-5	B84143V0004R229*	1.9	1.4	30	60	90	72
03A0-5	B84143V0004R229*	2.8	2.1	40	60	100	72
03A4-5	B84143V0004R229*	3.1	2.3	52	60	112	72
04A8-5	B84143V0006R229*	4.4	3.3	73	100	173	72
05A2-5	B84143V0006R229*	4.8	3.6	94	100	194	72
07A6-5	B84143V0011R229*	7.0	5.3	122	90	212	72
11A0-5	B84143V0011R229*	10.2	7.7	172	90	262	72
014A-5	B84143V0016R229*	13	9.8	232	80	312	70
021A-5	B84143V0025R229*	20	14.7	337	140	477	75
027A-5	B84143V0033R229*	25	18.8	457	160	617	75
034A-5	B84143V0050R229*	32	23.7	562	220	782	78
040A-5	B84143V0050R229*	35	26.0	667	220	887	78
052A-5	B84143V0066R229*	44	33.2	907	250	1157	78
065A-5	B84143V0066R229*	52	39.2	1117	250	1367	78
* minimum switching frequency 4.5 kHz							
** minimum switching frequency 3.6 kHz							

ACS880-01-...	Sine filter type	$I_{cont. max}$	$P_{cont. max}$	Heat dissipation			Noise
				Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	W	W	dB (A)
077A-5	B84143V0075R229*	61	46.0	1120	310	1430	78
096A-5	B84143V0130R230**	80	60.6	1295	630	1925	80
124A-5	B84143V0130S230**	104	78.7	1440	630	2070	80
156A-5	B84143V0162S229**	140	105.8	1940	550	2490	80
180A-5	B84143V0162S229**	161	121.3	2310	550	2860	80
240A-5	B84143V0230S229**	205	154.3	3300	900	4200	80
260A-5	B84143V0230S229**	221	166.7	3900	900	4800	80
361A-5	B84143V0390S229**	289	217.9	4800	1570	6370	80
414A-5	B84143V0390S229**	332	250.1	6000	1570	7570	80
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
585A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
635A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U_N = 690 V							
07A4-7	B84143V0010R230*	7.3	5.5	114	90	204	72
09A9-7	B84143V0010R230*	9.3	7.0	143	90	233	72
14A3-7	B84143V0018R230*	13.5	10.2	207	130	337	72
019A-7	B84143V0018R230*	17.1	12.9	274	130	404	72
023A-7	B84143V0026R230*	21	15.7	329	160	489	72
027A-7	B84143V0026R230*	25	18.6	405	160	565	72
07A3-7	B84143V0010R230*	7.3	5.5	217	90	307	72
09A8-7	B84143V0010R230*	9.3	7.0	284	90	374	72
14A2-7	B84143V0018R230*	13.5	10.2	399	130	529	72
018A-7	B84143V0018R230*	17.1	12.9	490	130	620	72
022A-7	B84143V0026R230*	21	15.7	578	160	738	72
026A-7	B84143V0026R230*	25	18.6	660	160	820	72
035A-7	B84143V0040R230*	33	25.1	864	250	1114	75
042A-7	B84143V0040R230*	40	30.1	998	250	1248	75
049A-7	B84143V0056R230**	48	36.2	1120	290	1410	78
061A-7	B84143V0056R230**	56	42.5	1295	290	1585	78

* minimum switching frequency 4.5 kHz

** minimum switching frequency 3.6 kHz

ACS880-01-...	Sine filter type	$I_{cont. max}$	$P_{cont. max}$	Heat dissipation			Noise
				Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	W	W	dB (A)
084A-7	B84143V0092R230**	78	58.6	1440	610	2050	79
098A-7	B84143V0092R230**	92	69.3	1940	610	2550	79
119A-7	B84143V0130S230**	112	84.2	2310	630	2940	80
142A-7	B84143V0130S230**	112	84.7	3300	630	3930	80
174A-7	B84143V0207S230**	138	103.7	3900	930	4830	80
210A-7	B84143V0207S230**	161	121.3	4200	930	5130	80
271A-7	B84143V0207S230**	208	156.4	4800	930	5730	80
							3AXD00000588487
* minimum switching frequency 4.5 kHz							
** minimum switching frequency 3.6 kHz							

Definitions

$P_{cont. max}$	Maximum continuous output power of the drive
$I_{cont. max}$	Maximum continuous output current of the drive
Noise	Noise level of the sine filters

Derating

Refer to Deratings for special settings in the drive control program (page 245).

Description, installation and technical data

Refer to Sine filters hardware manual (3AXD50000016814 [English]).

Further information

Product and service inquiries

Address any inquiries about the product to your local ABB representative, quoting the type designation and serial number of the unit in question. A listing of ABB sales, support and service contacts can be found by navigating to new.abb.com/contact-centers.

Product training

For information on ABB product training, navigate to new.abb.com/service/training.

Providing feedback on ABB manuals

Your comments on our manuals are welcome. Navigate to forms.abb.com/form-26567.

Document library on the Internet

You can find manuals and other product documents in PDF format on the Internet at www.abb.com/drives/documents.

CIP a10 (frozen)
PDF-A5
Created 2026-02-27, 14:30:19

www.abb.com/drives

3AUA0000078093V

3AUA0000078093 Rev V (EN)
2026-02-26